

# Contents

[Azure RTOS ThreadX documentation](#)

[Overview of ThreadX](#)

[ThreadX user guide](#)

[About this guide](#)

[Ch. 1 - Introduction to ThreadX](#)

[Ch. 2 - Installation and use of ThreadX](#)

[Ch. 3 - Functional components of ThreadX](#)

[Ch. 4 - Description of ThreadX services](#)

[Ch. 5 - Device drivers for ThreadX](#)

[Ch. 6 - Demonstration system for ThreadX](#)

[App. A - ThreadX API services](#)

[App. B - ThreadX constants](#)

[App. C - ThreadX data types](#)

[App. D - ASCII character codes](#)

[ThreadX User Guide Addendum for ARMv8-M](#)

[Ch. 1 - Introduction to Azure RTOS ThreadX for ARMv8-M](#)

[Ch. 2 - Installing ThreadX support for ARMv8-M](#)

[Ch. 3 - ThreadX APIs for ARMv8-M](#)

[ThreadX SMP user guide](#)

[About This Guide](#)

[Ch. 1 - Introduction to ThreadX SMP](#)

[Ch. 2 - Installation & Use of ThreadX SMP](#)

[Ch. 3 - Functional Components of ThreadX SMP](#)

[Ch. 4 - Description of ThreadX SMP Services](#)

[Ch. 5 - Device Drivers for ThreadX SMP](#)

[Ch. 6 - Demonstration System for ThreadX SMP](#)

[App. A - ThreadX SMP API Services](#)

[App. B - ThreadX SMP Constants](#)

[App. C - ThreadX SMP Data Types](#)

[App. D - ASCII Character Codes](#)

[App. E - ThreadX SMP MISRA C compliance](#)

[ThreadX repository](#)

[Related services](#)

[Defender for IoT - RTOS \(preview\)](#)

[Microsoft Azure RTOS components](#)

[Microsoft Azure RTOS](#)

[ThreadX](#)

[ThreadX Modules](#)

[NetX Duo](#)

[NetX](#)

[GUIX](#)

[FileX](#)

[LevelX](#)

[USBX](#)

[TraceX](#)



# Overview of Azure RTOS ThreadX

11/1/2022 • 5 minutes to read

Azure RTOS ThreadX is Microsoft's advanced industrial grade Real-Time Operating System (RTOS). It is designed specifically for deeply embedded, real-time, and IoT applications. Azure RTOS ThreadX provides advanced scheduling, communication, synchronization, timer, memory management, and interrupt management facilities. In addition, Azure RTOS ThreadX has many advanced features: including its picokernel™ architecture, preemption-threshold™ scheduling, event-chaining,™ execution profiling, performance metrics, and system event tracing. Combined with its superior ease-of-use, Azure RTOS ThreadX is the ideal choice for the most demanding of embedded applications. Azure RTOS ThreadX has billions of deployments across a wide variety of products, including consumer devices, medical electronics, and industrial control equipment.

## ThreadX footprint

Azure RTOS ThreadX has a remarkably small 2-KB instruction area and 1 KB of RAM minimal footprint. This small size is largely due to its non-layered picokernel architecture and automatic scaling. Automatic scaling means that only the services (and supporting infrastructure) used by the application are included in the final image at link time.

Here are some typical Azure RTOS ThreadX size characteristics.

AZURE RTOS THREADX SERVICE	TYPICAL SIZE IN BYTES
Core Services (Require)	2,000
Queue Services	900
Event Flag Services	900
Semaphore Services	450
Mutex Services	1,200
Block Memory Services	550
Byte Memory Services	900

## ThreadX execution speed

Azure RTOS ThreadX achieves a sub-microsecond context switch on most popular processors and is faster overall than other commercial RTOSs. In addition to being fast, Azure RTOS ThreadX is also highly deterministic. It achieves the same fast performance whether there are 200 threads ready, or just one.

Here are some typical performance characteristics of Azure RTOS ThreadX:

- Fast boot: Azure RTOS ThreadX boots in fewer than 120 cycles.
- Optional removal of basic error checking: Basic Azure RTOS ThreadX error checking can be skipped at compile time. This can be useful when the application code is verified and no longer requires error checking on each parameter. Skipping error checking can be done on a compilation unit, rather than system-wide.

- Picokernel design: Services are not layered on each other, eliminating unnecessary function call overhead.
- Optimized interrupt processing: Only scratch registers are saved/restored upon ISR entry/exit, unless preemption is necessary.
- Optimized API processing:

AZURE RTOS THREADX SERVICE	SERVICE TIME IN MICROSECONDS*
Thread Suspend	0.6
Thread Resume	0.6
Queue Send	0.3
Queue Receive	0.3
Get Semaphore	0.2
Put Semaphore	0.2
Context Switch	0.4
Interrupt Response	0.0 – 0.6

*\*Performance figures based on typical processor running at 200 MHz.*

## Advanced technology

Azure RTOS ThreadX is notable for its preemption-threshold scheduling. This feature is unique to Azure RTOS ThreadX and has been the subject of extensive academic research. You can learn more from the paper [Scheduling Fixed-Priority Tasks with Preemption Threshold](#), by Yun Wang (Concordia University) and Manas Saksena (University of Pittsburgh).

Key capabilities of Azure RTOS ThreadX:

- Complete and Comprehensive Multitasking Facilities
  - Threads, application timers, message queues, counting semaphores, mutexes, event flags, block, and byte memory pools
- Priority-Based Preemptive Scheduling
- Priority Flexibility – Up to 1024 Priority Levels
- Cooperative Scheduling
- Preemption-Threshold – Unique to Azure RTOS ThreadX, helps reduce context switches and help guarantee schedulability (per academic research)
- Memory Protection via Azure RTOS ThreadX MODULES
- Fully Deterministic
- Event Trace – Capture last  $n$  system/application events
- Event Chaining – Register an application-specific “notify” callback function for each Azure RTOS ThreadX communication or synchronization object
- Azure RTOS ThreadX MODULES with Optional Memory Protection
- Run-Time Performance Metrics
  - Number of thread resumptions

- Number of thread suspensions
- Number of solicited thread pre-emptions
- Number of asynchronous thread interrupt pre-emptions
- Number of thread priority inversions
- Number of thread relinquishes
- Execution Profile Kit (EPK)
- Separate Interrupt Stack
- Run-Time Stack Analysis
- Optimized Timer Interrupt Processing

## Multicore support (AMP & SMP)

Standard Azure RTOS ThreadX is often used in an Asymmetric Multiprocessing (AMP) fashion, where a separate copy of Azure RTOS ThreadX and the application (or Linux) executes on each core and communicate with each other via shared memory or an inter-processor communication mechanism such as OpenAMP (Azure RTOS ThreadX supports OpenAMP).

In environments where loading processors is highly dynamic, Azure RTOS ThreadX Symmetric Multiprocessing (SMP) is available for the following processor families:

- ARM Cortex-Ax
- ARM Cortex-Rx
- ARM Cortex-A5x 64-bit
- Synopsys ARC HS

Azure RTOS ThreadX SMP performs dynamic load balancing across  $n$  processors. It allows all Azure RTOS ThreadX resources (queues, semaphores, event flags, memory pools, etc.) to be accessed by any thread on any core. Azure RTOS ThreadX SMP enables the complete Azure RTOS ThreadX API on all cores and introduces the following new APIs applicable to SMP operation:

- `UINT tx_thread_smp_core_exclude(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr, ULONG exclusion_map);`
- `UINT tx_thread_smp_core_exclude_get(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr, ULONG *exclusion_map_ptr);`
- `UINT tx_thread_smp_core_get(void);`
- `UINT tx_timer_smp_core_exclude(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr, ULONG exclusion_map);`
- `UINT tx_timer_smp_core_exclude_get(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr, ULONG *exclusion_map_ptr);`

## Memory protection via Azure RTOS ThreadX Modules

An add-on product called Azure RTOS ThreadX Modules enables one or more application threads to be bundled into a "Module" that can be dynamically loaded and run (or executed in place) on the target.

Modules enable field upgrade, bug fixing, and program partitioning to allow large applications to occupy only the memory needed by active threads.

Modules also have a separate address space from Azure RTOS ThreadX itself. This enables Azure RTOS ThreadX to place memory protection (via MPU or MMU) around the Module such that accidental access outside the module will not be able to corrupt any other software component.

## MISRA compliant

Azure RTOS ThreadX and Azure RTOS ThreadX SMP source code is MISRA-C: 2004 and MISRA C:2012 compliant. MISRA C is a set of programming guidelines for critical systems using the C programming language. The original MISRA C guidelines were primarily targeted toward automotive applications; however, MISRA C is

now widely recognized as being applicable to any safety-critical application. Azure RTOS ThreadX is compliant with all required and mandatory rules of MISRA-C: 2004 and MISRA C:2012.



## Supports most popular tools

Azure RTOS ThreadX supports most popular embedded development tools, including IAR's Embedded Workbench, which also has the most comprehensive Azure RTOS ThreadX kernel awareness available. Other tool integration includes GNU (GCC), ARM DS-5/uVision® , Green Hills MULTI® , Wind River Workbench, Imagination Codescape, Renesas e2studio, Metaware SeeCode, NXP CodeWarrior, Lauterbach TRACE32® , TI Code-Composer Studio, CrossCore, and all analog devices.

## Adaptation layer for ThreadX

You can ease application migration issues to Azure RTOS by using ThreadX [adaption layers](#) for various legacy RTOS APIs (FreeRTOS, POSIX, OSEK, etc.)

[Introduction to Azure RTOS ThreadX](#)

# About the Azure RTOS ThreadX Guide

11/1/2022 • 2 minutes to read

This guide provides comprehensive information about Azure RTOS ThreadX, the Microsoft high-performance real-time kernel.

It is intended for the embedded real-time software developer. The developer should be familiar with standard real-time operating system functions and the C programming language.

## Organization

[Chapter 1](#) - Provides a basic overview of Azure RTOS ThreadX and its relationship to real-time embedded development

[Chapter 2](#) - Gives the basic steps to install and use Azure RTOS ThreadX in your application right *out of the box*

[Chapter 3](#) - Describes in detail the functional operation of Azure RTOS ThreadX, the high performance real-time kernel

[Chapter 4](#) - Details the application's interface to Azure RTOS ThreadX

[Chapter 5](#) - Describes writing I/O drivers for Azure RTOS ThreadX applications

[Chapter 6](#) - Describes the demonstration application that is supplied with every Azure RTOS ThreadX processor support package

[Appendix A](#) - Azure RTOS ThreadX API

[Appendix B](#) - Azure RTOS ThreadX constants

[Appendix C](#) - Azure RTOS ThreadX data types

[Appendix D](#) - ASCII chart

## Guide Conventions

*Italics* - typeface denotes book titles, emphasizes important words, and indicates parameters.

**Boldface** - typeface denotes key words, constants, type names, user interface elements, variable names, and further emphasizes important words.

*Italics and Boldface* - typeface denotes file names and function names.

### IMPORTANT

Information symbols draw attention to important or additional information that could affect performance or function.

### WARNING

Warning symbols draw attention to situations in which developers should take care to avoid because they could cause fatal errors.

## Azure RTOS ThreadX Data Types



In addition to the custom Azure RTOS ThreadX control structure data types, there are a series of special data types that are used in Azure RTOS ThreadX service call interfaces. These special data types map directly to data types of the underlying C compiler. This is done to insure portability between different C compilers. The exact implementation can be found in the *tx\_port.h* file included with the source.

The following is a list of Azure RTOS ThreadX service call data types and their associated meanings:

DATA TYPE	DESCRIPTION
UINT	Basic unsigned integer. This type must support 8-bit unsigned data; however, it is mapped to the most convenient unsigned data type.
ULONG	Unsigned long type. This type must support 32-bit unsigned data.
VOID	Almost always equivalent to the compiler's void type.
CHAR	Most often a standard 8-bit character type.

Additional data types are used within the Azure RTOS ThreadX source. They are also located in the *tx\_port.h* file.

## Customer Support Center

Please submit a support ticket through the Azure Portal for questions or help using the steps here. Please supply us with the following information in an email message so we can more efficiently resolve your support request:

1. A detailed description of the problem, including frequency of occurrence and whether it can be reliably reproduced.
2. A detailed description of any changes to the application and/or Azure RTOS ThreadX that preceded the problem.
3. The contents of the *\_tx\_version\_id* string found in the *tx\_port.h* file of your distribution. This string will provide us valuable information regarding your run-time environment.
4. The contents in RAM of the *\_tx\_build\_options* **ULONG** variable. This variable will give us information on how your Azure RTOS ThreadX library was built.

# Chapter 1 - Introduction to Azure RTOS ThreadX

11/1/2022 • 8 minutes to read

Azure RTOS ThreadX is a high-performance real-time kernel designed specifically for embedded applications. This chapter contains an introduction to the product and a description of its applications and benefits.

## ThreadX Unique Features

Unlike other real-time kernels, ThreadX is designed to be versatile—easily scaling among small microcontroller-based applications through those that use powerful CISC, RISC, and DSP processors.

ThreadX is scalable based on its underlying architecture. Because ThreadX services are implemented as a C library, only those services actually used by the application are brought into the run-time image. Hence, the actual size of ThreadX is completely determined by the application. For most applications, the instruction image of ThreadX ranges between 2 KBytes and 15 KBytes in size.

### ***picokernel™ Architecture***

Instead of layering kernel functions on top of each other like traditional *microkernel* architectures, ThreadX services plug directly into its core. This results in the fastest possible context switching and service call performance. We call this non-layering design a *picokernel* architecture.

### **ANSI C Source Code**

ThreadX is written primarily in ANSI C. A small amount of assembly language is needed to tailor the kernel to the underlying target processor. This design makes it possible to port ThreadX to a new processor family in a very short time—usually within weeks!

### **Advanced Technology**

The following are highlights of the ThreadX advanced technology.

- Simple *picokernel* architecture
- Automatic scaling (small footprint)
- Deterministic processing
- Fast real-time performance
- Preemptive and cooperative scheduling
- Flexible thread priority support
- Dynamic system object creation
- Unlimited number of system objects
- Optimized interrupt handling
- Preemption-threshold™
- Priority inheritance
- Event-chaining™
- Fast software timers
- Run-time memory management
- Run-time performance monitoring
- Run-time stack analysis
- Built-in system trace
- Vast processor support
- Vast development tool support

- Completely endian neutral

### Not A Black Box

Most distributions of ThreadX include the complete C source code as well as the processor-specific assembly language. This eliminates the "black-box" problems that occur with many commercial kernels. With ThreadX, application developers can see exactly what the kernel is doing—there are no mysteries!

The source code also allows for application specific modifications. Although not recommended, it is certainly beneficial to have the ability to modify the kernel if it is absolutely required.

These features are especially comforting to developers accustomed to working with their own *in-house kernels*. They expect to have source code and the ability to modify the kernel. ThreadX is the ultimate kernel for such developers.

### The RTOS Standard

Because of its versatility, high-performance *picokernel* architecture, advanced technology, and demonstrated portability, ThreadX is deployed in more than two-billion devices today. This effectively makes ThreadX the RTOS standard for deeply embedded applications.

## Safety Certifications

### TÜV Certification

ThreadX has been certified by SGS-TÜV Saar for use in safety-critical systems, according to IEC-61508 SIL 4. The certification confirms that Azure RTOS can be used in the development of safety-related software for the highest safety integrity levels of IEC-61508 for the "Functional Safety of electrical, electronic, and programmable electronic safety-related systems." SGS-TUV Saar, formed through a joint venture of Germany's SGS-Group and TUV Saarland, has become the leading accredited, independent company for testing, auditing, verifying, and certifying embedded software for safety-related systems worldwide.



FUNKTIONALE SICHERHEIT  
GEPRÜFT  
FUNCTIONAL SAFETY  
APPROVED

- IEC 61508 up to SIL 4

#### IMPORTANT

Please contact us for more information on which version(s) of ThreadX have been certified by TÜV or for the availability of test reports, certificates, and associated documentation.

### MISRA C Compliant

MISRA C is a set of programming guidelines for critical systems using the C programming language. The original MISRA C guidelines were primarily targeted toward automotive applications; however, MISRA C is now widely recognized as being applicable to any safety critical application. ThreadX is compliant with all "required" and "mandatory" rules of MISRA-C:2004 and MISRA C:2012. ThreadX is also compliant with all but three

"advisory" rules. Refer to the *ThreadX\_MISRA\_Compliance.pdf* document for more details.

## UL Certification

ThreadX has been certified by UL for compliance with UL 60730-1 Annex H, CSA E60730-1 Annex H, IEC 60730-1 Annex H, UL 60335-1 Annex R, IEC 60335-1 Annex R, and UL 1998 safety standards for software in programmable components. Along with IEC/UL 60730-1, which has requirements for "Controls Using Software" in its Annex H, the IEC 60335-1 standard describes the requirements for "Programmable Electronic Circuits" in its Annex R. IEC 60730 Annex H and IEC 60335-1 Annex R address the safety of MCU hardware and software used in appliances such as washing machines, dishwashers, dryers, refrigerators, freezers, and ovens.



*UL/IEC 60730, UL/IEC 60335, UL 1998*

### IMPORTANT

Please contact Microsoft for more information on which version(s) of ThreadX have been certified by TÜV or for the availability of test reports, certificates, and associated documentation.

## Embedded Applications

Embedded applications execute on microprocessors buried within products such as wireless communication devices, automobile engines, laser printers, medical devices, etc. Another distinction of embedded applications is that their software and hardware have a dedicated purpose.

### Real-time Software

When time constraints are imposed on the application software, it is called the *real-time* software. Embedded applications are almost always real-time because of their inherent interaction with external events.

### Multitasking

As mentioned, embedded applications have a dedicated purpose. To fulfill this purpose, the software must perform a variety of *tasks*. A task is a semi-independent portion of the application that carries out a specific duty. It is also the case that some tasks are more important than others. One of the major difficulties in an embedded application is the allocation of the processor between the various application tasks. This allocation of processing between competing tasks is the primary purpose of ThreadX.

### Tasks vs. Threads

Another distinction about tasks is that the term *task* is used in a variety of ways. It sometimes means a separately loadable program. In other instances, it may refer to an internal program segment. Therefore, in contemporary operating systems, there are two terms that more or less replace the use of task: *process* and *thread*. A *process* is a completely independent program that has its own address space, while a *thread* is a semi-independent program segment that executes within a process. Threads share the same process address space. The overhead associated with thread management is minimal.

Most embedded applications cannot afford the overhead (both memory and performance) associated with a

full-blown process-oriented operating system. In addition, smaller microprocessors don't have the hardware architecture to support a true process-oriented operating system. For these reasons, ThreadX implements a thread model, which is both extremely efficient and practical for most real-time embedded applications.

To avoid confusion, ThreadX does not use the term *task*. Instead, the more descriptive and contemporary name *thread* is used.

## ThreadX Benefits

Using ThreadX provides many benefits to embedded applications. Of course, the primary benefit rests in how embedded application threads are allocated processing time.

### Improved Responsiveness

Prior to real-time kernels like ThreadX, most embedded applications allocated processing time with a simple control loop, usually from within the C *main* function. This approach is still used in very small or simple applications. However, in large or complex applications, it is not practical because the response time to any event is a function of the worst case processing time of one pass through the control loop.

Making matters worse, the timing characteristics of the application change whenever modifications are made to the control loop. This makes the application inherently unstable and difficult to maintain and improve on.

ThreadX provides fast and deterministic response times to important external events. ThreadX accomplishes this through its preemptive, priority based scheduling algorithm, which allows a higher priority thread to preempt an executing lower-priority thread. As a result, the worst-case response time approaches the time required to perform a context switch. This is not only deterministic, but it is also extremely fast.

### Software Maintenance

The ThreadX kernel enables application developers to concentrate on specific requirements of their application threads without having to worry about changing the timing of other areas of the application. This feature also makes it much easier to repair or enhance an application that utilizes ThreadX.

### Increased Throughput

A possible work-around to the control loop response time problem is to add more polling. This improves the responsiveness, but it still doesn't guarantee a constant worst-case response time and does nothing to enhance future modification of the application. Also, the processor is now performing even more unnecessary processing because of the extra polling. All of this unnecessary processing reduces the overall throughput of the system.

An interesting point regarding overhead is that many developers assume that multithreaded environments like ThreadX increase overhead and have a negative impact on total system throughput. But in some cases, multithreading actually reduces overhead by eliminating all of the redundant polling that occurs in control loop environments. The overhead associated with multithreaded kernels is typically a function of the time required for context switching. If the context switch time is less than the polling process, ThreadX provides a solution with the potential of less overhead and more throughput. This makes ThreadX an obvious choice for applications that have any degree of complexity or size.

### Processor Isolation

ThreadX provides a robust processor-independent interface between the application and the underlying processor. This allows developers to concentrate on the application rather than spending a significant amount of time learning hardware details.

### Dividing the Application

In control loop-based applications, each developer must have an intimate knowledge of the entire application's run-time behavior and requirements. This is because the processor allocation logic is dispersed throughout the entire application. As an application increases in size or complexity, it becomes impossible for all developers to remember the precise processing requirements of the entire application.

ThreadX frees each developer from the worries associated with processor allocation and allows them to concentrate on their specific piece of the embedded application. In addition, ThreadX forces the application to be divided into clearly defined threads. By itself, this division of the application into threads makes development much simpler.

### **Ease of Use**

ThreadX is designed with the application developer in mind. The ThreadX architecture and service call interface are designed to be easily understood. As a result, ThreadX developers can quickly use its advanced features.

### **Improve Time-to-market**

All of the benefits of ThreadX accelerate the software development process. ThreadX takes care of most processor issues and the most common safety certifications, thereby removing this effort from the development schedule. All of this results in a faster time to market!

### **Protecting the Software Investment**

Because of its architecture, ThreadX is easily ported to new processor and/or development tool environments. This, coupled with the fact that ThreadX insulates applications from details of the underlying processors, makes ThreadX applications highly portable. As a result, the application's migration path is guaranteed, and the original development investment is protected.

# Chapter 2 - Installation and Use of Azure RTOS ThreadX

11/1/2022 • 10 minutes to read

This chapter contains a description of various issues related to installation, setup, and usage of the high-performance Azure RTOS ThreadX kernel.

## Host Considerations

Embedded software is usually developed on Windows or Linux (Unix) host computers. After the application is compiled, linked, and located on the host, it is downloaded to the target hardware for execution.

Usually the target download is done from within the development tool debugger. After the download has completed, the debugger is responsible for providing target execution control (go, halt, breakpoint, etc.) as well as access to memory and processor registers.

Most development tool debuggers communicate with the target hardware via on-chip debug (OCD) connections such as JTAG (IEEE 1149.1) and Background Debug Mode (BDM). Debuggers also communicate with target hardware through In-Circuit Emulation (ICE) connections. Both OCD and ICE connections provide robust solutions with minimal intrusion on the target resident software.

As for resources used on the host, the source code for ThreadX is delivered in ASCII format and requires approximately 1 MByte of space on the host computer's hard disk.

## Target Considerations

ThreadX requires between 2 KBytes and 20 KBytes of Read Only Memory (ROM) on the target. It also requires another 1 to 2 KBytes of the target's Random Access Memory (RAM) for the ThreadX system stack and other global data structures.

For timer-related functions like service call time-outs, time-slicing, and application timers to function, the underlying target hardware must provide a periodic interrupt source. If the processor has this capability, it is utilized by ThreadX. Otherwise, if the target processor does not have the ability to generate a periodic interrupt, the user's hardware must provide it. Setup and configuration of the timer interrupt is typically located in the *tx\_initialize\_low\_level* assembly file in the ThreadX distribution.

### NOTE

*ThreadX is still functional even if no periodic timer interrupt source is available. However, none of the timer-related services are functional.*

In function *\_tx\_initialize\_low\_level*, the first-available RAM address is saved in global variable *\_tx\_initialize\_unused\_memory*. This address is later passed into *tx\_application\_define* (see [./chapter3.md#application-definition-function](#)). The exception vector table and interrupt priorities may also be configured in *\_tx\_initialize\_low\_level*.

## Product Distribution

Azure RTOS ThreadX can be obtained from our public source code repository at <https://github.com/azure-rtos/threadx/>.

The following is a list of several important files in the repository.

FILENAME	DESCRIPTION
<b>tx_api.h</b>	C header file containing all system equates, data structures, and service prototypes.
<b>tx_port.h</b>	C header file containing all development-tool and target-specific data definitions and structures.
<b>demo_threadx.c</b>	C file containing a small demo application.
<b>tx.a (or tx.lib)</b>	Binary version of the ThreadX C library that is distributed with the <i>standard</i> package.

#### NOTE

*All file names are in lower-case. This naming convention makes it easier to convert the commands to Linux (Unix) development platforms.*

## ThreadX Installation

ThreadX is installed by cloning the GitHub repository to your local machine. The following is typical syntax for creating a clone of the ThreadX repository on your PC.

```
git clone https://github.com/azure-rtos/threadx
```

Alternatively you can download a copy of the repository using the download button on the GitHub main page.

You will also find instructions for building the ThreadX library on the front page of the online repository.

#### NOTE

*Application software needs access to the ThreadX library file (usually **tx.a** or **tx.lib**) and the C include files **tx\_api.h** and **tx\_port.h**. This is accomplished either by setting the appropriate path for the development tools or by copying these files into the application development area.*

## Using ThreadX

To use ThreadX, the application code must include **tx\_api.h** during compilation and link with the ThreadX run-time library **tx.a** (or **tx.lib**).

There are four steps required to build a ThreadX application.

1. Include the **tx\_api.h** file in all application files that use ThreadX services or data structures.
2. Create the standard C *main* function. This function must eventually call **tx\_kernel\_enter** to start ThreadX. Application-specific initialization that does not involve ThreadX may be added prior to entering the kernel.



### IMPORTANT

*The ThreadX entry function **tx\_kernel\_enter** does not return. So be sure not to place any processing or function calls after it.*

3. Create the **tx\_application\_define** function. This is where the initial system resources are created. Examples of system resources include threads, queues, memory pools, event flags groups, mutexes, and semaphores.
4. Compile application source and link with the ThreadX run-time library **tx.lib**. The resulting image can be downloaded to the target and executed!

## Small Example System

The small example system in Figure 1 shows the creation of a single thread with a priority of 3. The thread executes, increments a counter, then sleeps for one clock tick. This process continues forever.

```
#include "tx_api.h"
unsigned long my_thread_counter = 0;
TX_THREAD my_thread;
main( )
{
    /* Enter the ThreadX kernel. */
    tx_kernel_enter( );
}
void tx_application_define(void *first_unused_memory)
{
    /* Create my_thread! */
    tx_thread_create(&my_thread, "My Thread",
        my_thread_entry, 0x1234, first_unused_memory, 1024,
        3, 3, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE, TX_AUTO_START);
}
void my_thread_entry(ULONG thread_input)
{
    /* Enter into a forever loop. */
    while(1)
    {
        /* Increment thread counter. */
        my_thread_counter++;
        /* Sleep for 1 tick. */
        tx_thread_sleep(1);
    }
}
```

FIGURE 1. Template for Application Development

Although this is a simple example, it provides a good template for real application development.

## Troubleshooting

Each ThreadX port is delivered with a demonstration application. It is always a good idea to first get the demonstration system running—either on actual target hardware or simulated environment.

If the demonstration system does not execute properly, the following are some troubleshooting tips.

1. Determine how much of the demonstration is running.
2. Increase stack sizes (this is more important in actual application code than it is for the demonstration).
3. Rebuild the ThreadX library with TX\_ENABLE\_STACK\_CHECKING defined. This enables the built-in ThreadX stack checking.

4. Temporarily bypass any recent changes to see if the problem disappears or changes. Such information should prove useful to support engineers.

Follow the procedures outlined in "[Customer Support Center](#)" to send the information gathered from the troubleshooting steps.

## Configuration Options

There are several configuration options when building the ThreadX library and the application using ThreadX. The options below can be defined in the application source, on the command line, or within the *tx\_user.h* include file.

### IMPORTANT

*Options defined in *tx\_user.h* are applied only if the application and ThreadX library are built with *TX\_INCLUDE\_USER\_DEFINE\_FILE* defined.*

### Smallest Configuration

For the smallest code size, the following ThreadX configuration options should be considered (in absence of all other options).

```
TX_DISABLE_ERROR_CHECKING
TX_DISABLE_PREEMPTION_THRESHOLD
TX_DISABLE_NOTIFY_CALLBACKS
TX_DISABLE_REDUNDANT_CLEARING
TX_DISABLE_STACK_FILLING
TX_NOT_INTERRUPTABLE
TX_TIMER_PROCESS_IN_ISR
```

### Fastest Configuration

For the fastest execution, the same configuration options used for the Smallest Configuration previously, but with these options also considered.

```
TX_REACTIVATE_INLINE
TX_INLINE_THREAD_RESUME_SUSPEND
```

[Detailed configuration options](#) are described.

### Global Time Source

For other Microsoft Azure RTOS products (FileX, NetX, GUIX, USBX, etc.), ThreadX defines the number of ThreadX timer ticks that represents one second. Others derive their time requirements based on this constant. By default, the value is 100, assuming a 10ms periodic interrupt. The user may override this value by defining *TX\_TIMER\_TICKS\_PER\_SECOND* with the desired value in *tx\_port.h* or within the IDE or command line.

### Detailed Configuration Options

#### TX\_BYTE\_POOL\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO

When defined, this option enables the gathering of performance information on byte pools. By default, this option is not defined.

#### TX\_BYTE\_POOL\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO

When defined, this option enables the gathering of performance information on byte pools. By default, this option is not defined.

## TX\_DISABLE\_ERROR\_CHECKING

Bypasses basic service call error checking. When defined in the application source, all basic parameter error checking is disabled. This may improve performance by as much as 30% and may also reduce the image size.

### NOTE

*It is only safe to disable error checking if the application can absolutely guarantee all input parameters are always valid under all circumstances, including input parameters derived from external input. If invalid input is supplied to the API with error checking disabled, the resulting behavior is undefined and could result in memory corruption or system crash.*

### NOTE

*ThreadX API return values not affected by disabling error checking are listed in bold in the "Return Values" section of each API description in Chapter 4. The nonbold return values are void if error checking is disabled by using the TX\_DISABLE\_ERROR\_CHECKING option.*

## TX\_DISABLE\_NOTIFY\_CALLBACKS

When defined, disables the notify callbacks for various ThreadX objects. Using this option slightly reduces code size and improves performance. By default, this option is not defined.

## TX\_DISABLE\_PREEMPTION\_THRESHOLD

When defined, disables the preemption-threshold feature and slightly reduces code size and improves performance. Of course, the preemption-threshold capabilities are no longer available. By default, this option is not defined.

## TX\_DISABLE\_REDUNDANT\_CLEARING

When defined, removes the logic for initializing ThreadX global C data structures to zero. This should only be used if the compiler's initialization code sets all un-initialized C global data to zero. Using this option slightly reduces code size and improves performance during initialization. By default, this option is not defined.

## TX\_DISABLE\_STACK\_FILLING

When defined, disables placing the 0xEF value in each byte of each thread's stack when created. By default, this option is not defined.

## TX\_ENABLE\_EVENT\_TRACE

When defined, ThreadX enables the event gathering code for creating a TraceX trace buffer.

## TX\_ENABLE\_STACK\_CHECKING

When defined, enables ThreadX run-time stack checking, which includes analysis of how much stack has been used and examination of data pattern "fences" before and after the stack area. If a stack error is detected, the registered application stack error handler is called. This option does result in slightly increased overhead and code size. Review the *tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify* API function for more information. By default, this option is not defined.

## TX\_EVENT\_FLAGS\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO

When defined, enables the gathering of performance information on event flags groups. By default, this option is not defined.

## TX\_INLINE\_THREAD\_RESUME\_SUSPEND

When defined, ThreadX improves the *tx\_thread\_resume* and *tx\_thread\_suspend* API calls via in-line code.

This increases code size but enhances performance of these two API calls.

#### **TX\_MAX\_PRIORITIES**

Defines the priority levels for ThreadX. Legal values range from 32 through 1024 (inclusive) and *must* be evenly divisible by 32. Increasing the number of priority levels supported increases the RAM usage by 128 bytes for every group of 32 priorities. However, there is only a negligible effect on performance. By default, this value is set to 32 priority levels.

#### **TX\_MINIMUM\_STACK**

Defines the minimum stack size (in bytes). It is used for error checking when threads are created. The default value is port-specific and is found in *tx\_port.h*.

#### **TX\_MISRA\_ENABLE**

When defined, ThreadX utilizes MISRA C compliant conventions. Refer to [ThreadX MISRA Compliance](#) for details.

#### **TX\_MUTEX\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO**

When defined, enables the gathering of performance information on mutexes. By default, this option is not defined.

#### **TX\_NO\_TIMER**

When defined, the ThreadX timer logic is completely disabled. This is useful in cases where the ThreadX timer features (thread sleep, API timeouts, time-slicing, and application timers) are not utilized. If **TX\_NO\_TIMER** is specified, the option **TX\_TIMER\_PROCESS\_IN\_ISR** must also be defined.

#### **TX\_NOT\_INTERRUPTABLE**

When defined, ThreadX does not attempt to minimize interrupt lockout time. This results in faster execution but does slightly increase interrupt lockout time.

#### **TX\_QUEUE\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO**

When defined, enables the gathering of performance information on queues. By default, this option is not defined.

#### **TX\_REACTIVATE\_INLINE**

When defined, performs reactivation of ThreadX timers inline instead of using a function call. This improves performance but slightly increases code size. By default, this option is not defined.

#### **TX\_SEMAPHORE\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO**

When defined, enables the gathering of performance information on semaphores. By default, this option is not defined.

#### **TX\_THREAD\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO**

When defined, enables the gathering of performance information on threads. By default, this option is not defined.

#### **TX\_TIMER\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO**

When defined, enables the gathering of performance information on timers. By default, this option is not defined.

#### **TX\_TIMER\_PROCESS\_IN\_ISR**

When defined, eliminates the internal system timer thread for ThreadX. This results in improved performance on timer events and smaller RAM requirements because the timer stack and control block are no longer needed. However, using this option moves all the timer expiration processing to the timer ISR level. By default, this option is not defined.

**NOTE**

*Services allowed from timers may not be allowed from ISRs and thus might not be allowed when using this option.*

#### **TX\_TIMER\_THREAD\_PRIORITY**

Defines the priority of the internal ThreadX system timer thread. The default value is priority 0—the highest priority in ThreadX. The default value is defined in *tx\_port.h*.

#### **TX\_TIMER\_THREAD\_STACK\_SIZE**

Defines the stack size (in bytes) of the internal ThreadX system timer thread. This thread processes all thread sleep requests as well as all service call timeouts. In addition, all application timer callback routines are invoked from this context. The default value is port-specific and is found in *tx\_port.h*.

## ThreadX Version ID

The programmer can obtain the ThreadX version from examination of the *tx\_port.h* file. In addition, this file also contains a version history of the corresponding port. Application software can obtain the ThreadX version by examining the global string `_tx_version_id`.

# Chapter 3 - Functional Components of Azure RTOS ThreadX

11/1/2022 • 55 minutes to read

This chapter contains a description of the high-performance Azure RTOS ThreadX kernel from a functional perspective. Each functional component is presented in an easy-to-understand manner.

## Execution Overview

There are four types of program execution within a ThreadX application: Initialization, Thread Execution, Interrupt Service Routines (ISRs), and Application Timers.

Figure 2 shows each different type of program execution. More detailed information about each of these types is found in subsequent sections of this chapter.

### Initialization

As the name implies, this is the first type of program execution in a ThreadX application. Initialization includes all program execution between processor reset and the entry point of the *thread scheduling loop*.

### Thread Execution

After initialization is complete, ThreadX enters its thread scheduling loop. The scheduling loop looks for an application thread ready for execution. When a ready thread is found, ThreadX transfers control to it. After the thread is finished (or another higher-priority thread becomes ready), execution transfers back to the thread scheduling loop to find the next highest priority ready thread.

This process of continually executing and scheduling threads is the most common type of program execution in ThreadX applications.

### Interrupt Service Routines (ISR)

Interrupts are the cornerstone of real-time systems. Without interrupts it would be extremely difficult to respond to changes in the external world in a timely manner. On detection of an interrupt, the processor saves key information about the current program execution (usually on the stack), then transfers control to a predefined program area. This predefined program area is commonly called an Interrupt Service Routine. In most cases, interrupts occur during thread execution (or in the thread scheduling loop). However, interrupts may also occur inside of an executing ISR or an Application Timer.

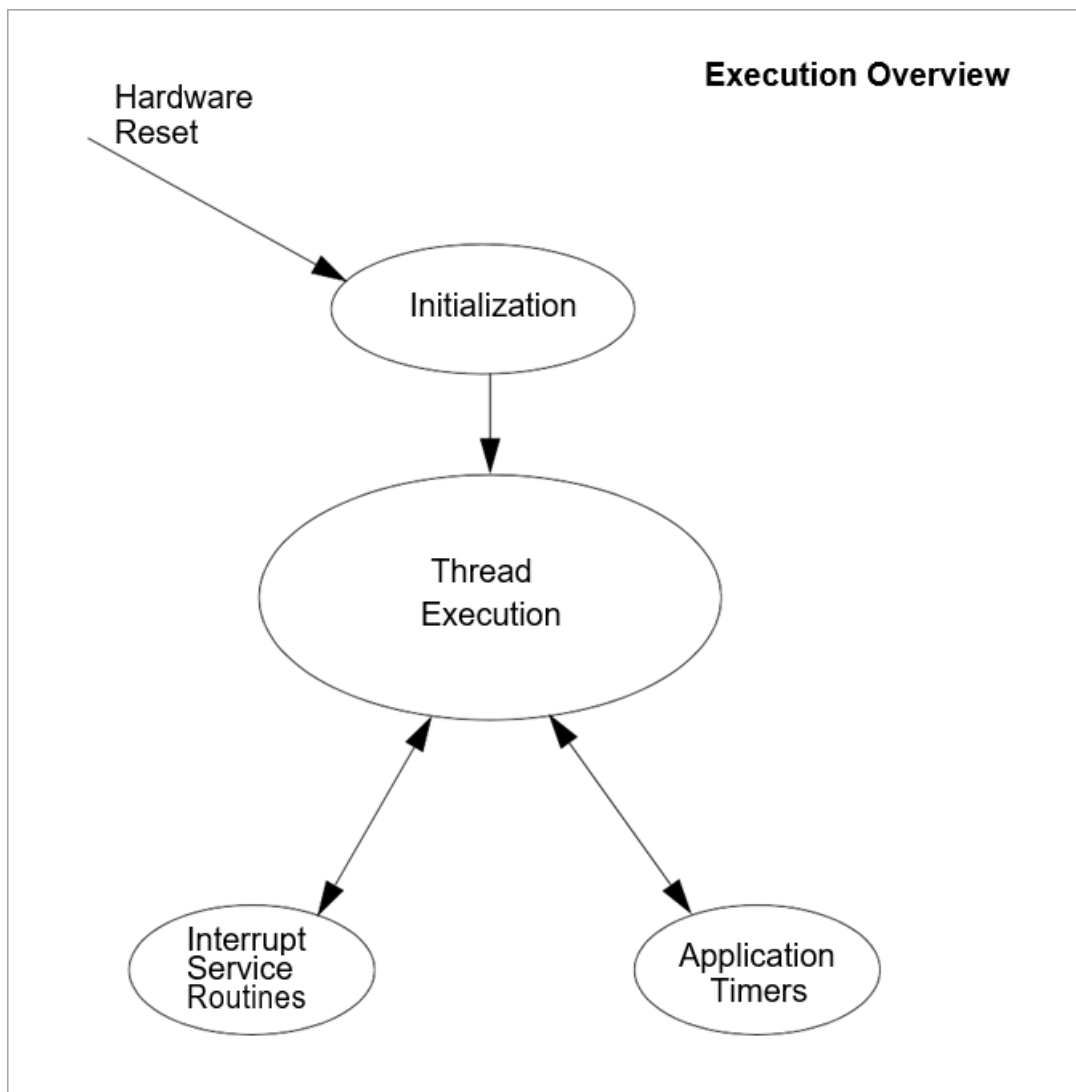


FIGURE 2. Types of Program Execution

### Application Timers

Application Timers are similar to ISRs, except the hardware implementation (usually a single periodic hardware interrupt is used) is hidden from the application. Such timers are used by applications to perform time-outs, periodics, and/or watchdog services. Just like ISRs, Application Timers most often interrupt thread execution. Unlike ISRs, however, Application Timers cannot interrupt each other.

## Memory Usage

ThreadX resides along with the application program. As a result, the static memory (or fixed memory) usage of ThreadX is determined by the development tools; e.g., the compiler, linker, and locator. Dynamic memory (or run-time memory) usage is under direct control of the application.

### Static Memory Usage

Most of the development tools divide the application program image into five basic areas: *instruction*, *constant*, *initialized data*, *uninitialized data*, and *system stack*. Figure 3 shows an example of these memory areas.

It is important to understand that this is only an example. The actual static memory layout is specific to the processor, development tools, and the underlying hardware.

The instruction area contains all of the program's processor instructions. This area is typically the largest and is often located in ROM.

The constant area contains various compiled constants, including strings defined or referenced within the program. In addition, this area contains the "initial copy" of the initialized data area. During the *Memory Usage*

compiler's initialization process, this portion of the constant area is used to set up the initialized data area in RAM. The constant area usually follows the instruction area and is often located in ROM.

The initialized data and uninitialized data areas contain all of the global and static variables. These areas are always located in RAM.

The system stack is generally set up immediately following the initialized and uninitialized data areas.

The system stack is used by the compiler during initialization, then by ThreadX during initialization and, subsequently, in ISR processing.

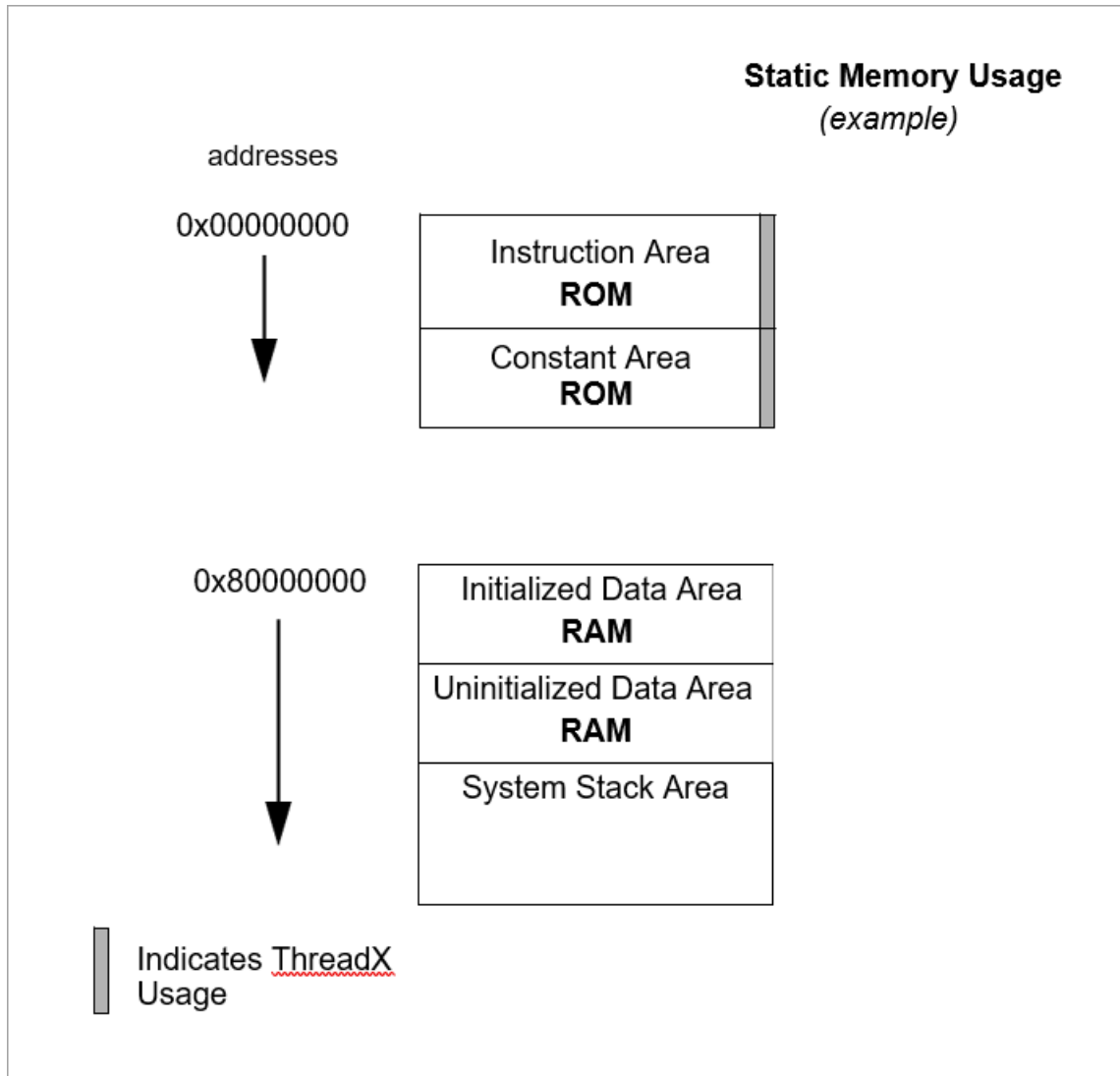


FIGURE 3. Memory Area Example

### Dynamic Memory Usage

As mentioned before, dynamic memory usage is under direct control of the application. Control blocks and memory areas associated with stacks, queues, and memory pools can be placed anywhere in the target's memory space. This is an important feature because it facilitates easy utilization of different types of physical memory.

For example, suppose a target hardware environment has both fast memory and slow memory. If the application needs extra performance for a high-priority thread, its control block (TX\_THREAD) and stack can be placed in the fast memory area, which may greatly enhance its performance.

## Initialization

Understanding the initialization process is important. The initial hardware environment is set up here. In



addition, this is where the application is given its initial personality.

#### NOTE

*ThreadX attempts to utilize (whenever possible) the complete development tool's initialization process. This makes it easier to upgrade to new versions of the development tools in the future.*

### System Reset Vector

All microprocessors have reset logic. When a reset occurs (either hardware or software), the address of the application's entry point is retrieved from a specific memory location. After the entry point is retrieved, the processor transfers control to that location. The application entry point is quite often written in the native assembly language and is usually supplied by the development tools (at least in template form). In some cases, a special version of the entry program is supplied with ThreadX.

### Development Tool Initialization

After the low-level initialization is complete, control transfers to the development tool's high-level initialization. This is usually the place where initialized global and static C variables are set up. Remember their initial values are retrieved from the constant area. Exact initialization processing is development tool specific.

### main Function

When the development tool initialization is complete, control transfers to the user-supplied *main* function. At this point, the application controls what happens next. For most applications, the main function simply calls *tx\_kernel\_enter*, which is the entry into ThreadX. However, applications can perform preliminary processing (usually for hardware initialization) prior to entering ThreadX.

#### IMPORTANT

*The call to *tx\_kernel\_enter* does not return, so do not place any processing after it.*

### tx\_kernel\_enter

The entry function coordinates initialization of various internal ThreadX data structures and then calls the application's definition function *tx\_application\_define*.

When *tx\_application\_define* returns, control is transferred to the thread scheduling loop. This marks the end of initialization.

### Application Definition Function

The *tx\_application\_define* function defines all of the initial application threads, queues, semaphores, mutexes, event flags, memory pools, and timers. It is also possible to create and delete system resources from threads during the normal operation of the application. However, all initial application resources are defined here.

The *tx\_application\_define* function has a single input parameter and it is certainly worth mentioning. The *first-available* RAM address is the sole input parameter to this function. It is typically used as a starting point for initial run-time memory allocations of thread stacks, queues, and memory pools.

#### NOTE

*After initialization is complete, only an executing thread can create and delete system resources—including other threads. Therefore, at least one thread must be created during initialization.*

### Interrupts

Interrupts are left disabled during the entire initialization process. If the application somehow enables interrupts, unpredictable behavior may occur. Figure 4 shows the entire initialization process, from system reset through

application-specific initialization.

## Thread Execution

Scheduling and executing application threads is the most important activity of ThreadX. A thread is typically defined as a semi-independent program segment with a dedicated purpose. The combined processing of all threads makes an application.

Threads are created dynamically by calling *tx\_thread\_create* during initialization or during thread execution. Threads are created in either a *ready* or *suspended* state.

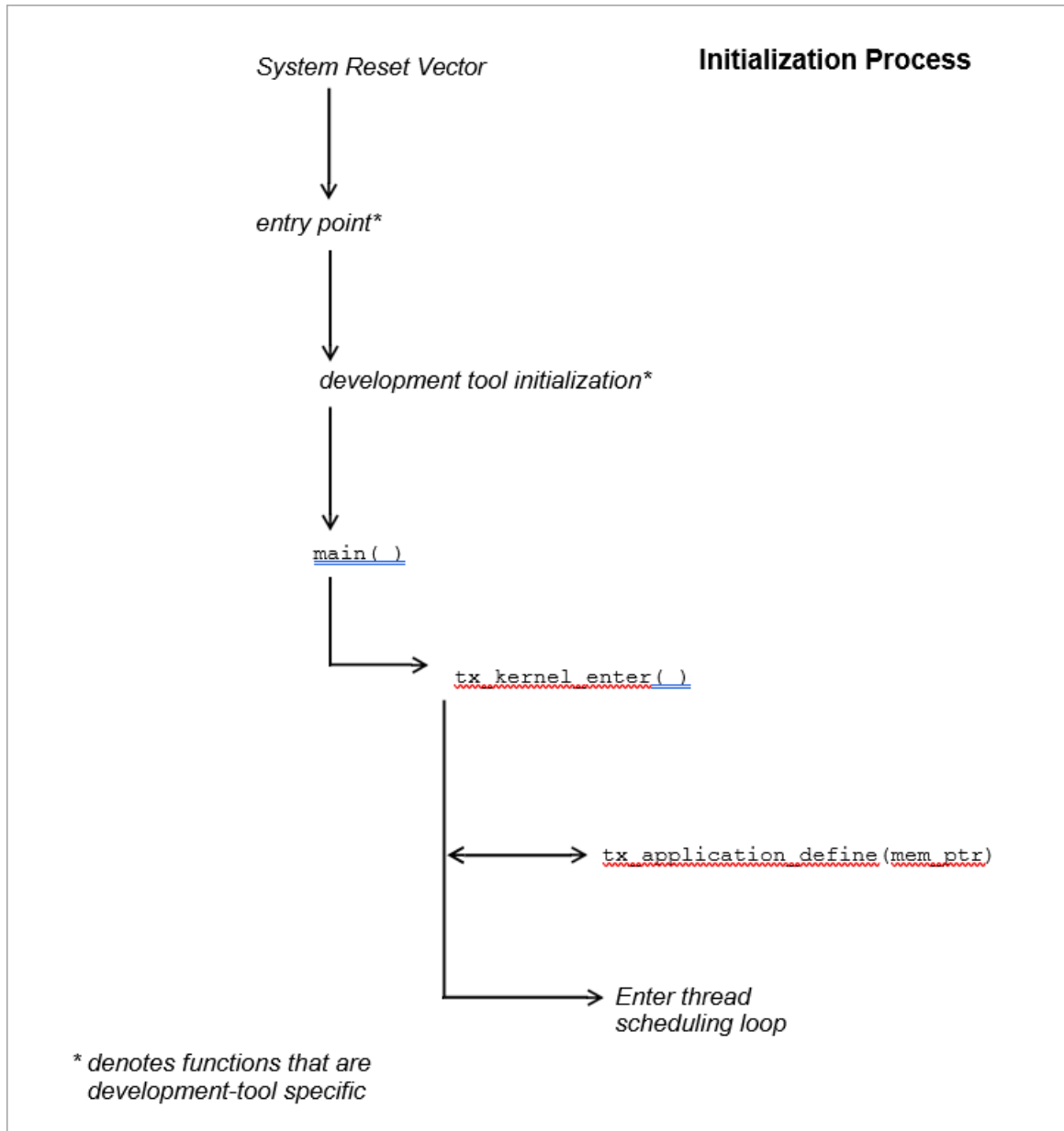


FIGURE 4. Initialization Process

### Thread Execution States

Understanding the different processing states of threads is a key ingredient to understanding the entire multithreaded environment. In ThreadX there are five distinct thread states: *ready*, *suspended*, *executing*, *terminated*, and *completed*. Figure 5 shows the thread state transition diagram for ThreadX.

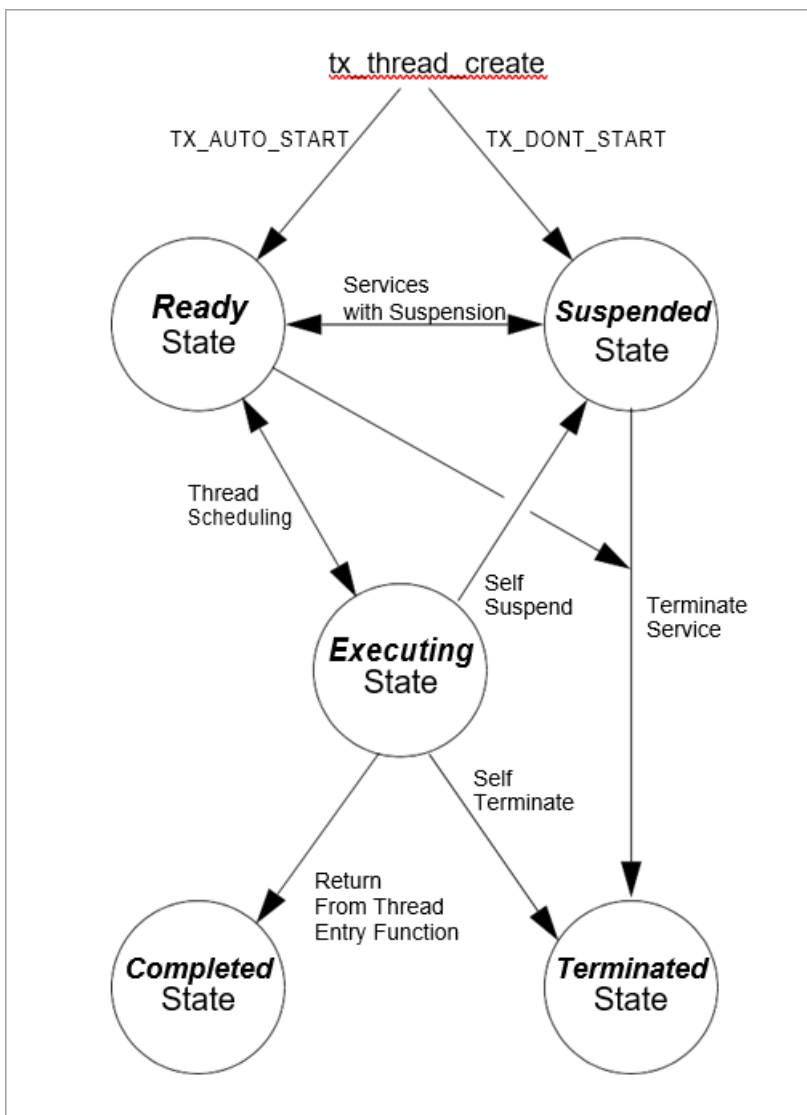


FIGURE 5. Thread State Transition

A thread is in a *ready* state when it is ready for execution. A ready thread is not executed until it is the highest priority thread in ready state. When this happens, ThreadX executes the thread, which then changes its state to *executing*.

If a higher-priority thread becomes ready, the executing thread reverts back to a *ready* state. The newly ready high-priority thread is then executed, which changes its logical state to *executing*. This transition between *ready* and *executing* states occurs every time thread preemption occurs.

At any given moment, only one thread is in an *executing* state. This is because a thread in the *executing* state has control of the underlying processor.

Threads in a *suspended* state are not eligible for execution. Reasons for being in a *suspended* state include suspension for time, queue messages, semaphores, mutexes, event flags, memory, and basic thread suspension. After the cause for suspension is removed, the thread is placed back in a *ready* state.

A thread in a *completed* state is a thread that has completed its processing and returned from its entry function. The entry function is specified during thread creation. A thread in a *completed* state cannot execute again.

A thread is in a *terminated* state because another thread or the thread itself called the *tx\_thread\_terminate* service. A thread in a *terminated* state cannot execute again.

## IMPORTANT

*If re-starting a completed or terminated thread is desired, the application must first delete the thread. It can then be re-created and re-started.*

### Thread Entry/Exit Notification

Some applications may find it advantageous to be notified when a specific thread is entered for the first time, when it completes, or is terminated. ThreadX provides this ability through the ***tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify*** service. This service registers an application notification function for a specific thread, which is called by ThreadX whenever the thread starts running, completes, or is terminated. After being invoked, the application notification function can perform the application-specific processing. This typically involves informing another application thread of the event via a ThreadX synchronization primitive.

### Thread Priorities

As mentioned before, a thread is a semi-independent program segment with a dedicated purpose. However, all threads are not created equal! The dedicated purpose of some threads is much more important than others. This heterogeneous type of thread importance is a hallmark of embedded realtime applications.

ThreadX determines a thread's importance when the thread is created by assigning a numerical value representing its *priority*. The maximum number of ThreadX priorities is configurable from 32 through 1024 in increments of 32. The actual maximum number of priorities is determined by the **TX\_MAX\_PRIORITIES** constant during compilation of the ThreadX library. Having a larger number of priorities does not significantly increase processing overhead. However, for each group of 32 priority levels an additional 128 bytes of RAM is required to manage them. For example, 32 priority levels require 128 bytes of RAM, 64 priority levels require 256 bytes of RAM, and 96 priority levels requires 384 bytes of RAM.

By default, ThreadX has 32 priority levels, ranging from priority 0 through priority 31. Numerically smaller values imply higher priority. Hence, priority 0 represents the highest priority, while priority (**TX\_MAX\_PRIORITIES** - 1) represents the lowest priority.

Multiple threads can have the same priority relying on cooperative scheduling or time-slicing. In addition, thread priorities can be changed during run-time.

### Thread Scheduling

ThreadX schedules threads based on their priority. The ready thread with the highest priority is executed first. If multiple threads of the same priority are ready, they are executed in a *first-in-first-out* (FIFO) manner.

### Round-robin Scheduling

ThreadX supports *round-robin* scheduling of multiple threads having the same priority. This is accomplished through cooperative calls to ***tx\_thread\_relinquish***. This service gives all other ready threads of the same priority a chance to execute before the ***tx\_thread\_relinquish*** caller executes again.

### Time-Slicing

*Time-slicing* is another form of round-robin scheduling. A time-slice specifies the maximum number of timer ticks (timer interrupts) that a thread can execute without giving up the processor. In ThreadX, time-slicing is available on a per-thread basis. The thread's time-slice is assigned during creation and can be modified during run-time. When a time-slice expires, all other ready threads of the same priority level are given a chance to execute before the time-sliced thread executes again.

A fresh thread time-slice is given to a thread after it suspends, relinquishes, makes a ThreadX service call that causes preemption, or is itself time-sliced.

When a time-sliced thread is preempted, it will resume before other ready threads of equal priority for the remainder of its time-slice.

#### NOTE

*Using time-slicing results in a slight amount of system overhead. Because time-slicing is only useful in cases in which multiple threads share the same priority, threads having a unique priority should not be assigned a time-slice.*

### Preemption

Preemption is the process of temporarily interrupting an executing thread in favor of a higher-priority thread. This process is invisible to the executing thread. When the higher-priority thread is finished, control is transferred back to the exact place where the preemption took place. This is a very important feature in real-time systems because it facilitates fast response to important application events. Although a very important feature, preemption can also be a source of a variety of problems, including starvation, excessive overhead, and priority inversion.

### Preemption Threshold™

To ease some of the inherent problems of preemption, ThreadX provides a unique and advanced feature called *preemption-threshold*.

A preemption-threshold allows a thread to specify a priority *ceiling* for disabling preemption. Threads that have higher priorities than the ceiling are still allowed to preempt, while those less than the ceiling are not allowed to preempt.

For example, suppose a thread of priority 20 only interacts with a group of threads that have priorities between 15 and 20. During its critical sections, the thread of priority 20 can set its preemption-threshold to 15, thereby preventing preemption from all of the threads that it interacts with. This still permits really important threads (priorities between 0 and 14) to preempt this thread during its critical section processing, which results in much more responsive processing.

Of course, it is still possible for a thread to disable all preemption by setting its preemption-threshold to 0. In addition, preemption-threshold can be changed during run-time.

#### NOTE

*Using preemption-threshold disables time-slicing for the specified thread.*

### Priority Inheritance

ThreadX also supports optional priority inheritance within its mutex services described later in this chapter. Priority inheritance allows a lower priority thread to temporarily assume the priority of a high priority thread that is waiting for a mutex owned by the lower priority thread. This capability helps the application to avoid nondeterministic priority inversion by eliminating preemption of intermediate thread priorities. Of course, *preemption-threshold* may be used to achieve a similar result.

### Thread Creation

Application threads are created during initialization or during the execution of other application threads. There is no limit on the number of threads that can be created by an application.

### Thread Control Block TX\_THREAD

The characteristics of each thread are contained in its control block. This structure is defined in the *tx\_api.h* file.

A thread's control block can be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

Locating the control block in other areas requires a bit more care, just like all dynamically-allocated memory. If a control block is allocated within a C function, the memory associated with it is part of the calling thread's stack. In general, avoid using local storage for control blocks because after the function returns, all of its local variable

stack space is released—regardless of whether another thread is using it for a control block.

In most cases, the application is oblivious to the contents of the thread's control block. However, there are some situations, especially during debug, in which looking at certain members is useful. The following are some of the more useful control block members.

**tx\_thread\_run\_count** contains a counter of the number of many times the thread has been scheduled. An increasing counter indicates the thread is being scheduled and executed.

**tx\_thread\_state** contains the state of the associated thread. The following lists the possible thread states.

THREAD STATE	VALUE
TX_READY	(0x00)
TX_COMPLETED	(0x01)
TX_TERMINATED	(0x02)
TX_SUSPENDED	(0x03)
TX_SLEEP	(0x04)
TX_QUEUE_SUSP	(0x05)
TX_SEMAPHORE_SUSP	(0x06)
TX_EVENT_FLAG	(0x07)
TX_BLOCK_MEMORY	(0x08)
TX_BYTE_MEMORY	(0x09)
TX_MUTEX_SUSP	(0x0D)

#### NOTE

*Of course there are many other interesting fields in the thread control block, including the stack pointer, time-slice value, priorities, etc. Users are welcome to review control block members, but modifications are strictly prohibited!*

#### IMPORTANT

*There is no equate for the "executing" state mentioned earlier in this section. It is not necessary because there is only one executing thread at a given time. The state of an executing thread is also TX\_READY.*

### Currently Executing Thread

As mentioned before, there is only one thread executing at any given time. There are several ways to identify the executing thread, depending on which thread is making the request. A program segment can get the control block address of the executing thread by calling **tx\_thread\_identify**. This is useful in shared portions of application code that are executed from multiple threads.

In debug sessions, users can examine the internal ThreadX pointer **\_tx\_thread\_current\_ptr**. It contains the control block address of the currently executing thread. If this pointer is NULL, no application thread is

executing; i.e., ThreadX is waiting in its scheduling loop for a thread to become ready.

### Thread Stack Area

Each thread must have its own stack for saving the context of its last execution and compiler use. Most C compilers use the stack for making function calls and for temporarily allocating local variables. Figure 6 shows a typical thread's stack.

Where a thread stack is located in memory is up to the application. The stack area is specified during thread creation and can be located anywhere in the target's address space. This is an important feature because it allows applications to improve performance of important threads by placing their stack in high-speed RAM.

#### Stack Memory Area (example)

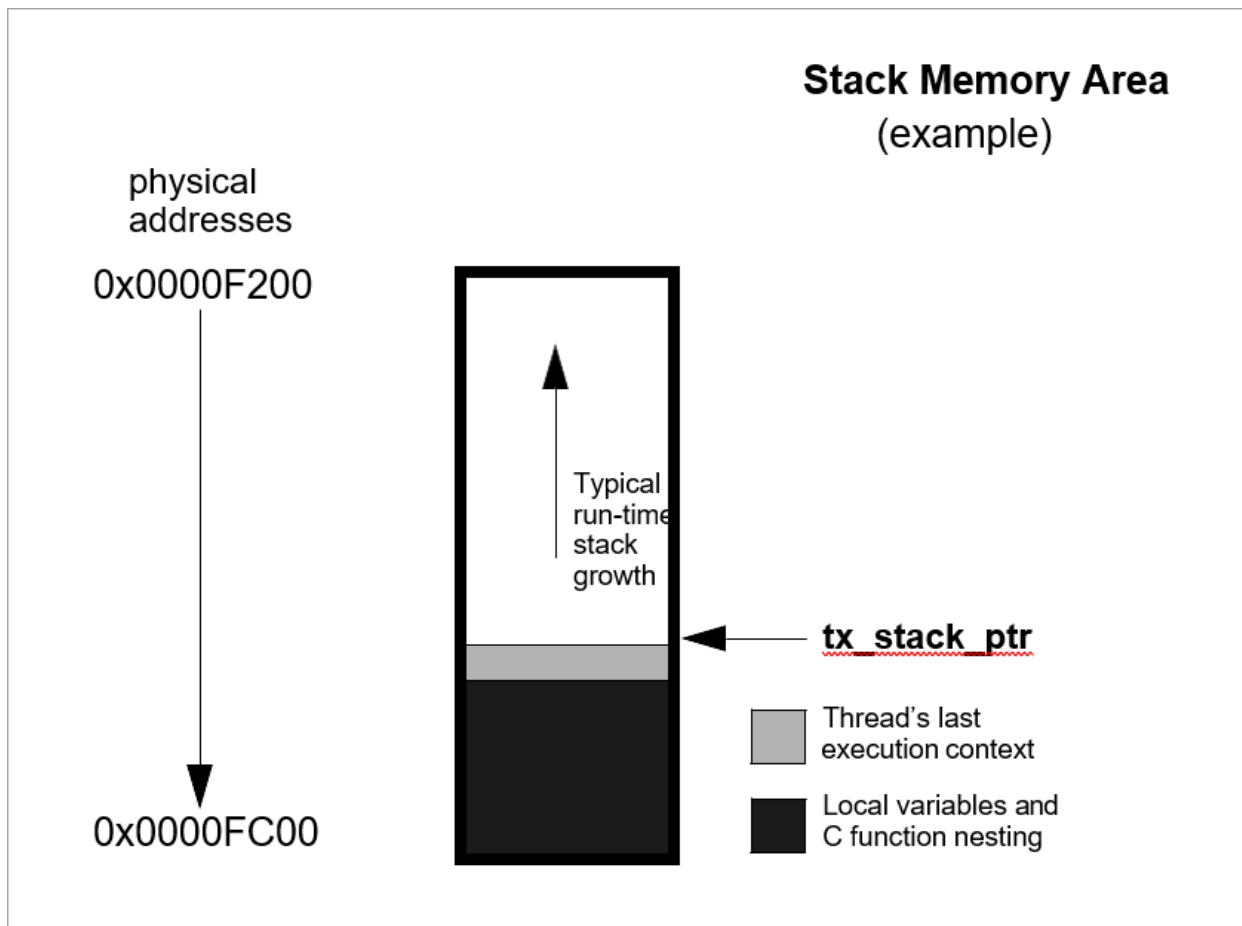


FIGURE 6. Typical Thread Stack

How big a stack should be is one of the most frequently asked questions about threads. A thread's stack area must be large enough to accommodate worst-case function call nesting, local variable allocation, and saving its last execution context.

The minimum stack size, **TX\_MINIMUM\_STACK**, is defined by ThreadX. A stack of this size supports saving a thread's context and minimum amount of function calls and local variable allocation.

For most threads, however, the minimum stack size is too small, and the user must ascertain the worst-case size requirement by examining function-call nesting and local variable allocation. Of course, it is always better to start with a larger stack area.

After the application is debugged, it is possible to tune the thread stack sizes if memory is scarce. A favorite trick is to preset all stack areas with an easily identifiable data pattern like (0xEEFF) prior to creating the threads. After the application has been thoroughly put through its paces, the stack areas can be examined to see how much stack was actually used by finding the area of the stack where the data pattern is still intact. Figure 7 shows a stack preset to 0xEEFF after thorough thread execution.

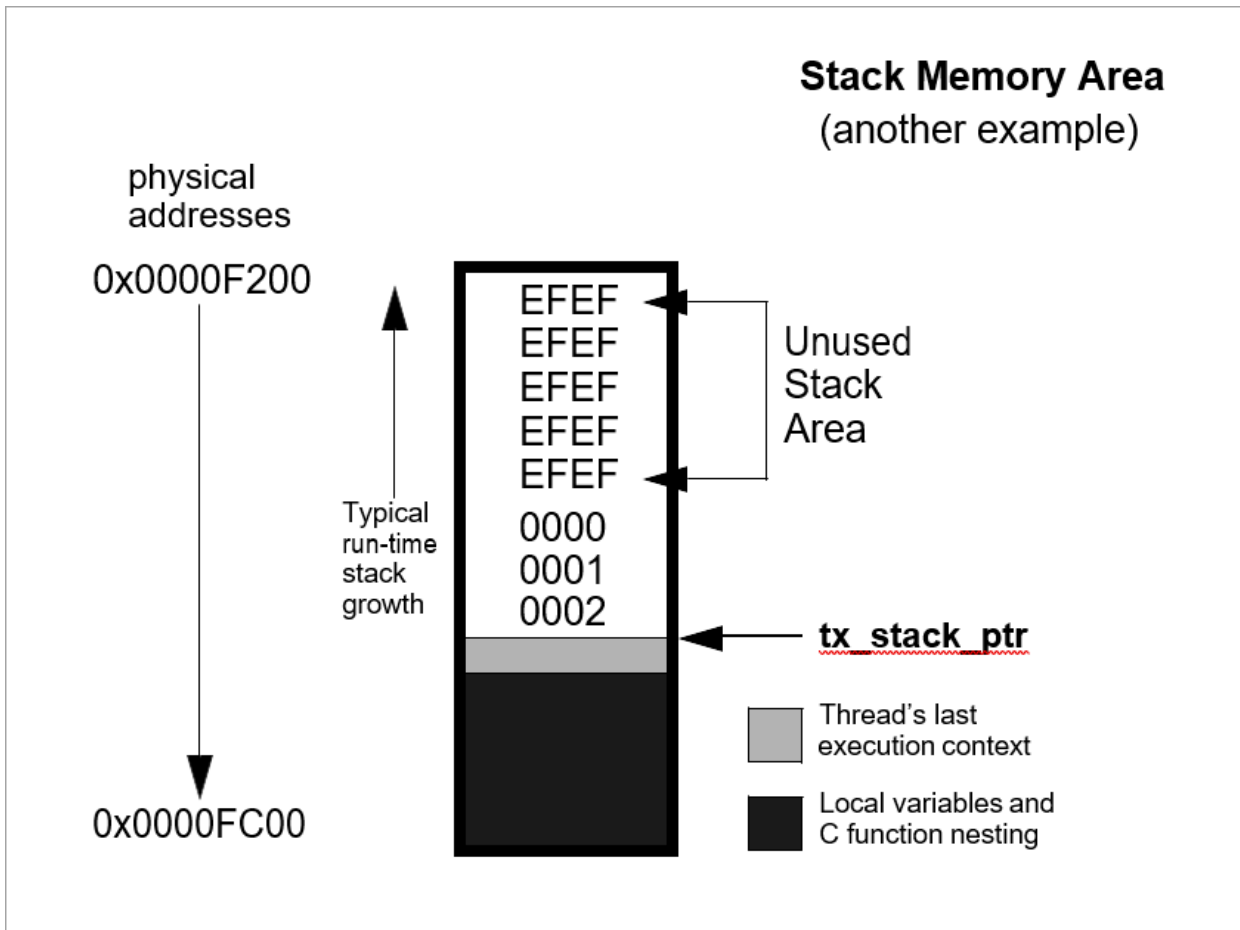


FIGURE 7. Stack Preset to 0xEFEF

#### IMPORTANT

*By default, ThreadX initializes every byte of each thread stack with a value of 0xEF.*

### Memory Pitfalls

The stack requirements for threads can be large. Therefore, it is important to design the application to have a reasonable number of threads. Furthermore, some care must be taken to avoid excessive stack usage within threads. Recursive algorithms and large local data structures should be avoided.

In most cases, an overflowed stack causes thread execution to corrupt memory adjacent (usually before) its stack area. The results are unpredictable, but most often result in an unnatural change in the program counter. This is often called "jumping into the weeds." Of course, the only way to prevent this is to ensure all thread stacks are large enough.

### Optional Run-time Stack Checking

ThreadX provides the ability to check each thread's stack for corruption during run-time. By default, ThreadX fills every byte of thread stacks with a 0xEF data pattern during creation. If the application builds the ThreadX library with `TX_ENABLE_STACK_CHECKING` defined, ThreadX will examine each thread's stack for corruption as it is suspended or resumed. If stack corruption is detected, ThreadX will call the application's stack error handling routine as specified by the call to `tx_thread_stack_error_notify`. Otherwise, if no stack error handler was specified, ThreadX will call the internal `_tx_thread_stack_error_handler` routine.

### Reentrancy

One of the real beauties of multithreading is that the same C function can be called from multiple threads. This provides great power and also helps reduce code space. However, it does require that C functions called from



multiple threads are *reentrant*.

Basically, a reentrant function stores the caller's return address on the current stack and does not rely on global or static C variables that it previously set up. Most compilers place the return address on the stack. Hence, application developers must only worry about the use of *globals* and *statics*.

An example of a non-reentrant function is the string token function *strtok* found in the standard C library. This function "remembers" the previous string pointer on subsequent calls. It does this with a static string pointer. If this function is called from multiple threads, it would most likely return an invalid pointer.

### Thread Priority Pitfalls

Selecting thread priorities is one of the most important aspects of multithreading. It is sometimes very tempting to assign priorities based on a perceived notion of thread importance rather than determining what is exactly required during run-time. Misuse of thread priorities can starve other threads, create priority inversion, reduce processing bandwidth, and make the application's run-time behavior difficult to understand.

As mentioned before, ThreadX provides a priority-based, preemptive scheduling algorithm. Lower priority threads do not execute until there are no higher priority threads ready for execution. If a higher priority thread is always ready, the lower priority threads never execute. This condition is called *thread starvation*.

Most thread starvation problems are detected early in debug and can be solved by ensuring that higher priority threads don't execute continuously. Alternatively, logic can be added to the application that gradually raises the priority of starved threads until they get a chance to execute.

Another pitfall associated with thread priorities is *priority inversion*. Priority inversion takes place when a higher priority thread is suspended because a lower priority thread has a needed resource. Of course, in some instances it is necessary for two threads of different priority to share a common resource. If these threads are the only ones active, the priority inversion time is bounded by the time the lower priority thread holds the resource. This condition is both deterministic and quite normal. However, if threads of intermediate priority become active during this priority inversion condition, the priority inversion time is no longer deterministic and could cause an application failure.

There are principally three distinct methods of preventing nondeterministic priority inversion in ThreadX. First, the application priority selections and run-time behavior can be designed in a manner that prevents the priority inversion problem. Second, lower priority threads can utilize *preemption threshold* to block preemption from intermediate threads while they share resources with higher priority threads. Finally, threads using ThreadX mutex objects to protect system resources may utilize the optional mutex *priority inheritance* to eliminate nondeterministic priority inversion.

### Priority Overhead

One of the most overlooked ways to reduce overhead in multithreading is to reduce the number of context switches. As previously mentioned, a context switch occurs when execution of a higher priority thread is favored over that of the executing thread. It is worthwhile to mention that higher priority threads can become ready as a result of both external events (like interrupts) and from service calls made by the executing thread.

To illustrate the effects thread priorities have on context switch overhead, assume a three thread environment with threads named *thread\_1*, *thread\_2*, and *thread\_3*. Assume further that all of the threads are in a state of suspension waiting for a message. When *thread\_1* receives a message, it immediately forwards it to *thread\_2*. *Thread\_2* then forwards the message to *thread\_3*. *Thread\_3* just discards the message. After each thread processes its message, it goes back and waits for another message.

The processing required to execute these three threads varies greatly depending on their priorities. If all of the threads have the same priority, a single context switch occurs before the execution of each thread. The context switch occurs when each thread suspends on an empty message queue.

However, if *thread\_2* is higher priority than *thread\_1* and *thread\_3* is higher priority than *thread\_2*, the number

of context switches doubles. This is because another context switch occurs inside of the *tx\_queue\_send* service when it detects that a higher priority thread is now ready.

The ThreadX preemption-threshold mechanism can avoid these extra context switches and still allow the previously mentioned priority selections. This is an important feature because it allows several thread priorities during scheduling, while at the same time eliminating some of the unwanted context switching between them during thread execution.

### Run-time Thread Performance Information

ThreadX provides optional run-time thread performance information. If the ThreadX library and application is built with `TX_THREAD_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO` defined, ThreadX accumulates the following information.

Total number for the overall system:

- thread resumptions
- thread suspensions
- service call preemptions
- interrupt preemptions
- priority inversions
- time-slices
- relinquishes
- thread timeouts
- suspension aborts
- idle system returns
- non-idle system returns

Total number for each thread:

- resumptions
- suspensions
- service call preemptions
- interrupt preemptions
- priority inversions
- time-slices
- thread relinquishes
- thread timeouts
- suspension aborts

This information is available at run-time through the services *tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get* and *tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get*. Thread performance information is useful in determining if the application is behaving properly. It is also useful in optimizing the application. For example, a relatively high number of service call preemptions might suggest the thread's priority and/or preemption-threshold is too low. Furthermore, a relatively low number of idle system returns might suggest that lower priority threads are not suspending enough.

## Debugging Pitfalls

Debugging multithreaded applications is a little more difficult because the same program code can be executed from multiple threads. In such cases, a break-point alone may not be enough. The debugger must also view the current thread pointer `_tx_thread_current_ptr` using a conditional breakpoint to see if the calling thread is the one to debug.

Much of this is being handled in multithreading support packages offered through various development tool vendors. Because of its simple design, integrating ThreadX with different development tools is relatively easy.

Stack size is always an important debug topic in multithreading. Whenever unexplained behavior is observed, it is usually a good first guess to increase stack sizes for all threads—especially the stack size of the last thread to execute!

### TIP

*It is also a good idea to build the ThreadX library with `TX_ENABLE_STACK_CHECKING` defined. This will help isolate stack corruption problems as early in the processing as possible.*

## Message Queues

Message queues are the primary means of inter-thread communication in ThreadX. One or more messages can reside in a message queue. A message queue that holds a single message is commonly called a *mailbox*.

Messages are copied to a queue by `tx_queue_send` and are copied from a queue by `tx_queue_receive`. The only exception to this is when a thread is suspended while waiting for a message on an empty queue. In this case, the next message sent to the queue is placed directly into the thread's destination area.

Each message queue is a public resource. ThreadX places no constraints on how message queues are used.

### Creating Message Queues

Message queues are created either during initialization or during run-time by application threads. There is no limit on the number of message queues in an application.

### Message Size

Each message queue supports a number of fixed-sized messages. The available message sizes are 1 through 16 32-bit words inclusive. The message size is specified when the queue is created. Application messages greater than 16 words must be passed by pointer. This is accomplished by creating a queue with a message size of 1 word (enough to hold a pointer) and then sending and receiving message pointers instead of the entire message.

### Message Queue Capacity

The number of messages a queue can hold is a function of its message size and the size of the memory area supplied during creation. The total message capacity of the queue is calculated by dividing the number of bytes in each message into the total number of bytes in the supplied memory area.

For example, if a message queue that supports a message size of 1 32-bit word (4 bytes) is created with a 100-byte memory area, its capacity is 25 messages.

### Queue Memory Area

As mentioned previously, the memory area for buffering messages is specified during queue creation. Like other memory areas in ThreadX, it can be located anywhere in the target's address space.

This is an important feature because it gives the application considerable flexibility. For example, an application might locate the memory area of an important queue in high-speed RAM to improve performance.

## Thread Suspension

Application threads can suspend while attempting to send or receive a message from a queue. Typically, thread suspension involves waiting for a message from an empty queue. However, it is also possible for a thread to suspend trying to send a message to a full queue.

After the condition for suspension is resolved, the service requested is completed and the waiting thread is resumed. If multiple threads are suspended on the same queue, they are resumed in the order they were suspended (FIFO).

However, priority resumption is also possible if the application calls *tx\_queue\_prioritize* prior to the queue service that lifts thread suspension. The queue prioritize service places the highest priority thread at the front of the suspension list, while leaving all other suspended threads in the same FIFO order.

Time-outs are also available for all queue suspensions. Basically, a time-out specifies the maximum number of timer ticks the thread will stay suspended. If a time-out occurs, the thread is resumed and the service returns with the appropriate error code.

### Queue Send Notification

Some applications may find it advantageous to be notified whenever a message is placed on a queue. ThreadX provides this ability through the *tx\_queue\_send\_notify* service. This service registers the supplied application notification function with the specified queue. ThreadX will subsequently invoke this application notification function whenever a message is sent to the queue. The exact processing within the application notification function is determined by the application; however, it typically consists of resuming the appropriate thread for processing the new message.

### Queue Event chaining™

The notification capabilities in ThreadX can be used to chain various synchronization events together. This is typically useful when a single thread must process multiple synchronization events.

For example, suppose a single thread is responsible for processing messages from five different queues and must also suspend when no messages are available. This is easily accomplished by registering an application notification function for each queue and introducing an additional counting semaphore. Specifically, the application notification function performs a *tx\_semaphore\_put* whenever it is called (the semaphore count represents the total number of messages in all five queues). The processing thread suspends on this semaphore via the *tx\_semaphore\_get* service. When the semaphore is available (in this case, when a message is available!), the processing thread is resumed. It then interrogates each queue for a message, processes the found message, and performs another *tx\_semaphore\_get* to wait for the next message. Accomplishing this without event-chaining is quite difficult and likely would require more threads and/or additional application code.

In general, *event-chaining* results in fewer threads, less overhead, and smaller RAM requirements. It also provides a highly flexible mechanism to handle synchronization requirements of more complex systems.

### Run-time Queue Performance Information

ThreadX provides optional run-time queue performance information. If the ThreadX library and application is built with *TX\_QUEUE\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO* defined, ThreadX accumulates the following information.

Total number for the overall system:

- messages sent
- messages received
- queue empty suspensions
- queue full suspensions
- queue full error returns (suspension not specified)

- queue timeouts

Total number for each queue:

- messages sent
- messages received
- queue empty suspensions
- queue full suspensions
- queue full error returns (suspension not specified)
- queue timeouts

This information is available at run-time through the services `tx_queue_performance_info_get` and `tx_queue_performance_system_info_get`. Queue performance information is useful in determining if the application is behaving properly. It is also useful in optimizing the application. For example, a relatively high number of "queue full suspensions" suggests an increase in the queue size might be beneficial.

### Queue Control Block TX\_QUEUE

The characteristics of each message queue are found in its control block. It contains interesting information such as the number of messages in the queue. This structure is defined in the `tx_api.h` file.

Message queue control blocks can also be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

### Message Destination Pitfall

As mentioned previously, messages are copied between the queue area and application data areas. It is important to ensure the destination for a received message is large enough to hold the entire message. If not, the memory following the message destination will likely be corrupted.

#### NOTE

*This is especially lethal when a too-small message destination is on the stack—nothing like corrupting the return address of a function!*

## Counting Semaphores

ThreadX provides 32-bit counting semaphores that range in value between 0 and 4,294,967,295. There are two operations for counting semaphores: `tx_semaphore_get` and `tx_semaphore_put`. The get operation decreases the semaphore by one. If the semaphore is 0, the get operation is not successful. The inverse of the get operation is the put operation. It increases the semaphore by one.

Each counting semaphore is a public resource. ThreadX places no constraints on how counting semaphores are used.

Counting semaphores are typically used for *mutual exclusion*. However, counting semaphores can also be used as a method for event notification.

### Mutual Exclusion

Mutual exclusion pertains to controlling the access of threads to certain application areas (also called *critical sections* or *application resources*). When used for mutual exclusion, the "current count" of a semaphore represents the total number of threads that are allowed access. In most cases, counting semaphores used for mutual exclusion will have an initial value of 1, meaning that only one thread can access the associated resource at a time. Counting semaphores that only have values of 0 or 1 are commonly called *binary semaphores*.

## IMPORTANT

*If a binary semaphore is being used, the user must prevent the same thread from performing a get operation on a semaphore it already owns. A second get would be unsuccessful and could cause indefinite suspension of the calling thread and permanent unavailability of the resource.*

## Event Notification

It is also possible to use counting semaphores as event notification, in a producer-consumer fashion. The consumer attempts to get the counting semaphore while the producer increases the semaphore whenever something is available. Such semaphores usually have an initial value of 0 and will not increase until the producer has something ready for the consumer. Semaphores used for event notification may also benefit from use of the `tx_semaphore_ceiling_put` service call. This service ensures that the semaphore count never exceeds the value supplied in the call.

## Creating Counting Semaphores

Counting semaphores are created either during initialization or during run-time by application threads. The initial count of the semaphore is specified during creation. There is no limit on the number of counting semaphores in an application.

## Thread Suspension

Application threads can suspend while attempting to perform a get operation on a semaphore with a current count of 0.

After a put operation is performed, the suspended thread's get operation is performed and the thread is resumed. If multiple threads are suspended on the same counting semaphore, they are resumed in the same order they were suspended (FIFO).

However, priority resumption is also possible if the application calls `tx_semaphore_prioritize` prior to the semaphore put call that lifts thread suspension. The semaphore prioritize service places the highest priority thread at the front of the suspension list, while leaving all other suspended threads in the same FIFO order.

## Semaphore Put Notification

Some applications may find it advantageous to be notified whenever a semaphore is put. ThreadX provides this ability through the `tx_semaphore_put_notify` service. This service registers the supplied application notification function with the specified semaphore. ThreadX will subsequently invoke this application notification function whenever the semaphore is put. The exact processing within the application notification function is determined by the application; however, it typically consists of resuming the appropriate thread for processing the new semaphore put event.

## Semaphore Event chaining™

The notification capabilities in ThreadX can be used to chain various synchronization events together. This is typically useful when a single thread must process multiple synchronization events.

For example, instead of having separate threads suspend for a queue message, event flags, and a semaphore, the application can register a notification routine for each object. When invoked, the application notification routine can then resume a single thread, which can interrogate each object to find and process the new event.

In general, *event-chaining* results in fewer threads, less overhead, and smaller RAM requirements. It also provides a highly flexible mechanism to handle synchronization requirements of more complex systems.

## Run-time Semaphore Performance Information

ThreadX provides optional run-time semaphore performance information. If the ThreadX library and application is built with `TX_SEMAPHORE_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO` defined, ThreadX accumulates the following information.

Total number for the overall system:

- semaphore puts
- semaphore gets
- semaphore get suspensions
- semaphore get timeouts

Total number for each semaphore:

- semaphore puts
- semaphore gets
- semaphore get suspensions
- semaphore get timeouts

This information is available at run-time through the services *tx\_semaphore\_performance\_info\_get* and *tx\_semaphore\_performance\_system\_info\_get*. Semaphore performance information is useful in determining if the application is behaving properly. It is also useful in optimizing the application. For example, a relatively high number of "semaphore get timeouts" might suggest that other threads are holding resources too long.

### **Semaphore Control Block TX\_SEMAPHORE**

The characteristics of each counting semaphore are found in its control block. It contains information such as the current semaphore count. This structure is defined in the *tx\_api.h* file.

Semaphore control blocks can be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

### **Deadly Embrace**

One of the most interesting and dangerous pitfalls associated with semaphores used for mutual exclusion is the *deadly embrace*. A deadly embrace, or *deadlock*, is a condition in which two or more threads are suspended indefinitely while attempting to get semaphores already owned by each other.

This condition is best illustrated by a two thread, two semaphore example. Suppose the first thread owns the first semaphore and the second thread owns the second semaphore. If the first thread attempts to get the second semaphore and at the same time the second thread attempts to get the first semaphore, both threads enter a deadlock condition. In addition, if these threads stay suspended forever, their associated resources are locked-out forever as well. Figure 8 illustrates this example.

### **Deadly Embrace (example)**

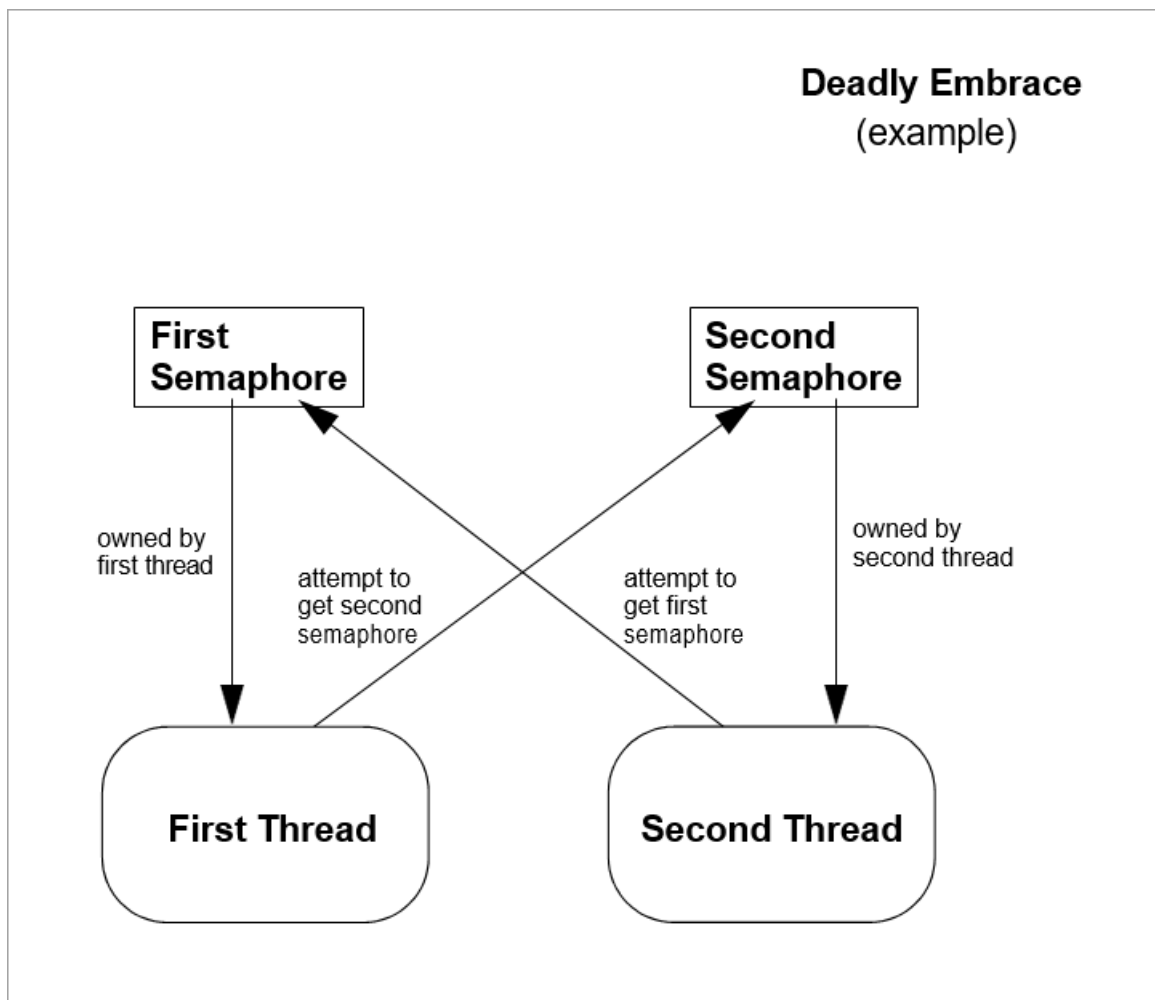


FIGURE 8. Example of Suspended Threads

For real-time systems, deadly embraces can be prevented by placing certain restrictions on how threads obtain semaphores. Threads can only have one semaphore at a time. Alternatively, threads can own multiple semaphores if they gather them in the same order. In the previous example, if the first and second thread obtain the first and second semaphore in order, the deadly embrace is prevented.

**TIP**

*It is also possible to use the suspension time-out associated with the get operation to recover from a deadly embrace.*

### Priority Inversion

Another pitfall associated with mutual exclusion semaphores is priority inversion. This topic is discussed more fully in "[Thread Priority Pitfalls](#)".

The basic problem results from a situation in which a lower-priority thread has a semaphore that a higher priority thread needs. This in itself is normal. However, threads with priorities in between them may cause the priority inversion to last a nondeterministic amount of time. This can be handled through careful selection of thread priorities, using preemption-threshold, and temporarily raising the priority of the thread that owns the resource to that of the high priority thread.

## Mutexes

In addition to semaphores, ThreadX also provides a mutex object. A mutex is basically a binary semaphore, which means that only one thread can own a mutex at a time. In addition, the same thread may perform a successful mutex get operation on an owned mutex multiple times, 4,294,967,295 to be exact. There are two operations on the mutex object: `tx_mutex_get` and `tx_mutex_put`. The get operation obtains a mutex not



owned by another thread, while the put operation releases a previously obtained mutex. For a thread to release a mutex, the number of put operations must equal the number of prior get operations.

Each mutex is a public resource. ThreadX places no constraints on how mutexes are used.

ThreadX mutexes are used solely for *mutual exclusion*. Unlike counting semaphores, mutexes have no use as a method for event notification.

### **Mutex Mutual Exclusion**

Similar to the discussion in the counting semaphore section, mutual exclusion pertains to controlling the access of threads to certain application areas (also called *critical sections* or *application resources*). When available, a ThreadX mutex will have an ownership count of 0. After the mutex is obtained by a thread, the ownership count is incremented once for every successful get operation performed on the mutex and decremented for every successful put operation.

### **Creating Mutexes**

ThreadX mutexes are created either during initialization or during run-time by application threads. The initial condition of a mutex is always "available." A mutex may also be created with *priority inheritance* selected.

### **Thread Suspension**

Application threads can suspend while attempting to perform a get operation on a mutex already owned by another thread.

After the same number of put operations are performed by the owning thread, the suspended thread's get operation is performed, giving it ownership of the mutex, and the thread is resumed. If multiple threads are suspended on the same mutex, they are resumed in the same order they were suspended (FIFO).

However, priority resumption is done automatically if the mutex priority inheritance was selected during creation. Priority resumption is also possible if the application calls *tx\_mutex\_prioritize* prior to the mutex put call that lifts thread suspension. The mutex prioritize service places the highest priority thread at the front of the suspension list, while leaving all other suspended threads in the same FIFO order.

### **Run-time Mutex Performance Information**

ThreadX provides optional run-time mutex performance information. If the ThreadX library and application is built with `TX_MUTEX_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO` defined, ThreadX accumulates the following information.

Total number for the overall system:

- mutex puts
- mutex gets
- mutex get suspensions
- mutex get timeouts
- mutex priority inversions
- mutex priority inheritances

Total number for each mutex:

- mutex puts
- mutex gets
- mutex get suspensions
- mutex get timeouts

- mutex priority inversions
- mutex priority inheritances

This information is available at run-time through the services `tx_mutex_performance_info_get` and `tx_mutex_performance_system_info_get`. Mutex performance information is useful in determining if the application is behaving properly. It is also useful in optimizing the application. For example, a relatively high number of "mutex get timeouts" might suggest that other threads are holding resources too long.

### Mutex Control Block TX\_MUTEX

The characteristics of each mutex are found in its control block. It contains information such as the current mutex ownership count along with the pointer of the thread that owns the mutex. This structure is defined in the `tx_api.h` file. Mutex control blocks can be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

### Deadly Embrace

One of the most interesting and dangerous pitfalls associated with mutex ownership is the *deadly embrace*. A deadly embrace, or *deadlock*, is a condition where two or more threads are suspended indefinitely while attempting to get a mutex already owned by the other threads. The discussion of *deadly embrace* and its remedies are completely valid for the mutex object as well.

### Priority Inversion

As mentioned previously, a major pitfall associated with mutual exclusion is priority inversion. This topic is discussed more fully in "[Thread Priority Pitfalls](#)".

The basic problem results from a situation in which a lower priority thread has a semaphore that a higher priority thread needs. This in itself is normal. However, threads with priorities in between them may cause the priority inversion to last a nondeterministic amount of time. Unlike semaphores discussed previously, the ThreadX mutex object has optional *priority inheritance*. The basic idea behind priority inheritance is that a lower priority thread has its priority raised temporarily to the priority of a high priority thread that wants the same mutex owned by the lower priority thread. When the lower priority thread releases the mutex, its original priority is then restored and the higher priority thread is given ownership of the mutex. This feature eliminates nondeterministic priority inversion by bounding the amount of inversion to the time the lower priority thread holds the mutex. Of course, the techniques discussed earlier in this chapter to handle nondeterministic priority inversion are also valid with mutexes as well.

## Event Flags

Event flags provide a powerful tool for thread synchronization. Each event flag is represented by a single bit. Event flags are arranged in groups of 32. Threads can operate on all 32 event flags in a group at the same time. Events are set by `tx_event_flags_set` and are retrieved by `tx_event_flags_get`.

Setting event flags is done with a logical AND/OR operation between the current event flags and the new event flags. The type of logical operation (either an AND or OR) is specified in the `tx_event_flags_set` call.

There are similar logical options for retrieval of event flags. A get request can specify that all specified event flags are required (a logical AND).

Alternatively, a get request can specify that any of the specified event flags will satisfy the request (a logical OR). The type of logical operation associated with event flags retrieval is specified in the `tx_event_flags_get` call.

#### IMPORTANT

*Event flags that satisfy a get request are consumed, i.e., set to zero, if `TX_OR_CLEAR` or `TX_AND_CLEAR` are specified by the request.*

Each event flags group is a public resource. ThreadX places no constraints on how event flags groups are used.

### Creating Event Flags Groups

Event flags groups are created either during initialization or during run-time by application threads. At the time of their creation, all event flags in the group are set to zero. There is no limit on the number of event flags groups in an application.

### Thread Suspension

Application threads can suspend while attempting to get any logical combination of event flags from a group. After an event flag is set, the get requests of all suspended threads are reviewed. All the threads that now have the required event flags are resumed.

#### NOTE

*All suspended threads on an event flag group are reviewed when its event flags are set. This, of course, introduces additional overhead. Therefore, it is good practice to limit the number of threads using the same event flag group to a reasonable number.*

### Event Flags Set Notification

Some applications may find it advantageous to be notified whenever an event flag is set. ThreadX provides this ability through the `tx_event_flags_set_notify` service. This service registers the supplied application notification function with the specified event flags group. ThreadX will subsequently invoke this application notification function whenever an event flag in the group is set. The exact processing within the application notification function is determined by the application, but it typically consists of resuming the appropriate thread for processing the new event flag.

### Event Flags Event chaining™

The notification capabilities in ThreadX can be used to "chain" various synchronization events together. This is typically useful when a single thread must process multiple synchronization events.

For example, instead of having separate threads suspend for a queue message, event flags, and a semaphore, the application can register a notification routine for each object. When invoked, the application notification routine can then resume a single thread, which can interrogate each object to find and process the new event.

In general, *event-chaining* results in fewer threads, less overhead, and smaller RAM requirements. It also provides a highly flexible mechanism to handle synchronization requirements of more complex systems.

### Run-time Event Flags Performance Information

ThreadX provides optional run-time event flags performance information. If the ThreadX library and application is built with `TX_EVENT_FLAGS_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO` defined, ThreadX accumulates the following information.

Total number for the overall system:

- event flags sets
- event flags gets
- event flags get suspensions
- event flags get timeouts

Total number for each event flags group:

- event flags sets
- event flags gets

- event flags get suspensions
- event flags get timeouts

This information is available at run-time through the services `tx_event_flags_performance_info_get` and `tx_event_flags_performance_system_info_get`. The performance information of event flags is useful in determining if the application is behaving properly. It is also useful in optimizing the application. For example, a relatively high number of timeouts on the `tx_event_flags_get` service might suggest that the event flags suspension timeout is too short.

### Event Flags Group Control Block `TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP`

The characteristics of each event flags group are found in its control block. It contains information such as the current event flags settings and the number of threads suspended for events. This structure is defined in the `tx_api.h` file.

Event group control blocks can be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

### Memory Block Pools

Allocating memory in a fast and deterministic manner is always a challenge in real-time applications. With this in mind, ThreadX provides the ability to create and manage multiple pools of fixed-size memory blocks.

Because memory block pools consist of fixed-size blocks, there are never any fragmentation problems. Of course, fragmentation causes behavior that is inherently nondeterministic. In addition, the time required to allocate and free a fixed-size memory block is comparable to that of simple linked-list manipulation. Furthermore, memory block allocation and de-allocation is done at the head of the available list. This provides the fastest possible linked list processing and might help keep the actual memory block in cache.

Lack of flexibility is the main drawback of fixed-size memory pools. The block size of a pool must be large enough to handle the worst case memory requirements of its users. Of course, memory may be wasted if many different size memory requests are made to the same pool. A possible solution is to make several different memory block pools that contain different sized memory blocks.

Each memory block pool is a public resource. ThreadX places no constraints on how pools are used.

### Creating Memory Block Pools

Memory block pools are created either during initialization or during run-time by application threads. There is no limit on the number of memory block pools in an application.

### Memory Block Size

As mentioned earlier, memory block pools contain a number of fixed-size blocks. The block size, in bytes, is specified during creation of the pool.

#### NOTE

*ThreadX adds a small amount of overhead—the size of a C pointer—to each memory block in the pool. In addition, ThreadX might have to pad the block size to keep the beginning of each memory block on proper alignment.*

### Pool Capacity

The number of memory blocks in a pool is a function of the block size and the total number of bytes in the memory area supplied during creation. The capacity of a pool is calculated by dividing the block size (including padding and the pointer overhead bytes) into the total number of bytes in the supplied memory area.

### Pool's Memory Area

As mentioned before, the memory area for the block pool is specified during creation. Like other memory areas

in ThreadX, it can be located anywhere in the target's address space.

This is an important feature because of the considerable flexibility it provides. For example, suppose that a communication product has a highspeed memory area for I/O. This memory area is easily managed by making it into a ThreadX memory block pool.

### Thread Suspension

Application threads can suspend while waiting for a memory block from an empty pool. When a block is returned to the pool, the suspended thread is given this block and the thread is resumed.

If multiple threads are suspended on the same memory block pool, they are resumed in the order they were suspended (FIFO).

However, priority resumption is also possible if the application calls *tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize* prior to the block release call that lifts thread suspension. The block pool prioritize service places the highest priority thread at the front of the suspension list, while leaving all other suspended threads in the same FIFO order.

### Run-time Block Pool Performance Information

ThreadX provides optional run-time block pool performance information. If the ThreadX library and application is built with `TX_BLOCK_POOL_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO` defined, ThreadX accumulates the following information.

Total number for the overall system:

- blocks allocated
- blocks released
- allocation suspensions
- allocation timeouts

Total number for each block pool:

- blocks allocated
- blocks released
- allocation suspensions
- allocation timeouts

This information is available at run-time through the services *tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_info\_get* and *tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get*. Block pool performance information is useful in determining if the application is behaving properly. It is also useful in optimizing the application. For example, a relatively high number of "allocation suspensions" might suggest that the block pool is too small.

### Memory Block Pool Control Block TX\_BLOCK\_POOL

The characteristics of each memory block pool are found in its control block. It contains information such as the number of memory blocks available and the memory pool block size. This structure is defined in the *tx\_api.h* file.

Pool control blocks can also be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

### Overwriting Memory Blocks

It is important to ensure that the user of an allocated memory block does not write outside its boundaries. If this happens, corruption occurs in an adjacent (usually subsequent) memory area. The results are unpredictable and often fatal to the application.

# Memory Byte Pools

ThreadX memory byte pools are similar to a standard C heap. Unlike the standard C heap, it is possible to have multiple memory byte pools. In addition, threads can suspend on a pool until the requested memory is available.

Allocations from memory byte pools are similar to traditional *malloc* calls, which include the amount of memory desired (in bytes). Memory is allocated from the pool in a *first-fit* manner; i.e., the first free memory block that satisfies the request is used. Excess memory from this block is converted into a new block and placed back in the free memory list. This process is called *fragmentation*.

Adjacent free memory blocks are *merged* together during a subsequent allocation search for a large enough free memory block. This process is called *defragmentation*.

Each memory byte pool is a public resource. ThreadX places no constraints on how pools are used, except that memory byte services cannot be called from ISRs.

## Creating Memory Byte Pools

Memory byte pools are created either during initialization or during run-time by application threads. There is no limit on the number of memory byte pools in an application.

## Pool Capacity

The number of allocatable bytes in a memory byte pool is slightly less than what was specified during creation. This is because management of the free memory area introduces some overhead. Each free memory block in the pool requires the equivalent of two C pointers of overhead. In addition, the pool is created with two blocks, a large free block and a small permanently allocated block at the end of the memory area. This allocated block is used to improve performance of the allocation algorithm. It eliminates the need to continuously check for the end of the pool area during merging.

During run-time, the amount of overhead in the pool typically increases. Allocations of an odd number of bytes are padded to ensure proper alignment of the next memory block. In addition, overhead increases as the pool becomes more fragmented.

## Pool's Memory Area

The memory area for a memory byte pool is specified during creation. Like other memory areas in ThreadX, it can be located anywhere in the target's address space. This is an important feature because of the considerable flexibility it provides. For example, if the target hardware has a high-speed memory area and a low-speed memory area, the user can manage memory allocation for both areas by creating a pool in each of them.

## Thread Suspension

Application threads can suspend while waiting for memory bytes from a pool. When sufficient contiguous memory becomes available, the suspended threads are given their requested memory and the threads are resumed.

If multiple threads are suspended on the same memory byte pool, they are given memory (resumed) in the order they were suspended (FIFO).

However, priority resumption is also possible if the application calls *tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize* prior to the byte release call that lifts thread suspension. The byte pool prioritize service places the highest priority thread at the front of the suspension list, while leaving all other suspended threads in the same FIFO order.

## Run-time Byte Pool Performance Information

ThreadX provides optional run-time byte pool performance information. If the ThreadX library and application is built with *TX\_BYTE\_POOL\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO* defined, ThreadX accumulates the following information.

Total number for the overall system:

- allocations
- releases
- fragments searched
- fragments merged
- fragments created
- allocation suspensions
- allocation timeouts

Total number for each byte pool:

- allocations
- releases
- fragments searched
- fragments merged
- fragments created
- allocation suspensions
- allocation timeouts

This information is available at run-time through the services *tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_info\_get* and *tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get*. Byte pool performance information is useful in determining if the application is behaving properly. It is also useful in optimizing the application. For example, a relatively high number of "allocation suspensions" might suggest that the byte pool is too small.

### Memory Byte Pool Control Block TX\_BYTE\_POOL

The characteristics of each memory byte pool are found in its control block. It contains useful information such as the number of available bytes in the pool. This structure is defined in the *tx\_api.h* file.

Pool control blocks can also be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

### Nondeterministic Behavior

Although memory byte pools provide the most flexible memory allocation, they also suffer from somewhat nondeterministic behavior. For example, a memory byte pool may have 2,000 bytes of memory available but may not be able to satisfy an allocation request of 1,000 bytes. This is because there are no guarantees on how many of the free bytes are contiguous. Even if a 1,000 byte free block exists, there are no guarantees on how long it might take to find the block. It is completely possible that the entire memory pool would need to be searched to find the 1,000 byte block.

#### TIP

*As a result of the nondeterministic behavior of memory byte pools, it is generally good practice to avoid using memory byte services in areas where deterministic, real-time behavior is required. Many applications pre-allocate their required memory during initialization or run-time configuration.*

### Overwriting Memory Blocks

It is important to ensure that the user of allocated memory does not write outside its boundaries. If this

happens, corruption occurs in an adjacent (usually subsequent) memory area. The results are unpredictable and often catastrophic for program execution.

## Application Timers

Fast response to asynchronous external events is the most important function of real-time, embedded applications. However, many of these applications must also perform certain activities at predetermined intervals of time.

ThreadX application timers provide applications with the ability to execute application C functions at specific intervals of time. It is also possible for an application timer to expire only once. This type of timer is called a *one-shot timer*, while repeating interval timers are called *periodic timers*.

Each application timer is a public resource. ThreadX places no constraints on how application timers are used.

### Timer Intervals

In ThreadX time intervals are measured by periodic timer interrupts. Each timer interrupt is called a timer *tick*. The actual time between timer ticks is specified by the application, but 10ms is the norm for most implementations. The periodic timer setup is typically found in the *tx\_initialize\_low\_level* assembly file.

It is worth mentioning that the underlying hardware must have the ability to generate periodic interrupts for application timers to function. In some cases, the processor has a built-in periodic interrupt capability. If the processor doesn't have this ability, the user's board must have a peripheral device that can generate periodic interrupts.

#### IMPORTANT

*ThreadX can still function even without a periodic interrupt source. However, all timer-related processing is then disabled. This includes timeslicing, suspension time-outs, and timer services.*

### Timer Accuracy

Timer expirations are specified in terms of ticks. The specified expiration value is decreased by one on each timer tick. Because an application timer could be enabled just prior to a timer interrupt (or timer tick), the actual expiration time could be up to one tick early.

If the timer tick rate is 10ms, application timers may expire up to 10ms early. This is more significant for 10ms timers than 1 second timers. Of course, increasing the timer interrupt frequency decreases this margin of error.

### Timer Execution

Application timers execute in the order they become active. For example, if three timers are created with the same expiration value and activated, their corresponding expiration functions are guaranteed to execute in the order they were activated.

### Creating Application Timers

Application timers are created either during initialization or during run-time by application threads. There is no limit on the number of application timers in an application.

### Run-time Application Timer Performance Information

ThreadX provides optional run-time application timer performance information. If the ThreadX library and application are built with `TX_TIMER_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO` defined, ThreadX accumulates the following information.

Total number for the overall system:

- activations



- deactivations
- reactivations (periodic timers)
- expirations
- expiration adjustments

Total number for each application timer:

- activations
- deactivations
- reactivations (periodic timers)
- expirations
- expiration adjustments

This information is available at run-time through the services *tx\_timer\_performance\_info\_get* and *tx\_timer\_performance\_system\_info\_get*. Application Timer performance information is useful in determining if the application is behaving properly. It is also useful in optimizing the application.

### Application Timer Control Block TX\_TIMER

The characteristics of each application timer are found in its control block. It contains useful information such as the 32-bit expiration identification value. This structure is defined in the *tx\_api.h* file.

Application timer control blocks can be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

### Excessive Timers

By default, application timers execute from within a hidden system thread that runs at priority zero, which is typically higher than any application thread. Because of this, processing inside application timers should be kept to a minimum.

It is also important to avoid, whenever possible, timers that expire every timer tick. Such a situation might induce excessive overhead in the application.

#### IMPORTANT

*As mentioned previously, application timers are executed from a hidden system thread. It is, therefore, important not to select suspension on any ThreadX service calls made from within the application timer's expiration function.*

## Relative Time

In addition to the application timers mentioned previously, ThreadX provides a single continuously incrementing 32-bit tick counter. The tick counter or *time* is increased by one on each timer interrupt.

The application can read or set this 32-bit counter through calls to *tx\_time\_get* and *tx\_time\_set*, respectively. The use of this tick counter is determined completely by the application. It is not used internally by ThreadX.

## Interrupts

Fast response to asynchronous events is the principal function of real-time, embedded applications. The application knows such an event is present through hardware interrupts.

An interrupt is an asynchronous change in processor execution. Typically, when an interrupt occurs, the

*Interrupts* processor saves a small portion of the current execution on the stack and transfers control to the appropriate interrupt vector. The interrupt vector is basically just the address of the routine responsible for handling the specific type interrupt. The exact interrupt handling procedure is processor specific.

## Interrupt Control

The *tx\_interrupt\_control* service allows applications to enable and disable interrupts. The previous interrupt enable/disable posture is returned by this service. It is important to mention that interrupt control only affects the currently executing program segment. For example, if a thread disables interrupts, they only remain disabled during execution of that thread.

### NOTE

*A Non-Maskable Interrupt (NMI) is an interrupt that cannot be disabled by the hardware. Such an interrupt may be used by ThreadX applications. However, the application's NMI handling routine is not allowed to use ThreadX context management or any API services.*

## ThreadX Managed Interrupts

ThreadX provides applications with complete interrupt management. This management includes saving and restoring the context of the interrupted execution. In addition, ThreadX allows certain services to be called from within Interrupt Service Routines (ISRs). The following is a list of ThreadX services allowed from application ISRs.

```
tx_block_allocate
tx_block_pool_info_get tx_block_pool_prioritize
tx_block_pool_performance_info_get
tx_block_pool_performance_system_info_get tx_block_release
tx_byte_pool_info_get tx_byte_pool_performance_info_get
tx_byte_pool_performance_system_info_get
tx_byte_pool_prioritize tx_event_flags_info_get
tx_event_flags_get tx_event_flags_set
tx_event_flags_performance_info_get
tx_event_flags_performance_system_info_get
tx_event_flags_set_notify tx_interrupt_control
tx_mutex_performance_info_get
tx_mutex_performance_system_info_get tx_queue_front_send
tx_queue_info_get tx_queue_performance_info_get
tx_queue_performance_system_info_get tx_queue_prioritize
tx_queue_receive tx_queue_send tx_semaphore_get
tx_queue_send_notify tx_semaphore_ceiling_put
tx_semaphore_info_get tx_semaphore_performance_info_get
tx_semaphore_performance_system_info_get
tx_semaphore_prioritize tx_semaphore_put tx_thread_identify
tx_semaphore_put_notify tx_thread_entry_exit_notify
tx_thread_info_get tx_thread_resume
tx_thread_performance_info_get
tx_thread_performance_system_info_get
tx_thread_stack_error_notify tx_thread_wait_abort tx_time_get
tx_time_set tx_timer_activate tx_timer_change
tx_timer_deactivate tx_timer_info_get
tx_timer_performance_info_get
tx_timer_performance_system_info_get
```

### IMPORTANT

*Suspension is not allowed from ISRs. Therefore, the **wait\_option** parameter for all ThreadX service calls made from an ISR must be set to **TX\_NO\_WAIT**.*

## ISR Template

To manage application interrupts, several ThreadX utilities must be called in the beginning and end of

application ISRs. The exact format for interrupt handling varies between ports.

The following small code segment is typical of most ThreadX managed ISRs. In most cases, this processing is in assembly language.

```
_application_ISR_vector_entry:

; Save context and prepare for
; ThreadX use by calling the ISR
; entry function.

CALL _tx_thread_context_save

; The ISR can now call ThreadX
; services and its own C functions

; When the ISR is finished, context
; is restored (or thread preemption)
; by calling the context restore ; function. Control does not return!

JUMP _tx_thread_context_restore
```

### High-frequency Interrupts

Some interrupts occur at such a high frequency that saving and restoring full context upon each interrupt would consume excessive processing bandwidth. In such cases, it is common for the application to have a small assembly language ISR that does a limited amount of processing for a majority of these high-frequency interrupts.

After a certain point in time, the small ISR may need to interact with ThreadX. This is accomplished by calling the entry and exit functions described in the above template.

### Interrupt Latency

ThreadX locks out interrupts over brief periods of time. The maximum amount of time interrupts are disabled is on the order of the time required to save or restore a thread's context.

# Chapter 4 - Description of Azure RTOS ThreadX Services

11/1/2022 • 90 minutes to read

This chapter contains a description of all Azure RTOS ThreadX services in alphabetic order. Their names are designed so all similar services are grouped together. In the **Return Values** section in the following descriptions, values in **BOLD** are not affected by the `TX_DISABLE_ERROR_CHECKING` define used to disable API error checking; while values shown in nonbold are completely disabled. In addition, a "Yes" listed under the "Preemption Possible" heading indicates that calling the service may resume a higher-priority thread, thus preempting the calling thread.

## tx\_block\_allocate

Allocate fixed-size block of memory

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_block_allocate(  
    TX_BLOCK_POOL *pool_ptr,  
    VOID **block_ptr,  
    ULONG wait_option);
```

### Description

This service allocates a fixed-size memory block from the specified memory pool. The actual size of the memory block is determined during memory pool creation.

#### IMPORTANT

*It is important to ensure application code does not write outside the allocated memory block. If this happens, corruption occurs in an adjacent (usually subsequent) memory block. The results are unpredictable and often fatal!*

### Parameters

- *pool\_ptr*:  
Pointer to a previously created memory block pool.
- *block\_ptr*:  
Pointer to a destination block pointer. On successful allocation, the address of the allocated memory block is placed where this parameter points.
- *wait\_option*:  
Defines how the service behaves if there are no memory blocks available. The wait options are defined as follows:
  - **TX\_NO\_WAIT** (0x00000000) - Selecting **TX\_NO\_WAIT** results in an immediate return from this service regardless if it was successful or not. *This is the only valid option if the service is called from a non-thread; e.g., Initialization, timer, or ISR.*
  - **TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER** (0xFFFFFFFF) - Selecting **TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER** causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until a memory block is available.
  - *timeout value* (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE) - Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFFE) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay suspended while waiting for a memory block.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS** (0x00) Successful memory block allocation.
- **TX\_DELETED** (0x01) Memory block pool was deleted while thread was suspended.
- **TX\_NO\_MEMORY** (0x10) Service was unable to allocate a block of memory within the specified time to wait.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ABORTED** (0x1A) Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer or ISR.
- **TX\_POOL\_ERROR** (0x02) Invalid memory block pool pointer.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ERROR** (0x04) A wait option other than TX\_NO\_WAIT was specified on a call from a nonthread.
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR** (0x03) Invalid pointer to destination pointer.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_BLOCK_POOL my_pool;
unsigned char *memory_ptr;

UINT status;

/* Allocate a memory block from my_pool. Assume that the pool has
already been created with a call to tx_block_pool_create. */

status = tx_block_allocate(&my_pool, (VOID **) &memory_ptr,
    TX_NO_WAIT);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, memory_ptr contains the address of
the allocated block of memory. */
```

## See Also

- [tx\\_block\\_pool\\_create](#)
- [tx\\_block\\_pool\\_delete](#)
- [tx\\_block\\_pool\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_block\\_pool\\_performance\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_block\\_pool\\_performance\\_system\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_block\\_pool\\_prioritize](#)
- [tx\\_block\\_release](#)

# tx\_block\_pool\_create

Create pool of fixed-size memory blocks

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_block_pool_create(
    TX_BLOCK_POOL pool_ptr,
    CHAR name_ptr,
    ULONG block_size,
    VOID pool_start,
    ULONG pool_size);
```

## Description

This service creates a pool of fixed-size memory blocks. The memory area specified is divided into as many fixed-size memory blocks as possible using the formula:

**total blocks** = (total bytes) / (block size + sizeof(void \*))

#### NOTE

\*Each memory block contains one pointer of overhead that is invisible to the user and is represented by the "sizeof(void \*)" in the preceding formula.

#### Parameters

- *pool\_ptr\** Pointer to a memory block pool control block.
- *name\_ptr\** Pointer to the name of the memory block pool.
- *block\_size\** Number of bytes in each memory block.
- *pool\_start\** Starting address of the memory block pool. The starting address must be aligned to the size of the ULONG data type.
- *pool\_size\** Total number of bytes available for the memory block pool.

#### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful memory block pool creation.
- TX\_POOL\_ERROR (0x02) Invalid memory block pool pointer. Either the pointer is NULL or the pool is already created.
- TX\_PTR\_ERROR (0x03) Invalid starting address of the pool.
- TX\_CALLER\_ERROR (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.
- TX\_SIZE\_ERROR (0x05) Size of pool is invalid.

#### Allowed From

Initialization and threads

#### Preemption Possible

No

#### Example

```
TX_BLOCK_POOL my_pool;

UINT status;

/* Create a memory pool whose total size is 1000 bytes starting at
address 0x100000. Each block in this pool is defined to be 50 bytes
long. */
status = tx_block_pool_create(&my_pool, "my_pool_name",
    50, (VOID *) 0x100000, 1000);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_pool contains 18 memory blocks
of 50 bytes each. The reason there are not 20 blocks in the pool is
because of the one overhead pointer associated with each block. */
```

#### See Also

- tx\_block\_allocate, tx\_block\_pool\_delete
- tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get, tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize, tx\_block\_release

# tx\_block\_pool\_delete

Delete memory block pool

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_block_pool_delete(TX_BLOCK_POOL *pool_ptr);
```

## Description

This service deletes the specified block-memory pool. All threads suspended waiting for a memory block from this pool are resumed and given a **TX\_DELETED** return status.

### NOTE

*It is the application's responsibility to manage the memory area associated with the pool, which is available after this service completes. In addition, the application must prevent use of a deleted pool or its former memory blocks.*

## Parameters

- *pool\_ptr*: Pointer to a previously created memory block pool.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS** (0x00) Successful memory block pool deletion.
- **TX\_POOL\_ERROR** (0x02) Invalid memory block pool pointer.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR** (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_BLOCK_POOL my_pool;

UINT          status;

/* Delete entire memory block
pool. Assume that the pool has already been created with a call to
tx_block_pool_create. */
status = tx_block_pool_delete(&my_pool);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the memory block pool is deleted.*/
```

## See Also

- tx\_block\_allocate
- tx\_block\_pool\_create
- tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get, tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize, tx\_block\_release

# tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get

Retrieve information about block pool

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_block_pool_info_get(  
    TX_BLOCK_POOL *pool_ptr,  
    CHAR **name,  
    ULONG *available,  
    ULONG *total_blocks,  
    TX_THREAD **first_suspended,  
    ULONG *suspended_count,  
    TX_BLOCK_POOL **next_pool);
```

## Description

This service retrieves information about the specified block memory pool.

## Parameters

- *pool\_ptr*\* Pointer to previously created memory block pool.
- *name*\* Pointer to destination for the pointer to the block pool's name.
- *available*\* Pointer to destination for the number of available blocks in the block pool.
- *total\_blocks*\* Pointer to destination for the total number of blocks in the block pool.
- *first\_suspended*\* Pointer to destination for the pointer to the thread that is first on the suspension list of this block pool.
- *suspended\_count*\* Pointer to destination for the number of threads currently suspended on this block pool.
- *next\_pool*\* Pointer to destination for the pointer of the next created block pool.

### NOTE

*Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates the parameter is not required.*

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful block pool information retrieve.
- TX\_POOL\_ERROR (0x02) Invalid memory block pool pointer.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example



```

TX_BLOCK_POOL my_pool;
CHAR *name;
ULONG available;
ULONG total_blocks;
TX_THREAD *first_suspended;
ULONG suspended_count;
TX_BLOCK_POOL *next_pool;
UINT status;

/* Retrieve information about the previously created
block pool "my_pool." */
status = tx_block_pool_info_get(&my_pool, &name,
    &available,&total_blocks,
    &first_suspended, &suspended_count,
    &next_pool);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is
valid. */

```

## See Also

- tx\_block\_allocate
- tx\_block\_pool\_create
- tx\_block\_pool\_delete
- tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get, tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize, tx\_block\_release

# tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_info\_get

Get block pool performance information

## Prototype

```

UINT tx_block_pool_performance_info_get(
    TX_BLOCK_POOL *pool_ptr,
    ULONG *allocates,
    ULONG *releases,
    ULONG *suspensions,
    ULONG *timeouts));

```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about the specified memory block pool.

### IMPORTANT

*The ThreadX library and application must be built with TX\_BLOCK\_POOL\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO defined for this service to return performance information.*

## Parameters

- *pool\_ptr*\* Pointer to previously created memory block pool.
- *allocates*\* Pointer to destination for the number of allocate requests performed on this pool.
- *releases*\* Pointer to destination for the number of release requests performed on this pool.
- *suspensions*\* Pointer to destination for the number of thread allocation suspensions on this pool.
- *timeouts*\* Pointer to destination for the number of allocate suspension timeouts on this pool.

#### NOTE

*Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.*

#### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful block pool performance get.
- TX\_PTR\_ERROR (0x03) Invalid block pool pointer.
- TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

#### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

#### Preemption Possible

No

#### Example

```
TX_BLOCK_POOL my_pool;
ULONG allocates;
ULONG releases;
ULONG suspensions;
ULONG timeouts;

/* Retrieve performance information on the previously created block
pool. */
status = tx_block_pool_performance_info_get(&my_pool, &allocates,
    &releases,
    &suspensions,
    &timeouts);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was successfully retrieved. */
```

#### See Also

- tx\_block\_allocate
- tx\_block\_pool\_create
- tx\_block\_pool\_delete
- tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_release

## tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get

Get block pool system performance information

#### Prototype

```
UINT tx_block_pool_performance_system_info_get(
    ULONG *allocates,
    ULONG *releases,
    ULONG *suspensions,
    ULONG *timeouts);
```

#### Description

This service retrieves performance information about all memory block pools in the application.

## IMPORTANT

*The ThreadX library and application must be built with `TX_BLOCK_POOL_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO` defined for this service to return performance information.*

## Parameters

- *allocates*: Pointer to destination for the total number of allocate requests performed on all block pools.
- *releases*: Pointer to destination for the total number of release requests performed on all block pools.
- *suspensions*: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread allocation suspensions on all block pools.
- *timeouts*: Pointer to destination for the total number of allocate suspension timeouts on all block pools.

## NOTE

*Supplying a `TX_NULL` for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.*

## Return Values

- `TX_SUCCESS` (0x00) Successful block pool system performance get.
- `TX_FEATURE_NOT_ENABLED` (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
ULONG      allocates;
ULONG      releases;
ULONG      suspensions;
ULONG      timeouts;

/* Retrieve performance information on all the block pools in
the system. */
status = tx_block_pool_performance_system_info_get(&allocates,
    &releases,&suspensions, &timeouts);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
successfully retrieved. */
```

## See Also

- `tx_block_allocate`
- `tx_block_pool_create`
- `tx_block_pool_delete`
- `tx_block_pool_info_get`
- `tx_block_pool_performance_info_get`
- `tx_block_pool_prioritize`
- `tx_block_release`

# tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize

Prioritize block pool suspension list

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_block_pool_prioritize(TX_BLOCK_POOL *pool_ptr);
```

## Description

This service places the highest priority thread suspended for a block of memory on this pool at the front of the suspension list. All other threads remain in the same FIFO order they were suspended in.

## Parameters

- *pool\_ptr*: Pointer to a memory block pool control block.

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful block pool prioritize.
- TX\_POOL\_ERROR (0x02) Invalid memory block pool pointer.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_BLOCK_POOL my_pool;
UINT status;

/* Ensure that the highest priority thread will receive
the next free block in this pool. */
status = tx_block_pool_prioritize(&my_pool);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the highest priority
suspended thread is at the front of the list. The
next tx_block_release call will wake up this thread. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_block\_allocate
- tx\_block\_pool\_create
- tx\_block\_pool\_delete
- tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_release

# tx\_block\_release

Release fixed-size block of memory

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_block_release(VOID *block_ptr);
```

## Description

This service releases a previously allocated block back to its associated memory pool. If there are one or more threads suspended waiting for memory blocks from this pool, the first thread suspended is given this memory

block and resumed.

#### NOTE

*The application may want to clear the memory block before releasing it to prevent data leaks.*

#### IMPORTANT

*The application must prevent using a memory block area after it has been released back to the pool.*

#### Parameters

- *block\_ptr*: Pointer to the previously allocated memory block.

#### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful memory block release.
- TX\_PTR\_ERROR (0x03) Invalid pointer to memory block.

#### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

#### Preemption Possible

Yes

#### Example

```
TX_BLOCK_POOL my_pool;
unsigned char *memory_ptr;
UINT status;

/* Release a memory block back to my_pool. Assume that the
pool has been created and the memory block has been
allocated. */
status = tx_block_release((VOID *) memory_ptr);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the block of memory pointed
to by memory_ptr has been returned to the pool. */
```

#### See Also

- tx\_block\_allocate
- tx\_block\_pool\_create
- tx\_block\_pool\_delete
- tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize

## tx\_byte\_allocate

Allocate bytes of memory

#### Prototype

```
UINT tx_byte_allocate(  
    TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr,  
    VOID **memory_ptr,  
    ULONG memory_size,  
    ULONG wait_option);
```

## Description

This service allocates the specified number of bytes from the specified memory byte pool.

### IMPORTANT

*It is important to ensure application code does not write outside the allocated memory block. If this happens, corruption occurs in an adjacent (usually subsequent) memory block. The results are unpredictable and often fatal!*

### NOTE

*The performance of this service is a function of the block size and the amount of fragmentation in the pool. Hence, this service should not be used during time-critical threads of execution.*

## Parameters

- *pool\_ptr*:  
Pointer to a previously created memory block pool.
- *memory\_ptr*:  
Pointer to a destination memory pointer. On successful allocation, the address of the allocated memory area is placed where this parameter points to.
- *memory\_size*:  
Number of bytes requested.
- *wait\_option*:  
Defines how the service behaves if there is not enough memory available. The wait options are defined as follows:
  - **TX\_NO\_WAIT** (0x00000000) - Selecting **TX\_NO\_WAIT** results in an immediate return from this service regardless of whether or not it was successful. *This is the only valid option if the service is called from initialization.*
  - **TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER** (0xFFFFFFFF) - Selecting **TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER** causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until enough memory is available.
  - *timeout value* (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFF) - Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFF) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay suspended while waiting for the memory.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS** (0x00) Successful memory allocation.
- **TX\_DELETED** (0x01) Memory pool was deleted while thread was suspended.
- **TX\_NO\_MEMORY** (0x10) Service was unable to allocate the memory within the specified time to wait.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ABORTED** (0x1A) Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.
- **TX\_POOL\_ERROR** (0x02) Invalid memory pool pointer.
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR** (0x03) Invalid pointer to destination pointer.
- **TX\_SIZE\_ERROR** (0x05) Requested size is zero or larger than the pool.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ERROR** (0x04) A wait option other than **TX\_NO\_WAIT** was specified on a call from a nonthread.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR** (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Initialization and threads

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_BYTE_POOL my_pool;
unsigned char*memory_ptr;
UINT status;
/* Allocate a 112 byte memory area from my_pool. Assume
that the pool has already been created with a call to
tx_byte_pool_create. */
status = tx_byte_allocate(&my_pool, (VOID **) &memory_ptr,
    112, TX_NO_WAIT);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, memory_ptr contains the
address of the allocated memory area. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_byte\_pool\_create
- tx\_byte\_pool\_delete
- tx\_byte\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize
- tx\_byte\_release

# tx\_byte\_pool\_create

Create memory pool of bytes

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_byte_pool_create(
    TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr,
    CHAR *name_ptr,
    VOID *pool_start,
    ULONG pool_size);
```

## Description

This service creates a memory byte pool in the area specified. Initially the pool consists of basically one very large free block. However, the pool is broken into smaller blocks as allocations are made.

## Parameters

- *pool\_ptr*: Pointer to a memory pool control block.
- *name\_ptr*: Pointer to the name of the memory pool.
- *pool\_start*: Starting address of the memory pool. The starting address must be aligned to the size of the ULONG data type.
- *pool\_size*: Total number of bytes available for the memory pool.

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful memory pool creation.
- TX\_POOL\_ERROR (0x02) Invalid memory pool pointer. Either the pointer is NULL or the pool is already created.

- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR** (0x03) Invalid starting address of the pool.
- **TX\_SIZE\_ERROR** (0x05) Size of pool is invalid.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR** (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Initialization and threads

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
TX_BYTE_POOL my_pool;
UINT status;
/* Create a memory pool whose total size is 2000 bytes
starting at address 0x500000. */
status = tx_byte_pool_create(&my_pool, "my_pool_name",
    (VOID *) 0x500000, 2000);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_pool is available for
allocating memory. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_byte\_allocate
- tx\_byte\_pool\_delete
- tx\_byte\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize
- tx\_byte\_release

## tx\_byte\_pool\_delete

Delete memory byte pool

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_byte_pool_delete(TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr);
```

### Description

This service deletes the specified memory byte pool. All threads suspended waiting for memory from this pool are resumed and given a **TX\_DELETED** return status.

#### IMPORTANT

*It is the application's responsibility to manage the memory area associated with the pool, which is available after this service completes. In addition, the application must prevent use of a deleted pool or memory previously allocated from it.*

### Parameters

- *pool\_ptr*: Pointer to a previously created memory pool.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS** (0x00) Successful memory pool deletion.



- **TX\_POOL\_ERROR** (0x02) Invalid memory pool pointer.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR** (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_BYTE_POOL my_pool;
UINT status;
/* Delete entire memory pool. Assume that the pool has already
been created with a call to tx_byte_pool_create. */
status = tx_byte_pool_delete(&my_pool);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, memory pool is deleted. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_byte\_allocate
- tx\_byte\_pool\_create
- tx\_byte\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize
- tx\_byte\_release

## tx\_byte\_pool\_info\_get

Retrieve information about byte pool

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_byte_pool_info_get(
    TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr,
    CHAR **name,
    ULONG *available,
    ULONG *fragments,
    TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
    ULONG *suspended_count,
    TX_BYTE_POOL **next_pool);
```

### Description

This service retrieves information about the specified memory byte pool.

### Parameters

- *pool\_ptr*: Pointer to previously created memory pool.
- *name*: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the byte pool's name.
- *available*: Pointer to destination for the number of available bytes in the pool.
- *fragments*: Pointer to destination for the total number of memory fragments in the byte pool.
- *first\_suspended*: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the thread that is first on the suspension list of this byte pool.
- *suspended\_count*: Pointer to destination for the number of threads currently suspended on this byte pool.

- *next\_pool*: Pointer to destination for the pointer of the next created byte pool.

#### NOTE

*Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.*

#### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful pool information retrieve.
- TX\_POOL\_ERROR (0x02) Invalid memory pool pointer.

#### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

#### Preemption Possible

No

#### Example

```
TX_BYTE_POOL my_pool;
CHAR *name;
ULONG available;
ULONG fragments;
TX_THREAD *first_suspended;
ULONG suspended_count;
TX_BYTE_POOL *next_pool;
UINT status;

/* Retrieve information about the previously created
block pool "my_pool." */
status = tx_byte_pool_info_get(&my_pool, &name,
    &available, &fragments,
    &first_suspended, &suspended_count,
    &next_pool);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is
valid. */
```

#### See Also

- tx\_byte\_allocate
- tx\_byte\_pool\_create
- tx\_byte\_pool\_delete
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize
- tx\_byte\_release

## tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_info\_get

Get byte pool performance information

#### Prototype

```
UINT tx_byte_pool_performance_info_get(
    TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr,
    ULONG *allocates,
    ULONG *releases,
    ULONG *fragments_searched,
    ULONG *merges,
    ULONG *splits,
    ULONG *suspensions,
    ULONG *timeouts);
```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about the specified memory byte pool.

### IMPORTANT

*The ThreadX library and application must be built with `TX_BYTE_POOL_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO` defined for this service to return performance information.*

## Parameters

- *pool\_ptr*: Pointer to previously created memory byte pool.
- *allocates*: Pointer to destination for the number of allocate requests performed on this pool.
- *releases*: Pointer to destination for the number of release requests performed on this pool.
- *fragments\_searched*: Pointer to destination for the number of internal memory fragments searched during allocation requests on this pool.
- *merges*: Pointer to destination for the number of internal memory blocks merged during allocation requests on this pool.
- *splits*: Pointer to destination for the number of internal memory blocks split (fragments) created during allocation requests on this pool.
- *suspensions*: Pointer to destination for the number of thread allocation suspensions on this pool.
- *timeouts*: Pointer to destination for the number of allocate suspension timeouts on this pool.

### NOTE

*Supplying a `TX_NULL` for any parameter indicates the parameter is not required.*

## Return Values

- `TX_SUCCESS` (0x00) Successful byte pool performance get.
- `TX_PTR_ERROR` (0x03) Invalid byte pool pointer.
- `TX_FEATURE_NOT_ENABLED` (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```

TX_BYTE_POOL my_pool;
ULONG fragments_searched;
ULONG merges;
ULONG splits;
ULONG allocates;
ULONG releases;
ULONG suspensions;
ULONG timeouts;

/* Retrieve performance information on the previously created byte
pool. */
status = tx_byte_pool_performance_info_get(&my_pool,
    &fragments_searched,
    &merges, &splits,
    &allocates, &releases,
    &suspensions,&timeouts);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
successfully retrieved. */

```

## See Also

- [tx\\_byte\\_allocate](#)
- [tx\\_byte\\_pool\\_create](#)
- [tx\\_byte\\_pool\\_delete](#)
- [tx\\_byte\\_pool\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_byte\\_pool\\_performance\\_system\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_byte\\_pool\\_prioritize](#)
- [tx\\_byte\\_release](#)

# tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get

Get byte pool system performance information

## Prototype

```

UINT tx_byte_pool_performance_system_info_get(
    ULONG *allocates,
    ULONG *releases,
    ULONG *fragments_searched,
    ULONG *merges,
    ULONG *splits,
    ULONG *suspensions,
    ULONG *timeouts);

```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about all memory byte pools in the system.

### IMPORTANT

*The ThreadX library and application must be built with `TX_BYTE_POOL_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO` defined for this service to return performance information.*

## Parameters

- *allocates*: Pointer to destination for the number of allocate requests performed on this pool.
- *releases*: Pointer to destination for the number of release requests performed on this pool.
- *fragments\_searched*: Pointer to destination for the total number of internal memory fragments searched

during allocation requests on all byte pools.

- *merges*: Pointer to destination for the total number of internal memory blocks merged during allocation requests on all byte pools.
- *splits*: Pointer to destination for the total number of internal memory blocks split (fragments) created during allocation requests on all byte pools.
- *suspensions*: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread allocation suspensions on all byte pools.
- *timeouts*: Pointer to destination for the total number of allocate suspension timeouts on all byte pools.

#### NOTE

*Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates the parameter is not required.*

#### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful byte pool performance get.
- TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

#### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

#### Preemption Possible

No

#### Example

```
ULONG fragments_searched;
ULONG merges;
ULONG splits;
ULONG allocates;
ULONG releases;
ULONG suspensions;
ULONG timeouts;

/* Retrieve performance information on all byte pools in the
system. */
status =
tx_byte_pool_performance_system_info_get(&fragments_searched,
    &merges, &splits, &allocates, &releases,
    &suspensions, &timeouts);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
successfully retrieved. */
```

#### See Also

- tx\_byte\_allocate
- tx\_byte\_pool\_create
- tx\_byte\_pool\_delete
- tx\_byte\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize
- tx\_byte\_release

## tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize

Prioritize byte pool suspension list

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_byte_pool_prioritize(TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr);
```

## Description

This service places the highest priority thread suspended for memory on this pool at the front of the suspension list. All other threads remain in the same FIFO order they were suspended in.

## Parameters

- *pool\_ptr*: Pointer to a memory pool control block.

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful memory pool prioritize.
- TX\_POOL\_ERROR (0x02) Invalid memory pool pointer.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_BYTE_POOL my_pool;
UINT status;

/* Ensure that the highest priority thread will receive
the next free memory from this pool. */
status = tx_byte_pool_prioritize(&my_pool);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the highest priority
suspended thread is at the front of the list. The
next tx_byte_release call will wake up this thread,
if there is enough memory to satisfy its request. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_byte\_allocate
- tx\_byte\_pool\_create
- tx\_byte\_pool\_delete
- tx\_byte\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_release

# tx\_byte\_release

Release bytes back to memory pool

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_byte_release(VOID *memory_ptr);
```

## Description

This service releases a previously allocated memory area back to its associated pool. If there are one or more

threads suspended waiting for memory from this pool, each suspended thread is given memory and resumed until the memory is exhausted or until there are no more suspended threads. This process of allocating memory to suspended threads always begins with the first thread suspended.

#### NOTE

*The application may want to clear the memory area before releasing it to prevent data leaks.*

#### IMPORTANT

*The application must prevent using the memory area after it is released.*

#### Parameters

- *memory\_ptr*: Pointer to the previously allocated memory area.

#### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful memory release.
- TX\_PTR\_ERROR (0x03) Invalid memory area pointer.
- TX\_CALLER\_ERROR (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

#### Allowed From

Initialization and threads

#### Preemption Possible

Yes

#### Example

```
unsigned char *memory_ptr;
UINT status;

/* Release a memory back to my_pool. Assume that the memory
area was previously allocated from my_pool. */
status = tx_byte_release((VOID *) memory_ptr);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the memory pointed to by
memory_ptr has been returned to the pool. */
```

#### See Also

- tx\_byte\_allocate
- tx\_byte\_pool\_create
- tx\_byte\_pool\_delete
- tx\_byte\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize

## tx\_event\_flags\_create

Create event flags group

#### Prototype

```
UINT tx_event_flags_create(  
    TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,  
    CHAR *name_ptr);
```

## Description

This service creates a group of 32 event flags. All 32 event flags in the group are initialized to zero. Each event flag is represented by a single bit.

## Parameters

- *group\_ptr*: Pointer to an event flags group control block.
- *name\_ptr*: Pointer to the name of the event flags group.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS** (0x00) Successful event group creation.
- **TX\_GROUP\_ERROR** (0x06) Invalid event group pointer. Either the pointer is **NULL** or the event group is already created.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR** (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Initialization and threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP my_event_group;  
UINT status;  
  
/* Create an event flags group. */  
status = tx_event_flags_create(&my_event_group,  
    "my_event_group_name");  
  
/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_event_group is ready  
for get and set services. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_event\_flags\_delete
- tx\_event\_flags\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_set
- tx\_event\_flags\_set\_notify

# tx\_event\_flags\_delete

Delete event flags group

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_event_flags_delete(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr);
```



## Description

This service deletes the specified event flags group. All threads suspended waiting for events from this group are resumed and given a TX\_DELETED return status.

### IMPORTANT

*The application must ensure that a set notify callback for this event flags group is completed (or disabled) before deleting the event flags group. In addition, the application must prevent all future use of a deleted event flags group.*

## Parameters

- *group\_ptr*: Pointer to a previously created event flags group.

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful event flags group deletion.
- TX\_GROUP\_ERROR (0x06) Invalid event flags group pointer.
- TX\_CALLER\_ERROR (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP my_event_flags_group;
UINT status;

/* Delete event flags group. Assume that the group has
already been created with a call to
tx_event_flags_create. */
status = tx_event_flags_delete(&my_event_flags_group);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the event flags group is
deleted. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_event\_flags\_create
- tx\_event\_flags\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_set
- tx\_event\_flags\_set\_notify

# tx\_event\_flags\_get

Get event flags from event flags group

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_event_flags_get(
    TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,
    ULONG requested_flags,
    UINT get_option,
    ULONG *actual_flags_ptr,
    ULONG wait_option);
```

## Description

This service retrieves event flags from the specified event flags group. Each event flags group contains 32 event flags. Each flag is represented by a single bit. This service can retrieve a variety of event flag combinations, as selected by the input parameters.

## Parameters

- *group\_ptr*:  
Pointer to a previously created event flags group.
- *requested\_flags*:  
32-bit unsigned variable that represents the requested event flags.
- *get\_option*:  
Specifies whether all or any of the requested event flags are required. The following are valid selections:
  - **TX\_AND** (0x02)
  - **TX\_AND\_CLEAR** (0x03)
  - **TX\_OR** (0x00)
  - **TX\_OR\_CLEAR** (0x01)

Selecting **TX\_AND** or **TX\_AND\_CLEAR** specifies that all event flags must be present in the group. Selecting **TX\_OR** or **TX\_OR\_CLEAR** specifies that any event flag is satisfactory. Event flags that satisfy the request are cleared (set to zero) if **TX\_AND\_CLEAR** or **TX\_OR\_CLEAR** are specified.
- *actual\_flags\_ptr*:  
Pointer to destination of where the retrieved event flags are placed. Note that the actual flags obtained may contain flags that were not requested.
- *wait\_option*:  
Defines how the service behaves if the selected event flags are not set. The wait options are defined as follows:
  - **TX\_NO\_WAIT** (0x00000000) - Selecting **TX\_NO\_WAIT** results in an immediate return from this service regardless of whether or not it was successful. This is the only valid option if the service is called from a non-thread; e.g., Initialization, timer, or ISR.
  - **TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER** timeout value (0xFFFFFFFF) - Selecting **TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER** causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until the event flags are available.
  - timeout value (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFF) - Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFF) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay suspended while waiting for the event flags.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS** (0x00) Successful event flags get.
- **TX\_DELETED** (0x01) Event flags group was deleted while thread was suspended.
- **TX\_NO\_EVENTS** (0x07) Service was unable to get the specified events within the specified time to wait.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ABORTED** (0x1A) Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.
- **TX\_GROUP\_ERROR** (0x06) Invalid event flags group pointer.

- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR** (0x03) Invalid pointer for actual event flags.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ERROR** (0x04) A wait option other than TX\_NO\_WAIT was specified on a call from a nonthread.
- **TX\_OPTION\_ERROR** (0x08) Invalid get-option was specified.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP my_event_flags_group;
ULONG actual_events;
UINT status;

/* Request that event flags 0, 4, and 8 are all set. Also,
if they are set they should be cleared. If the event
flags are not set, this service suspends for a maximum of
20 timer-ticks. */
status = tx_event_flags_get(&my_event_flags_group, 0x111,
    TX_AND_CLEAR, &actual_events, 20);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, actual_events contains the
actual events obtained. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_event\_flags\_create
- tx\_event\_flags\_delete
- tx\_event\_flags\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_set
- tx\_event\_flags\_set\_notify

## tx\_event\_flags\_info\_get

Retrieve information about event flags group

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_event_flags_info_get(
    TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,
    CHAR **name, ULONG *current_flags,
    TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
    ULONG *suspended_count,
    TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP **next_group);
```

### Description

This service retrieves information about the specified event flags group.

### Parameters

- *group\_ptr*: Pointer to an event flags group control block.
- *name*: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the event flags group's name.
- *current\_flags*: Pointer to destination for the current set flags in the event flags group.
- *first\_suspended*: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the thread that is first on the suspension list of this

event flags group.

- *suspended\_count*. Pointer to destination for the number of threads currently suspended on this event flags group.
- *next\_group*. Pointer to destination for the pointer of the next created event flags group.

#### NOTE

*Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.*

#### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful event group information retrieval.
- TX\_GROUP\_ERROR (0x06) Invalid event group pointer.

#### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

#### Preemption Possible

No

#### Example

```
TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP my_event_group;
CHAR *name;
ULONG current_flags;
TX_THREAD *first_suspended;
ULONG suspended_count;
TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *next_group;
UINT status;

/* Retrieve information about the previously created
event flags group "my_event_group." */
status = tx_event_flags_info_get(&my_event_group, &name,
    &current_flags,
    &first_suspended, &suspended_count,
    &next_group);
/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is
valid. */
```

#### See Also

- tx\_event\_flags\_create
- tx\_event\_flags\_delete
- tx\_event\_flags\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_set
- tx\_event\_flags\_set\_notify

#### tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_info\_get

Get event flags group performance information

#### Prototype

```
UINT tx_event_flags_performance_info_get(
    TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,
    ULONG *sets, ULONG *gets,
    ULONG *suspensions,
    ULONG *timeouts);
```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about the specified event flags group.

### IMPORTANT

*ThreadX library and application must be built with \*TX\_EVENT\_FLAGS\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO: defined for this service to return performance information.*

## Parameters

- *group\_ptr*: Pointer to previously created event flags group.
- *sets*: Pointer to destination for the number of event flags set requests performed on this group.
- *gets*: Pointer to destination for the number of event flags get requests performed on this group.
- *suspensions*: Pointer to destination for the number of thread event flags get suspensions on this group.
- *timeouts*: Pointer to destination for the number of event flags get suspension timeouts on this group.

### NOTE

*Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.*

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful event flags group performance get.
- TX\_PTR\_ERROR (0x03) Invalid event flags group pointer.
- TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP my_event_flag_group;
ULONG sets;
ULONG gets;
ULONG suspensions;
ULONG timeouts;

/* Retrieve performance information on the previously created event
flag group. */
status = tx_event_flags_performance_info_get(&my_event_flag_group,
    &sets, &gets, &suspensions,
    &timeouts);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was successfully
retrieved. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_event\_flags\_create
- tx\_event\_flags\_delete
- tx\_event\_flags\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_set
- tx\_event\_flags\_set\_notify

## tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_system\_info\_get

Retrieve performance system information

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_event_flags_performance_system_info_get(  
    ULONG *sets,  
    ULONG *gets,  
    ULONG *suspensions,  
    ULONG *timeouts);
```

### Description

This service retrieves performance information about all event flags groups in the system.

#### IMPORTANT

*ThreadX library and application must be built with `TX_EVENT_FLAGS_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO` defined for this service to return performance information.*

### Parameters

- *sets*: Pointer to destination for the total number of event flags set requests performed on all groups.
- *gets*: Pointer to destination for the total number of event flags get requests performed on all groups.
- *suspensions*: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread event flags get suspensions on all groups.
- *timeouts*: Pointer to destination for the total number of event flags get suspension timeouts on all groups.

#### NOTE

*Supplying a `TX_NULL` for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.*

### Return Values

- `TX_SUCCESS` (0x00) Successful event flags system performance get.
- `TX_FEATURE_NOT_ENABLED` (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```

ULONG sets;
ULONG gets;
ULONG suspensions;
ULONG timeouts;

/* Retrieve performance information on all previously created event
flag groups. */
status = tx_event_flags_performance_system_info_get(&sets, &gets,
    &suspensions, &timeouts);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
successfully retrieved. */

```

## See Also

- `tx_event_flags_create`
- `tx_event_flags_delete`
- `tx_event_flags_get`
- `tx_event_flags_info_get`
- `tx_event_flags_performance_info_get`
- `tx_event_flags_set`
- `tx_event_flags_set_notify`

# tx\_event\_flags\_set

Set event flags in an event flags group

## Prototype

```

UINT tx_event_flags_set(
    TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,
    ULONG flags_to_set,
    UINT set_option);

```

## Description

This service sets or clears event flags in an event flags group, depending upon the specified set-option. All suspended threads whose event flags request is now satisfied are resumed.

## Parameters

- *group\_ptr*:  
Pointer to the previously created event flags group control block.
- *flags\_to\_set*:  
Specifies the event flags to set or clear based upon the set option selected.
- *set\_option*:  
Specifies whether the event flags specified are ANDed or ORed into the current event flags of the group. The following are valid selections:
  - **TX\_AND** (0x02)
  - **TX\_OR** (0x00)

Selecting **TX\_AND** specifies that the specified event flags are **ANDed** into the current event flags in the group. This option is often used to clear event flags in a group. Otherwise, if **TX\_OR** is specified, the specified event flags are **ORed** with the current event in the group.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS** (0x00) Successful event flags set.
- **TX\_GROUP\_ERROR** (0x06) Invalid pointer to event flags group.
- **TX\_OPTION\_ERROR** (0x08) Invalid set-option specified.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP my_event_flags_group;
UINT status;

/* Set event flags 0, 4, and 8. */
status = tx_event_flags_set(&my_event_flags_group,
    0x111, TX_OR);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the event flags have been
set and any suspended thread whose request was satisfied
has been resumed. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_event\_flags\_create
- tx\_event\_flags\_delete
- tx\_event\_flags\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_set\_notify

## tx\_event\_flags\_set\_notify

Notify application when event flags are set

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_event_flags_set_notify(
    TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,
    VOID (*events_set_notify)(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *));
```

### Description

This service registers a notification callback function that is called whenever one or more event flags are set in the specified event flags group. The processing of the notification callback is defined by the

### Parameters

- *group\_ptr*: Pointer to previously created event flags group.
- *events\_set\_notify*: Pointer to application's event flags set notification function. If this value is TX\_NULL, notification is disabled.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS** (0x00) Successful registration of event flags set notification.
- **TX\_GROUP\_ERROR** (0x06) Invalid event flags group pointer.



- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED** (0xFF) The system was compiled with notification capabilities disabled.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP my_group;

/* Register the "my_event_flags_set_notify" function for monitoring
event flags set in the event flags group "my_group." */
status = tx_event_flags_set_notify(&my_group, my_event_flags_set_notify);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the event flags set notification function
was successfully registered. */
void my_event_flags_set_notify(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr)

/* One or more event flags was set in this group! */
```

### See Also

- tx\_event\_flags\_create
- tx\_event\_flags\_delete
- tx\_event\_flags\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_set

## tx\_interrupt\_control

Enable and disable interrupts

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_interrupt_control(UINT new_posture);
```

### Description

This service enables or disables interrupts as specified by the input parameter *new\_posture*.

#### NOTE

*If this service is called from an application thread, the interrupt posture remains part of that thread's context. For example, if the thread calls this routine to disable interrupts and then suspends, when it is resumed, interrupts are disabled again.*

#### WARNING

*This service should not be used to enable interrupts during initialization! Doing so could cause unpredictable results.*

### Parameters

- *new\_posture*: This parameter specifies whether interrupts are disabled or enabled. Legal values include

TX\_INT\_DISABLE and TX\_INT\_ENABLE. The actual values for these parameters are port specific. In addition, some processing architectures might support additional interrupt disable postures.

### Return Values

- **previous posture** This service returns the previous interrupt posture to the caller. This allows users of the service to restore the previous posture after interrupts are disabled.

### Allowed From

Threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
UINT my_old_posture;

/* Lockout interrupts */
my_old_posture = tx_interrupt_control(TX_INT_DISABLE);

/* Perform critical operations that need interrupts
locked-out.... */

/* Restore previous interrupt lockout posture. */
tx_interrupt_control(my_old_posture);
```

### See Also

None

## tx\_mutex\_create

Create mutual exclusion mutex

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_mutex_create(
    TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr,
    CHAR *name_ptr,
    UINT priority_inherit);
```

### Description

This service creates a mutex for inter-thread mutual exclusion for resource protection.

### Parameters

- *mutex\_ptr*: Pointer to a mutex control block.
- *name\_ptr*: Pointer to the name of the mutex.
- *priority\_inherit*: Specifies whether or not this mutex supports priority inheritance. If this value is TX\_INHERIT, then priority inheritance is supported. However, if TX\_NO\_INHERIT is specified, priority inheritance is not supported by this mutex.

### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful mutex creation.
- TX\_MUTEX\_ERROR (0x1C) Invalid mutex pointer. Either the pointer is NULL or the mutex is already created.
- TX\_CALLER\_ERROR (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.
- TX\_INHERIT\_ERROR (0x1F) Invalid priority inherit parameter.

## Allowed From

Initialization and threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_MUTEX my_mutex;
UINT status;

/* Create a mutex to provide protection over a
common resource. */
status = tx_mutex_create(&my_mutex, "my_mutex_name",
    TX_NO_INHERIT);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_mutex is ready for
use. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_mutex\_delete
- tx\_mutex\_get
- tx\_mutex\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_prioritize
- tx\_mutex\_put

# tx\_mutex\_delete

Delete mutual exclusion mutex

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_mutex_delete(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr);
```

## Description

This service deletes the specified mutex. All threads suspended waiting for the mutex are resumed and given a TX\_DELETED return status.

### NOTE

*It is the application's responsibility to prevent use of a deleted mutex.*

## Parameters

- *mutex\_ptr*: Pointer to a previously created mutex.

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful mutex deletion.
- TX\_MUTEX\_ERROR (0x1C) Invalid mutex pointer.
- TX\_CALLER\_ERROR (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_MUTEX my_mutex;
UINT status;

/* Delete a mutex. Assume that the mutex
has already been created. */
status = tx_mutex_delete(&my_mutex);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the mutex is
deleted. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_mutex\_create
- tx\_mutex\_get
- tx\_mutex\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_prioritize
- tx\_mutex\_put

## tx\_mutex\_get

Obtain ownership of mutex

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_mutex_get(
    TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr,
    ULONG wait_option);
```

## Description

This service attempts to obtain exclusive ownership of the specified mutex. If the calling thread already owns the mutex, an internal counter is incremented and a successful status is returned.

If the mutex is owned by another thread and this thread is higher priority and priority inheritance was specified at mutex create, the lower priority thread's priority will be temporarily raised to that of the calling thread.

### NOTE

*The priority of the lower priority thread owning a mutex with priority inheritance should never be modified by an external thread during mutex ownership.*

## Parameters

- *mutex\_ptr*.  
Pointer to a previously created mutex.
- *wait\_option*.  
Defines how the service behaves if the mutex is already owned by another thread. The wait options are defined as follows:
  - *\*TX\_NO\_WAIT*: (0x00000000) - Selecting TX\_NO\_WAIT results in an immediate return from this

service regardless of whether or not it was successful. *This is the only valid option if the service is called from Initialization.*

- **TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER** timeout value (0xFFFFFFFF) - Selecting **TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER** causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until the mutex is available.
- timeout value (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE) - Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFFE) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay suspended while waiting for the mutex.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS** (0x00) Successful mutex get operation.
- **TX\_DELETED** (0x01) Mutex was deleted while thread was suspended.
- **TX\_NOT\_AVAILABLE** (0x1D) Service was unable to get ownership of the mutex within the specified time to wait.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ABORTED** (0x1A) Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.
- **TX\_MUTEX\_ERROR** (0x1C) Invalid mutex pointer.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ERROR** (0x04) A wait option other than **TX\_NO\_WAIT** was specified on a call from a non-thread.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR** (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Initialization and threads and timers

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_MUTEX my_mutex;
UINT status;

/* Obtain exclusive ownership of the mutex "my_mutex".
If the mutex "my_mutex" is not available, suspend until it
becomes available. */
status = tx_mutex_get(&my_mutex, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);
```

### See Also

- tx\_mutex\_create
- tx\_mutex\_delete
- tx\_mutex\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_prioritize
- tx\_mutex\_put

## tx\_mutex\_info\_get

Retrieve information about mutex

### Prototype

```

UINT tx_mutex_info_get(
    TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr,
    CHAR **name,
    ULONG *count,
    TX_THREAD **owner,
    TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
    ULONG *suspended_count,
    TX_MUTEX **next_mutex);

```

## Description

This service retrieves information from the specified mutex.

## Parameters

- *mutex\_ptr*: Pointer to mutex control block.
- *name*: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the mutex's name.
- *count*: Pointer to destination for the ownership count of the mutex.
- *owner*: Pointer to destination for the owning thread's pointer.
- *first\_suspended*: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the thread that is first on the suspension list of this mutex.
- *suspended\_count*: Pointer to destination for the number of threads currently suspended on this mutex.
- *next\_mutex*: Pointer to destination for the pointer of the next created mutex.

## NOTE

*Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.*

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful mutex information retrieval.
- TX\_MUTEX\_ERROR (0x1C) Invalid mutex pointer.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```

TX_MUTEX my_mutex;
CHAR *name;
ULONG count;
TX_THREAD *owner;
TX_THREAD *first_suspended;
ULONG suspended_count;
TX_MUTEX *next_mutex;
UINT status;

/* Retrieve information about the previously created
mutex "my_mutex." */
status = tx_mutex_info_get(&my_mutex, &name,
    &count, &owner,
    &first_suspended, &suspended_count,
    &next_mutex);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is
valid. */

```

## See Also

- tx\_mutex\_create
- tx\_mutex\_delete
- tx\_mutex\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_prioritize
- tx\_mutex\_put

# tx\_mutex\_performance\_info\_get

Get mutex performance information

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_mutex_performance_info_get(  
    TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr,  
    ULONG *puts,  
    ULONG *gets,  
    ULONG *suspensions,  
    ULONG *timeouts,  
    ULONG *inversions,  
    ULONG *inheritances);
```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about the specified mutex.

### IMPORTANT

*The ThreadX library and application must be built with `TX_MUTEX_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO` defined for this service to return performance information.*

## Parameters

- *mutex\_ptr*: Pointer to previously created mutex.
- *puts*: Pointer to destination for the number of put requests performed on this mutex.
- *gets*: Pointer to destination for the number of get requests performed on this mutex.
- *suspensions*: Pointer to destination for the number of thread mutex get suspensions on this mutex.
- *timeouts*: Pointer to destination for the number of mutex get suspension timeouts on this mutex.
- *inversions*: Pointer to destination for the number of thread priority inversions on this mutex.
- *inheritances*: Pointer to destination for the number of thread priority inheritance operations on this mutex.

### NOTE

*Supplying a `TX_NULL` for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.*

## Return Values

- `TX_SUCCESS` (0x00) Successful mutex performance get.
- `TX_PTR_ERROR` (0x03) Invalid mutex pointer.
- `TX_FEATURE_NOT_ENABLED` (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_MUTEX my_mutex;
ULONG puts;
ULONG gets;
ULONG suspensions;
ULONG timeouts;
ULONG inversions;
ULONG inheritances;

/* Retrieve performance information on the previously created
mutex. */
status = tx_mutex_performance_info_get(&my_mutex_ptr, &puts, &gets,
    &suspensions, &timeouts, &inversions, &inheritances);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
successfully retrieved. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_mutex\_create
- tx\_mutex\_delete
- tx\_mutex\_get
- tx\_mutex\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_prioritize
- tx\_mutex\_put

## tx\_mutex\_performance\_system\_info\_get

Get mutex system performance information

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_mutex_performance_system_info_get(
    ULONG *puts,
    ULONG *gets,
    ULONG *suspensions,
    ULONG *timeouts,
    ULONG *inversions,
    ULONG *inheritances);
```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about all the mutexes in the system.

### IMPORTANT

*The ThreadX library and application must be built with `TX_MUTEX_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO` defined for this service to return performance information.*

## Parameters

- *puts*: Pointer to destination for the total number of put requests performed on all mutexes.
- *gets*: Pointer to destination for the total number of get requests performed on all mutexes.
- *suspensions*: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread mutex get suspensions on all mutexes.



- *timeouts*: Pointer to destination for the total number of mutex get suspension timeouts on all mutexes.
- *inversions*: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread priority inversions on all mutexes.
- *inheritances*: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread priority inheritance operations on all mutexes.

#### NOTE

*Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.*

#### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful mutex system performance get.
- TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

#### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

#### Preemption Possible

No

#### Example

```
ULONG puts;
ULONG gets;
ULONG suspensions;
ULONG timeouts;
ULONG inversions;
ULONG inheritances;

/* Retrieve performance information on all previously created
mutexes. */
status = tx_mutex_performance_system_info_get(&puts, &gets,
        &suspensions, &timeouts,
        &inversions, &inheritances);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
successfully retrieved. */
```

#### See Also

- tx\_mutex\_create
- tx\_mutex\_delete
- tx\_mutex\_get
- tx\_mutex\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_prioritize
- tx\_mutex\_put

## tx\_mutex\_prioritize

Prioritize mutex suspension list

#### Prototype

```
UINT tx_mutex_prioritize(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr);
```

## Description

This service places the highest priority thread suspended for ownership of the mutex at the front of the suspension list. All other threads remain in the same FIFO order they were suspended in.

## Parameters

- *mutex\_ptr*: Pointer to the previously created mutex.

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful mutex prioritize.
- TX\_MUTEX\_ERROR (0x1C) Invalid mutex pointer.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_MUTEX my_mutex;
UINT status;

/* Ensure that the highest priority thread will receive
ownership of the mutex when it becomes available. */
status = tx_mutex_prioritize(&my_mutex);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the highest priority
suspended thread is at the front of the list. The
next tx_mutex_put call that releases ownership of the
mutex will give ownership to this thread and wake it
up. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_mutex\_create
- tx\_mutex\_delete
- tx\_mutex\_get
- tx\_mutex\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_put

# tx\_mutex\_put

Release ownership of mutex

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_mutex_put(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr);
```

## Description

This service decrements the ownership count of the specified mutex. If the ownership count is zero, the mutex is made available.

## NOTE

*If priority inheritance was selected during mutex creation, the priority of the releasing thread will be restored to the priority it had when it originally obtained ownership of the mutex. Any other priority changes made to the releasing thread during ownership of the mutex may be undone.*

## Parameters

- mutex\_ptr Pointer to the previously created mutex.

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful mutex release.
- TX\_NOT\_OWNED (0x1E) Mutex is not owned by caller.
- TX\_MUTEX\_ERROR (0x1C) Invalid pointer to mutex.
- TX\_CALLER\_ERROR (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Initialization and threads and timers

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_MUTEX my_mutex;
UINT status;

/* Release ownership of "my_mutex." */
status = tx_mutex_put(&my_mutex);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the mutex ownership
count has been decremented and if zero, released. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_mutex\_create
- tx\_mutex\_delete
- tx\_mutex\_get
- tx\_mutex\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_prioritize

# tx\_queue\_create

Create message queue

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_create(
    TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr,
    CHAR *name_ptr,
    UINT message_size,
    VOID *queue_start,
    ULONG queue_size);
```

## Description

This service creates a message queue that is typically used for interthread communication. The total number of messages is calculated from the specified message size and the total number of bytes in the queue.

### NOTE

*If the total number of bytes specified in the queue's memory area is not evenly divisible by the specified message size, the remaining bytes in the memory area are not used.*

## Parameters

- *queue\_ptr*: Pointer to a message queue control block.
- *name\_ptr*: Pointer to the name of the message queue.
- *message\_size*: Specifies the size of each message in the queue. Message sizes range from 1 32-bit word to 16 32-bit words. Valid message size options are numerical values from 1 through 16, inclusive.
- *queue\_start*: Starting address of the message queue. The starting address must be aligned to the size of the ULONG data type.
- *queue\_size*: Total number of bytes available for the message queue.

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful message queue creation.
- TX\_QUEUE\_ERROR (0x09) Invalid message queue pointer. Either the pointer is NULL or the queue is already created.
- TX\_PTR\_ERROR (0x03) Invalid starting address of the message queue.
- TX\_SIZE\_ERROR (0x05) Size of message queue is invalid.
- TX\_CALLER\_ERROR (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Initialization and threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_QUEUE my_queue;
UINT status;

/* Create a message queue whose total size is 2000 bytes
starting at address 0x300000. Each message in this
queue is defined to be 4 32-bit words long. */
status = tx_queue_create(&my_queue, "my_queue_name",
    4, (VOID *) 0x300000, 2000);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_queue contains room
for storing 125 messages (2000 bytes/ 16 bytes per
message). */
```

## See Also

- tx\_queue\_delete
- tx\_queue\_flush
- tx\_queue\_front\_send
- tx\_queue\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_info\_get

- tx\_queue\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_prioritize
- tx\_queue\_receive
- tx\_queue\_send
- tx\_queue\_send\_notify

## tx\_queue\_delete

Delete message queue

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_delete(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr);
```

### Description

This service deletes the specified message queue. All threads suspended waiting for a message from this queue are resumed and given a TX\_DELETED return status.

#### IMPORTANT

*The application must ensure that any send notify callback for this queue is completed (or disabled) before deleting the queue. In addition, the application must prevent any future use of a deleted queue.*

*It is also the application's responsibility to manage the memory area associated with the queue, which is available after this service completes.*

### Parameters

- *queue\_ptr*: Pointer to a previously created message queue.

### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful message queue deletion.
- TX\_QUEUE\_ERROR (0x09) Invalid message queue pointer.
- TX\_CALLER\_ERROR (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_QUEUE my_queue;
UINT status;

/* Delete entire message queue. Assume that the queue
has already been created with a call to
tx_queue_create. */
status = tx_queue_delete(&my_queue);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the message queue is
deleted. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_queue\_create
- tx\_queue\_flush
- tx\_queue\_front\_send
- tx\_queue\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_prioritize
- tx\_queue\_receive
- tx\_queue\_send
- tx\_queue\_send\_notify

## tx\_queue\_flush

Empty messages in message queue

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_flush(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr);
```

### Description

This service deletes all messages stored in the specified message queue.

If the queue is full, messages of all suspended threads are discarded. Each suspended thread is then resumed with a return status that indicates the message send was successful. If the queue is empty, this service does nothing.

### Parameters

- *queue\_ptr*: Pointer to a previously created message queue.

### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful message queue flush.
- TX\_QUEUE\_ERROR (0x09) Invalid message queue pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_QUEUE my_queue;
UINT status;

/* Flush out all pending messages in the specified message
queue. Assume that the queue has already been created
with a call to tx_queue_create. */
status = tx_queue_flush(&my_queue);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the message queue is
empty. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_queue\_create

- tx\_queue\_delete
- tx\_queue\_front\_send
- tx\_queue\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_prioritize
- tx\_queue\_receive
- tx\_queue\_send
- tx\_queue\_send\_notify

## tx\_queue\_front\_send

Send message to the front of queue

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_front_send(
    TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr,
    VOID *source_ptr,
    ULONG wait_option);
```

### Description

This service sends a message to the front location of the specified message queue. The message is **copied** to the front of the queue from the memory area specified by the source pointer.

### Parameters

- *queue\_ptr*:  
Pointer to a message queue control block.
- *source\_ptr*:  
Pointer to the message.
- *wait\_option*:  
Defines how the service behaves if the message queue is full. The wait options are defined as follows:
  - *\*TX\_NO\_WAIT*: (0x00000000) - Selecting TX\_NO\_WAIT results in an immediate return from this service regardless of whether or not it was successful. *This is the only valid option if the service is called from a non-thread; e.g., Initialization, timer, or ISR.*
  - *TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER* (0xFFFFFFFF) - Selecting TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until there is room in the queue.
  - timeout value (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFF) - Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFF) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay suspended while waiting for room in the queue.

### Return Values

- *TX\_SUCCESS* (0x00) Successful sending of message.
- *TX\_DELETED* (0x01) Message queue was deleted while thread was suspended.
- *TX\_QUEUE\_FULL* (0x0B) Service was unable to send message because the queue was full for the duration of the specified time to wait.
- *TX\_WAIT\_ABORTED* (0x1A) Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.
- *TX\_QUEUE\_ERROR* (0x09) Invalid message queue pointer.
- *TX\_PTR\_ERROR* (0x03) Invalid source pointer for message.
- *TX\_WAIT\_ERROR* (0x04) A wait option other than TX\_NO\_WAIT was specified on a call from a non-thread.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_QUEUE my_queue;
UINT status;
ULONG my_message[4];

/* Send a message to the front of "my_queue." Return
immediately, regardless of success. This wait
option is used for calls from initialization, timers,
and ISRs. */
status = tx_queue_front_send(&my_queue, my_message,
    TX_NO_WAIT);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the message is at the front
of the specified queue. */
```

## See Also

- `tx_queue_create`
- `tx_queue_delete`
- `tx_queue_flush`
- `tx_queue_info_get`
- `tx_queue_performance_info_get`
- `tx_queue_performance_system_info_get`
- `tx_queue_prioritize`
- `tx_queue_receive`
- `tx_queue_send`
- `tx_queue_send_notify`

## tx\_queue\_info\_get

Retrieve information about queue

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_info_get(
    TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr,
    CHAR **name,
    ULONG *enqueued,
    ULONG *available_storage,
    TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
    ULONG *suspended_count,
    TX_QUEUE **next_queue);
```

## Description

This service retrieves information about the specified message queue.

## Parameters

- *queue\_ptr*: Pointer to a previously created message queue.
- *name*: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the queue's name.
- *enqueued*: Pointer to destination for the number of messages currently in the queue.
- *available\_storage*: Pointer to destination for the number of messages the queue currently has space for.



- *first\_suspended*: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the thread that is first on the suspension list of this queue.
- *suspended\_count*: Pointer to destination for the number of threads currently suspended on this queue.
- *next\_queue*: Pointer to destination for the pointer of the next created queue.

#### NOTE

*Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.*

#### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful queue information get.
- TX\_QUEUE\_ERROR (0x09) Invalid message queue pointer.

#### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

#### Preemption Possible

No

#### Example

```
TX_QUEUE my_queue;
CHAR *name;
ULONG enqueued;
ULONG available_storage;
TX_THREAD *first_suspended;
ULONG suspended_count;
TX_QUEUE *next_queue;
UINT status;

/* Retrieve information about the previously created
message queue "my_queue." */
status = tx_queue_info_get(&my_queue, &name,
    &enqueued, &available_storage,
    &first_suspended, &suspended_count,
    &next_queue);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is
valid. */
```

#### See Also

- tx\_queue\_create
- tx\_queue\_delete
- tx\_queue\_flush
- tx\_queue\_front\_send
- tx\_queue\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_prioritize
- tx\_queue\_receive
- tx\_queue\_send
- tx\_queue\_send\_notify

## tx\_queue\_performance\_info\_get

Get queue performance information

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_performance_info_get(  
    TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr,  
    ULONG *messages_sent,  
    ULONG *messages_received,  
    ULONG *empty_suspensions,  
    ULONG *full_suspensions,  
    ULONG *full_errors,  
    ULONG *timeouts);
```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about the specified queue.

### IMPORTANT

*The ThreadX library and application must be built with `*TX_QUEUE_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO`: defined for this service to return performance information.*

## Parameters

- *queue\_ptr*: Pointer to previously created queue.
- *messages\_sent*: Pointer to destination for the number of send requests performed on this queue.
- *messages\_received*: Pointer to destination for the number of receive requests performed on this queue.
- *empty\_suspensions*: Pointer to destination for the number of queue empty suspensions on this queue.
- *full\_suspensions*: Pointer to destination for the number of queue full suspensions on this queue.
- *full\_errors*: Pointer to destination for the number of queue full errors on this queue.
- *timeouts*: Pointer to destination for the number of thread suspension timeouts on this queue.

### NOTE

*Supplying a `TX_NULL` for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.*

## Return Values

- `TX_SUCCESS` (0x00) Successful queue performance get.
- `TX_PTR_ERROR` (0x03) Invalid queue pointer.
- `TX_FEATURE_NOT_ENABLED` (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```

TX_QUEUE my_queue;
ULONG messages_sent;
ULONG messages_received;
ULONG empty_suspensions;
ULONG full_suspensions;
ULONG full_errors;
ULONG timeouts;

/* Retrieve performance information on the previously created
queue. */
status = tx_queue_performance_info_get(&my_queue, &messages_sent,
    &messages_received, &empty_suspensions,
    &full_suspensions, &full_errors, &timeouts);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
successfully retrieved. */

```

## See Also

- [tx\\_queue\\_create](#)
- [tx\\_queue\\_delete](#)
- [tx\\_queue\\_flush](#)
- [tx\\_queue\\_front\\_send](#)
- [tx\\_queue\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_queue\\_performance\\_system\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_queue\\_prioritize](#)
- [tx\\_queue\\_receive](#)
- [tx\\_queue\\_send](#)
- [tx\\_queue\\_send\\_notify](#)

# tx\_queue\_performance\_system\_info\_get

Get queue system performance information

## Prototype

```

UINT tx_queue_performance_system_info_get(
    ULONG *messages_sent,
    ULONG *messages_received,
    ULONG *empty_suspensions,
    ULONG *full_suspensions,
    ULONG *full_errors,
    ULONG *timeouts);

```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about all the queues in the system.

### IMPORTANT

*The ThreadX library and application must be built with `TX_QUEUE_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO` defined for this service to return performance information.*

## Parameters

- *messages\_sent*: Pointer to destination for the total number of send requests performed on all queues.
- *messages\_received*: Pointer to destination for the total number of receive requests performed on all queues.

- *empty\_suspensions*: Pointer to destination for the total number of queue empty suspensions on all queues.
- *full\_suspensions*: Pointer to destination for the total number of queue full suspensions on all queues.
- *full\_errors*: Pointer to destination for the total number of queue full errors on all queues.
- *timeouts*: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread suspension timeouts on all queues.

#### NOTE

*Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.*

#### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful queue system performance get.
- TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

#### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

#### Preemption Possible

No

#### Example

```
ULONG messages_sent;
ULONG messages_received;
ULONG empty_suspensions;
ULONG full_suspensions;
ULONG full_errors;
ULONG timeouts;

/* Retrieve performance information on all previously created
queues. */
status = tx_queue_performance_system_info_get(&messages_sent,
    &messages_received, &empty_suspensions,
    &full_suspensions, &full_errors, &timeouts);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
successfully retrieved. */
```

#### See Also

- tx\_queue\_create
- tx\_queue\_delete
- tx\_queue\_flush
- tx\_queue\_front\_send
- tx\_queue\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_prioritize
- tx\_queue\_receive
- tx\_queue\_send
- tx\_queue\_send\_notify

## tx\_queue\_prioritize

Prioritize queue suspension list

#### Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_prioritize(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr);
```

### Description

This service places the highest priority thread suspended for a message (or to place a message) on this queue at the front of the suspension list.

All other threads remain in the same FIFO order they were suspended in.

### Parameters

- *queue\_ptr*: Pointer to a previously created message queue.

### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful queue prioritize.
- TX\_QUEUE\_ERROR (0x09) Invalid message queue pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
TX_QUEUE my_queue;
UINT status;

/* Ensure that the highest priority thread will receive
the next message placed on this queue. */
status = tx_queue_prioritize(&my_queue);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the highest priority
suspended thread is at the front of the list. The
next tx_queue_send or tx_queue_front_send call made
to this queue will wake up this thread. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_queue\_create
- tx\_queue\_delete
- tx\_queue\_flush
- tx\_queue\_front\_send
- tx\_queue\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_receive
- tx\_queue\_send
- tx\_queue\_send\_notify

## tx\_queue\_receive

Get message from message queue

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_receive(  
    TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr,  
    VOID *destination_ptr,  
    ULONG wait_option);
```

## Description

This service retrieves a message from the specified message queue. The retrieved message is **copied** from the queue into the memory area specified by the destination pointer. That message is then removed from the queue.

### IMPORTANT

*The specified destination memory area must be large enough to hold the message; i.e., the message destination pointed to by **destination\_ptr** must be at least as large as the message size for this queue. Otherwise, if the destination is not large enough, memory corruption occurs in the following memory area.*

## Parameters

- *queue\_ptr*:  
Pointer to a previously created message queue.
- *destination\_ptr*:  
Location of where to copy the message.
- *wait\_option*:  
Defines how the service behaves if the message queue is empty. The wait options are defined as follows:
  - \* **TX\_NO\_WAIT**: (0x00000000) - Selecting TX\_NO\_WAIT results in an immediate return from this service regardless of whether or not it was successful. This is the only valid option if the service is called from a non-thread; e.g., Initialization, timer, or ISR.
  - **TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER** (0xFFFFFFFF) - Selecting TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until a message is available.
  - timeout value (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE) - Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFFE) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay suspended while waiting for a message.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS** (0x00) Successful retrieval of message.
- **TX\_DELETED** (0x01) Message queue was deleted while thread was suspended.
- **TX\_QUEUE\_EMPTY** (0x0A) Service was unable to retrieve a message because the queue was empty for the duration of the specified time to wait.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ABORTED** (0x1A) Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.
- **TX\_QUEUE\_ERROR** (0x09) Invalid message queue pointer.
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR** (0x03) Invalid destination pointer for message.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ERROR** (0x04) A wait option other than TX\_NO\_WAIT was specified on a call from a nonthread.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```

TX_QUEUE my_queue;
UINT status;
ULONG my_message[4];

/* Retrieve a message from "my_queue." If the queue is
empty, suspend until a message is present. Note that
this suspension is only possible from application
threads. */
status = tx_queue_receive(&my_queue, my_message,
    TX_WAIT_FOREVER);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the message is in
"my_message." */

```

## See Also

- tx\_queue\_create
- tx\_queue\_delete
- tx\_queue\_flush
- tx\_queue\_front\_send
- tx\_queue\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_prioritize
- tx\_queue\_send
- tx\_queue\_send\_notify

## tx\_queue\_send

Send message to message queue

### Prototype

```

UINT tx_queue_send(
    TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr,
    VOID *source_ptr,
    ULONG wait_option);

```

### Description

This service sends a message to the specified message queue. The sent message is **copied** to the queue from the memory area specified by the source pointer.

### Parameters

- *queue\_ptr*:  
Pointer to a previously created message queue.
- *source\_ptr*:  
Pointer to the message.
- *wait\_option*:  
Defines how the service behaves if the message queue is full. The wait options are defined as follows:
  - *\*TX\_NO\_WAIT*: (0x00000000) - Selecting TX\_NO\_WAIT results in an immediate return from this service regardless of whether or not it was successful. *This is the only valid option if the service is called from a non-thread; e.g., Initialization, timer, or ISR.*
  - *TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER* (0xFFFFFFFF) - Selecting TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until there is room in the queue.

- timeout value (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFF) - Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFF) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay suspended while waiting for room in the queue.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS** (0x00) Successful sending of message.
- **TX\_DELETED** (0x01) Message queue was deleted while thread was suspended.
- **TX\_QUEUE\_FULL** (0x0B) Service was unable to send message because the queue was full for the duration of the specified time to wait.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ABORTED** (0x1A) Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.
- **TX\_QUEUE\_ERROR** (0x09) Invalid message queue pointer.
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR** (0x03) Invalid source pointer for message.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ERROR** (0x04) A wait option other than TX\_NO\_WAIT was specified on a call from a nonthread.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_QUEUE my_queue;
UINT status;
ULONG my_message[4];

/* Send a message to "my_queue." Return immediately,
regardless of success. This wait option is used for
calls from initialization, timers, and ISRs. */
status = tx_queue_send(&my_queue, my_message, TX_NO_WAIT);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the message is in the
queue. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_queue\_create
- tx\_queue\_delete
- tx\_queue\_flush
- tx\_queue\_front\_send
- tx\_queue\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_prioritize
- tx\_queue\_receive
- tx\_queue\_send\_notify

## tx\_queue\_send\_notify

Notify application when message is sent to queue

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_send_notify(
    TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr,
    VOID (*queue_send_notify)(TX_QUEUE *));
```



## Description

This service registers a notification callback function that is called whenever a message is sent to the specified queue. The processing of the notification callback is defined by the application.

### NOTE

*The application's queue send notification callback is not allowed to call any ThreadX API with a suspension option.*

## Parameters

- *queue\_ptr*: Pointer to previously created queue.
- *queue\_send\_notify*: Pointer to application's queue send notification function. If this value is TX\_NULL, notification is disabled.

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful registration of queue send notification.
- TX\_QUEUE\_ERROR (0x09) Invalid queue pointer.
- TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED (0xFF) The system was compiled with notification capabilities disabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_QUEUE my_queue;
/* Register the "my_queue_send_notify" function for monitoring
messages sent to the queue "my_queue." */
status = tx_queue_send_notify(&my_queue, my_queue_send_notify);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the queue send notification function was
successfully registered. */
void my_queue_send_notify(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr)
{
    /* A message was just sent to this queue! */
}
```

## See Also

- tx\_queue\_create
- tx\_queue\_delete
- tx\_queue\_flush
- tx\_queue\_front\_send
- tx\_queue\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_prioritize
- tx\_queue\_receive
- tx\_queue\_send

## tx\_semaphore\_ceiling\_put

Place an instance in counting semaphore with ceiling

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_ceiling_put(  
    TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr,  
    ULONG ceiling);
```

## Description

This service puts an instance into the specified counting semaphore, which in reality increments the counting semaphore by one. If the counting semaphore's current value is greater than or equal to the specified ceiling, the instance will not be put and a TX\_CEILING\_EXCEEDED error will be returned.

## Parameters

- *semaphore\_ptr*: Pointer to previously created semaphore.
- *ceiling*: Maximum limit allowed for the semaphore (valid values range from 1 through 0xFFFFFFFF).

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful semaphore ceiling put.
- TX\_CEILING\_EXCEEDED (0x21) Put request exceeds ceiling.
- TX\_INVALID\_CEILING (0x22) An invalid value of zero was supplied for ceiling.
- TX\_SEMAPHORE\_ERROR (0x0C) Invalid semaphore pointer.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_SEMAPHORE my_semaphore;  
  
/* Increment the counting semaphore "my_semaphore" but make sure  
that it never exceeds 7 as specified in the call. */  
status = tx_semaphore_ceiling_put(&my_semaphore, 7);  
  
/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the semaphore count has been  
incremented. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_semaphore\_create
- tx\_semaphore\_delete
- tx\_semaphore\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_prioritize
- tx\_semaphore\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_put\_notify

# tx\_semaphore\_create

Create counting semaphore

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_create(
    TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr,
    CHAR *name_ptr,
    ULONG initial_count);
```

## Description

This service creates a counting semaphore for inter-thread synchronization. The initial semaphore count is specified as an input parameter.

## Parameters

- *semaphore\_ptr*: Pointer to a semaphore control block.
- *name\_ptr*: Pointer to the name of the semaphore.
- *initial\_count*: Specifies the initial count for this semaphore. Legal values range from 0x00000000 through 0xFFFFFFFF.

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful semaphore creation.
- TX\_SEMAPHORE\_ERROR (0x0C) Invalid semaphore pointer. Either the pointer is NULL or the semaphore is already created.
- TX\_CALLER\_ERROR (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Initialization and threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_SEMAPHORE my_semaphore;
UINT status;

/* Create a counting semaphore whose initial value is 1.
This is typically the technique used to make a binary
semaphore. Binary semaphores are used to provide
protection over a common resource. */
status = tx_semaphore_create(&my_semaphore,
    "my_semaphore_name", 1);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_semaphore is ready for
use. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_semaphore\_ceiling\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_delete
- tx\_semaphore\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_prioritize
- tx\_semaphore\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_put\_notify

# tx\_semaphore\_delete

Delete counting semaphore

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_delete(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr);
```

## Description

This service deletes the specified counting semaphore. All threads suspended waiting for a semaphore instance are resumed and given a TX\_DELETED return status.

### IMPORTANT

*The application must ensure that a put notify callback for this semaphore is completed (or disabled) before deleting the semaphore. In addition, the application must prevent all future use of a deleted semaphore.*

## Parameters

- *semaphore\_ptr*: Pointer to a previously created semaphore.

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful counting semaphore deletion.
- TX\_SEMAPHORE\_ERROR (0x0C) Invalid counting semaphore pointer.
- TX\_CALLER\_ERROR (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_SEMAPHORE my_semaphore;  
UINT status;  
  
/* Delete counting semaphore. Assume that the counting  
semaphore has already been created. */  
status = tx_semaphore_delete(&my_semaphore);  
  
/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the counting semaphore is  
deleted. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_semaphore\_ceiling\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_create
- tx\_semaphore\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_prioritize
- tx\_semaphore\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_put\_notify

# tx\_semaphore\_get

Get instance from counting semaphore

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_get(  
    TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr,  
    ULONG wait_option);
```

## Description

This service retrieves an instance (a single count) from the specified counting semaphore. As a result, the specified semaphore's count is decreased by one.

## Parameters

- *semaphore\_ptr*:  
Pointer to a previously created counting semaphore.
- *wait\_option*:  
Defines how the service behaves if there are no instances of the semaphore available; i.e., the semaphore count is zero. The wait options are defined as follows:
  - **TX\_NO\_WAIT** (0x00000000) - Selecting TX\_NO\_WAIT results in an immediate return from this service regardless of whether or not it was successful. *This is the only valid option if the service is called from a non-thread; e.g., initialization, timer, or ISR.*
  - **TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER** (0xFFFFFFFF) - Selecting TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until a semaphore instance is available.
  - timeout value (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFF) - Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFF) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay suspended while waiting for a semaphore instance.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS** (0x00) Successful retrieval of a semaphore instance.
- **TX\_DELETED** (0x01) Counting semaphore was deleted while thread was suspended.
- **TX\_NO\_INSTANCE** (0x0D) Service was unable to retrieve an instance of the counting semaphore (semaphore count is zero within the specified time to wait).
- **TX\_WAIT\_ABORTED** (0x1A) Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.
- **TX\_SEMAPHORE\_ERROR** (0x0C) Invalid counting semaphore pointer.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ERROR** (0x04) A wait option other than TX\_NO\_WAIT was specified on a call from a non-thread.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```

TX_SEMAPHORE my_semaphore;
UINT status;

/* Get a semaphore instance from the semaphore
"my_semaphore." If the semaphore count is zero,
suspend until an instance becomes available.
Note that this suspension is only possible from
application threads. */
status = tx_semaphore_get(&my_semaphore, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the thread has obtained
an instance of the semaphore. */

```

## See Also

- tx\_semaphore\_ceiling\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_create
- tx\_semaphore\_delete
- tx\_semaphore\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_prioritize
- tx\_semaphore\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_put\_notify

## tx\_semaphore\_info\_get

Retrieve information about semaphore

### Prototype

```

UINT tx_semaphore_info_get(
    TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr,
    CHAR **name, ULONG *current_value,
    TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
    ULONG *suspended_count,
    TX_SEMAPHORE **next_semaphore);

```

### Description

This service retrieves information about the specified semaphore.

### Parameters

- *semaphore\_ptr*: Pointer to semaphore control block.
- *name*: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the semaphore's name.
- *current\_value*: Pointer to destination for the current semaphore's count.
- *first\_suspended*: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the thread that is first on the suspension list of this semaphore.
- *suspended\_count*: Pointer to destination for the number of threads currently suspended on this semaphore.
- *next\_semaphore*: Pointer to destination for the pointer of the next created semaphore.

#### NOTE

*Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.*

### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) information retrieval.
- TX\_SEMAPHORE\_ERROR (0x0C) Invalid semaphore pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
TX_SEMAPHORE my_semaphore;  
CHAR *name;  
ULONG current_value;  
TX_THREAD *first_suspended;  
ULONG suspended_count;  
TX_SEMAPHORE *next_semaphore;  
UINT status;  
  
/* Retrieve information about the previously created  
semaphore "my_semaphore." */  
status = tx_semaphore_info_get(&my_semaphore, &name,  
    &current_value,  
    &first_suspended, &suspended_count,  
    &next_semaphore);  
  
/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is  
valid. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_semaphore\_ceiling\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_create
- tx\_semaphore\_delete
- tx\_semaphore\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_prioritize
- tx\_semaphore\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_put\_notify

## tx\_semaphore\_performance\_info\_get

Get semaphore performance information

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_performance_info_get(  
    TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr,  
    ULONG *puts,  
    ULONG *gets,  
    ULONG *suspensions,  
    ULONG *timeouts);
```

### Description

This service retrieves performance information about the specified semaphore.

## IMPORTANT

*The ThreadX library and application must be built with `TX_SEMAPHORE_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO` defined for this service to return performance information.*

## Parameters

- *\*semaphore\_ptr*: Pointer to previously created semaphore.
- *\*puts*: Pointer to destination for the number of put requests performed on this semaphore.
- *\*gets*: Pointer to destination for the number of get requests performed on this semaphore.
- *\*suspensions*: Pointer to destination for the number of thread suspensions on this semaphore.
- *\*timeouts*: Pointer to destination for the number of thread suspension timeouts on this semaphore.

## NOTE

*Supplying a `TX_NULL` for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.*

## Return Values

- `TX_SUCCESS` (0x00) Successful semaphore performance get.
- `TX_PTR_ERROR` (0x03) Invalid semaphore pointer.
- `TX_FEATURE_NOT_ENABLED` (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_SEMAPHORE my_semaphore;
ULONG puts;
ULONG gets;
ULONG suspensions;
ULONG timeouts;

/* Retrieve performance information on the previously created
semaphore. */
status = tx_semaphore_performance_info_get(&my_semaphore, &puts,
    &gets, &suspensions, &timeouts);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
successfully retrieved. */
```

## See Also

- `tx_semaphore_ceiling_put`
- `tx_semaphore_create`
- `tx_semaphore_delete`
- `tx_semaphore_get`
- `tx_semaphore_info_get`
- `tx_semaphore_performance_system_info_get`
- `tx_semaphore_prioritize`
- `tx_semaphore_put`
- `tx_semaphore_put_notify`



# tx\_semaphore\_performance\_system\_info\_get

Get semaphore system performance information

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_performance_system_info_get(
    ULONG *puts,
    ULONG *gets,
    ULONG *suspensions,
    ULONG *timeouts);
```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about all the semaphores in the system.

### IMPORTANT

*The ThreadX library and application must be built with `TX_SEMAPHORE_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO` defined for this service to return performance information*

## Parameters

- *puts*: Pointer to destination for the total number of put requests performed on all semaphores.
- *gets*: Pointer to destination for the total number of get requests performed on all semaphores.
- *suspensions*: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread suspensions on all semaphores.
- *timeouts*: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread suspension timeouts on all semaphores.

### NOTE

*Supplying a `TX_NULL` for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.*

## Return Values

- `TX_SUCCESS` (0x00) system performance get.
- `TX_FEATURE_NOT_ENABLED` (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
ULONG puts;
ULONG gets;
ULONG suspensions;
ULONG timeouts;

/* Retrieve performance information on all previously created
semaphores. */
status = tx_semaphore_performance_system_info_get(&puts, &gets,
    &suspensions, &timeouts);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
successfully retrieved. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_semaphore\_ceiling\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_create
- tx\_semaphore\_delete
- tx\_semaphore\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_prioritize
- tx\_semaphore\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_put\_notify

# tx\_semaphore\_prioritize

Prioritize semaphore suspension list

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_prioritize(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr);
```

## Description

This service places the highest priority thread suspended for an instance of the semaphore at the front of the suspension list. All other threads remain in the same FIFO order they were suspended in.

## Parameters

- *semaphore\_ptr*: Pointer to a previously created semaphore.

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful semaphore prioritize.
- TX\_SEMAPHORE\_ERROR (0x0C) Invalid counting semaphore pointer.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_SEMAPHORE my_semaphore;
UINT status;

/* Ensure that the highest priority thread will receive
the next instance of this semaphore. */
status = tx_semaphore_prioritize(&my_semaphore);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the highest priority
suspended thread is at the front of the list. The
next tx_semaphore_put call made to this semaphore will
wake up this thread. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_semaphore\_create
- tx\_semaphore\_delete
- tx\_semaphore\_get

- tx\_semaphore\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_put

## tx\_semaphore\_put

Place an instance in counting semaphore

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_put(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr);
```

### Description

This service puts an instance into the specified counting semaphore, which in reality increments the counting semaphore by one.

#### NOTE

*If this service is called when the semaphore is all ones (0xFFFFFFFF), the new put operation will cause the semaphore to be reset to zero.*

### Parameters

- *semaphore\_ptr*: Pointer to the previously created counting semaphore control block.

### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful semaphore put.
- TX\_SEMAPHORE\_ERROR (0x0C) Invalid pointer to counting semaphore.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_SEMAPHORE my_semaphore;  
UINT status;  
  
/* Increment the counting semaphore "my_semaphore." */  
status = tx_semaphore_put(&my_semaphore);  
  
/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the semaphore count has  
been incremented. Of course, if a thread was waiting,  
it was given the semaphore instance and resumed. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_semaphore\_ceiling\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_create
- tx\_semaphore\_delete
- tx\_semaphore\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_prioritize

- tx\_semaphore\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_put\_notify

## tx\_semaphore\_put\_notify

Notify application when semaphore is put

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_put_notify(  
    TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr,  
    VOID (*semaphore_put_notify)(TX_SEMAPHORE *));
```

### Description

This service registers a notification callback function that is called whenever the specified semaphore is put. The processing of the notification callback is defined by the application.

#### NOTE

*The application's semaphore notification callback is not allowed to call any ThreadX API with a suspension option.*

### Parameters

- *semaphore\_ptr*: Pointer to previously created semaphore.
- *semaphore\_put\_notify*: Pointer to application's semaphore put notification function. If this value is TX\_NULL, notification is disabled.

### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful registration of semaphore put notification.
- TX\_SEMAPHORE\_ERROR (0x0C) Invalid semaphore pointer.
- TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED (0xFF) The system was compiled with notification capabilities disabled.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
TX_SEMAPHORE my_semaphore;  
  
/* Register the "my_semaphore_put_notify" function for monitoring  
the put operations on the semaphore "my_semaphore." */  
status = tx_semaphore_put_notify(&my_semaphore, my_semaphore_put_notify);  
  
/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the semaphore put notification function  
was successfully registered. */  
void my_semaphore_put_notify(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr)  
{  
    /* The semaphore was just put! */  
}
```

### See Also

- tx\_semaphore\_ceiling\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_create

- tx\_semaphore\_delete
- tx\_semaphore\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_prioritize
- tx\_semaphore\_put

## tx\_thread\_create

Create application thread

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_create(
    TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
    CHAR *name_ptr,
    VOID (*entry_function)(ULONG),
    ULONG entry_input,
    VOID *stack_start,
    ULONG stack_size,
    UINT priority,
    UINT preempt_threshold,
    ULONG time_slice,
    UINT auto_start);
```

### Description

This service creates an application thread that starts execution at the specified task entry function. The stack, priority, preemption-threshold, and time-slice are among the attributes specified by the input parameters. In addition, the initial execution state of the thread is also specified.

### Parameters

- *thread\_ptr*: Pointer to a thread control block.
- *name\_ptr*: Pointer to the name of the thread.
- *entry\_function*: Specifies the initial C function for thread execution. When a thread returns from this entry function, it is placed in a *completed* state and suspended indefinitely.
- *entry\_input*: A 32-bit value that is passed to the thread's entry function when it first executes. The use for this input is determined exclusively by the application.
- *stack\_start*: Starting address of the stack's memory area.
- *stack\_size*: Number bytes in the stack memory area. The thread's stack area must be large enough to handle its worst-case function call nesting and local variable usage.
- *priority*: Numerical priority of thread. Legal values range from 0 through (TX\_MAX\_PRIORITIES-1), where a value of 0 represents the highest priority.
- *preempt\_threshold*: Highest priority level (0 through (TX\_MAX\_PRIORITIES-1)) of disabled preemption. Only priorities higher than this level are allowed to preempt this thread. This value must be less than or equal to the specified priority. A value equal to the thread priority disables preemption-threshold.
- *time\_slice*: Number of timer-ticks this thread is allowed to run before other ready threads of the same priority are given a chance to run. Note that using preemption-threshold disables time-slicing. Legal time-slice values range from 1 to 0xFFFFFFFF (inclusive). A value of **TX\_NO\_TIME\_SLICE** (a value of 0) disables time-slicing of this thread.

#### NOTE

*Using time-slicing results in a slight amount of system overhead. Since time-slicing is only useful in cases where multiple threads share the same priority, threads having a unique priority should not be assigned a time-slice.*

- *auto\_start*: Specifies whether the thread starts immediately or is placed in a suspended state. Legal options are **TX\_AUTO\_START** (0x01) and **TX\_DONT\_START** (0x00). If **TX\_DONT\_START** is specified, the application must later call `tx_thread_resume` in order for the thread to run.

#### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS** (0x00) Successful thread creation.
- **TX\_THREAD\_ERROR** (0x0E) Invalid thread control pointer. Either the pointer is NULL or the thread is already created.
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR** (0x03) Invalid starting address of the entry point or the stack area is invalid, usually NULL.
- **TX\_SIZE\_ERROR** (0x05) Size of stack area is invalid. Threads must have at least **TX\_MINIMUM\_STACK** bytes to execute.
- **TX\_PRIORITY\_ERROR** (0x0F) Invalid thread priority, which is a value outside the range of (0 through (TX\_MAX\_PRIORITIES-1)).
- **TX\_THRESH\_ERROR** (0x18) Invalid preemptionthreshold specified. This value must be a valid priority less than or equal to the initial priority of the thread.
- **TX\_START\_ERROR** (0x10) Invalid auto-start selection.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR** (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

#### Allowed From

Initialization and threads

#### Preemption Possible

Yes

#### Example

```

TX_THREAD my_thread;
UINT status;

/* Create a thread of priority 15 whose entry point is
"my_thread_entry". This thread's stack area is 1000
bytes in size, starting at address 0x400000. The
preemption-threshold is setup to allow preemption of threads
with priorities ranging from 0 through 14. Time-slicing is
disabled. This thread is automatically put into a ready
condition. */
status = tx_thread_create(&my_thread, "my_thread_name",
    my_thread_entry, 0x1234,
    (VOID *) 0x400000, 1000,
    15, 15, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE,
    TX_AUTO_START);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_thread is ready
for execution! */

...

/* Thread's entry function. When "my_thread" actually
begins execution, control is transferred to this
function. */

VOID my_thread_entry (ULONG initial_input)
{
    /* When we get here, the value of initial_input is
    0x1234. See how this was specified during
    creation. */
    /* The real work of the thread, including calls to
    other function should be called from here! */
    /* When this function returns, the corresponding
    thread is placed into a "completed" state. */
}

```

## See Also

- [tx\\_thread\\_delete](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_entry\\_exit\\_notify](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_identify](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_performance\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_performance\\_system\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_preemption\\_change](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_priority\\_change](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_relinquish](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_reset](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_resume](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_sleep](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_stack\\_error\\_notify](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_suspend](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_terminate](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_time\\_slice\\_change](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_wait\\_abort](#)

## tx\_thread\_delete

Delete application thread

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_delete(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);
```

## Description

This service deletes the specified application thread. Since the specified thread must be in a terminated or completed state, this service cannot be called from a thread attempting to delete itself.

### NOTE

*It is the application's responsibility to manage the memory area associated with the thread's stack, which is available after this service completes. In addition, the application must prevent use of a deleted thread.*

## Parameters

- *thread\_ptr*: Pointer to a previously created application thread.

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful thread deletion.
- TX\_THREAD\_ERROR (0x0E) Invalid application thread pointer.
- TX\_DELETE\_ERROR (0x11) Specified thread is not in a terminated or completed state.
- TX\_CALLER\_ERROR (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Threads and timers

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_THREAD my_thread;
UINT status;

/* Delete an application thread whose control block is
"my_thread". Assume that the thread has already been
created with a call to tx_thread_create. */
status = tx_thread_delete(&my_thread);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application thread is
deleted. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish



- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify

Notify application upon thread entry and exit

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_entry_exit_notify(
    TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
    VOID (*entry_exit_notify)(TX_THREAD *, UINT));
```

### Description

This service registers a notification callback function that is called whenever the specified thread is entered or exits. The processing of the notification callback is defined by the application.

#### NOTE

The application's thread entry/exit notification callback is not allowed to call any ThreadX API with a suspension option.

### Parameters

- *thread\_ptr*: Pointer to previously created thread.
- *entry\_exit\_notify*: Pointer to application's thread entry/exit notification function. The second parameter to the entry/exit notification function designates if an entry or exit is present. The value **TX\_THREAD\_ENTRY** (0x00) indicates the thread was entered, while the value **TX\_THREAD\_EXIT** (0x01) indicates the thread was exited. If this value is **TX\_NULL**, notification is disabled.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS** (0x00) Successful registration of the thread entry/exit notification function.
- **TX\_THREAD\_ERROR** (0x0E) Invalid thread pointer.
- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED** (0xFF) The system was compiled with notification capabilities disabled.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```

TX_THREAD my_thread;
/* Register the "my_entry_exit_notify" function for monitoring
the entry/exit of the thread "my_thread." */
status = tx_thread_entry_exit_notify(&my_thread,
    my_entry_exit_notify);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the entry/exit notification function was
successfully registered. */
void my_entry_exit_notify(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr, UINT condition)
{
    /* Determine if the thread was entered or exited. */
    if (condition == TX_THREAD_ENTRY)
        /* Thread entry! */
    else if (condition == TX_THREAD_EXIT)
        /* Thread exit! */
}

```

## See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_identify

Retrieves pointer to currently executing thread

### Prototype

```
TX_THREAD* tx_thread_identify(VOID);
```

### Description

This service returns a pointer to the currently executing thread. If no thread is executing, this service returns a null pointer.

#### NOTE

*If this service is called from an ISR, the return value represents the thread running prior to the executing interrupt handler.*

## Parameters

None

## Return Values

- *thread pointer*: Pointer to the currently executing thread. If no thread is executing, the return value is `TX_NULL`.

## Allowed From

Threads and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_THREAD *my_thread_ptr;

/* Find out who we are! */
my_thread_ptr = tx_thread_identify();

/* If my_thread_ptr is non-null, we are currently executing
from that thread or an ISR that interrupted that thread.
Otherwise, this service was called
from an ISR when no thread was running when the
interrupt occurred. */
```

## See Also

- `tx_thread_create`
- `tx_thread_delete`
- `tx_thread_entry_exit_notify`
- `tx_thread_info_get`
- `tx_thread_performance_info_get`
- `tx_thread_performance_system_info_get`
- `tx_thread_preemption_change`
- `tx_thread_priority_change`
- `tx_thread_relinquish`
- `tx_thread_reset`
- `tx_thread_resume`
- `tx_thread_sleep`
- `tx_thread_stack_error_notify`
- `tx_thread_suspend`
- `tx_thread_terminate`
- `tx_thread_time_slice_change`
- `tx_thread_wait_abort`

# tx\_thread\_info\_get

Retrieve information about thread

## Prototype

```

UINT tx_thread_info_get(
    TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
    CHAR **name,
    UINT *state,
    ULONG *run_count,
    UINT *priority,
    UINT *preemption_threshold,
    ULONG *time_slice,
    TX_THREAD **next_thread,
    TX_THREAD **suspended_thread);

```

## Description

This service retrieves information about the specified thread.

## Parameters

- *thread\_ptr*: Pointer to thread control block.
- *name*: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the thread's name.
- *state*: Pointer to destination for the thread's current execution state. Possible values are as follows.
  - TX\_READY (0x00)
  - TX\_COMPLETED (0x01)
  - TX\_TERMINATED (0x02)
  - TX\_SUSPENDED (0x03)
  - TX\_SLEEP (0x04)
  - TX\_QUEUE\_SUSP (0x05)
  - TX\_SEMAPHORE\_SUSP (0x06)
  - TX\_EVENT\_FLAG (0x07)
  - TX\_BLOCK\_MEMORY (0x08)
  - TX\_BYTE\_MEMORY (0x09)
  - TX\_MUTEX\_SUSP (0x0D)
- *run\_count*: Pointer to destination for the thread's run count.
- *priority*: Pointer to destination for the thread's priority.
- *preemption\_threshold*: Pointer to destination for the thread's preemption-threshold.
- *time\_slice*: Pointer to destination for the thread's time-slice.
- *next\_thread*: Pointer to destination for next created thread pointer.
- *suspended\_thread*: Pointer to destination for pointer to next thread in suspension list.

## NOTE

*Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.*

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful thread information retrieval.
- TX\_THREAD\_ERROR (0x0E) Invalid thread control pointer.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_THREAD my_thread;
CHAR *name;
UINT state;
ULONG run_count;
UINT priority;
UINT preemption_threshold;
UINT time_slice;
TX_THREAD *next_thread;
TX_THREAD *suspended_thread;
UINT status;

/* Retrieve information about the previously created
thread "my_thread." */

status = tx_thread_info_get(&my_thread, &name,
    &state, &run_count,
    &priority, &preemption_threshold,
    &time_slice, &next_thread, &suspended_thread);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is
valid. */
```

## See Also

- [tx\\_thread\\_create](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_delete](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_entry\\_exit\\_notify](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_identify](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_performance\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_performance\\_system\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_preemption\\_change](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_priority\\_change](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_relinquish](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_reset](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_resume](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_sleep](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_stack\\_error\\_notify](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_suspend](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_terminate](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_time\\_slice\\_change](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_wait\\_abort](#)

## tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get

Get thread performance information

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_performance_info_get(
    TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
    LONG *resumptions,
    ULONG *suspensions,
    ULONG *solicited_preemptions,
    ULONG *interrupt_preemptions,
    ULONG *priority_inversions,
    ULONG *time_slices,
    ULONG *relinquishes,
    ULONG *timeouts,
    ULONG *wait_aborts,
    TX_THREAD **last_preempted_by);
```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about the specified thread.

### IMPORTANT

*The ThreadX library and application must be built with `TX_THREAD_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO` defined in order for this service to return performance information.*

## Parameters

- *thread\_ptr*: Pointer to previously created thread.
- *resumptions*: Pointer to destination for the number of resumptions of this thread.
- *suspensions*: Pointer to destination for the number of suspensions of this thread.
- *solicited\_preemptions*: Pointer to destination for the number of preemptions as a result of a ThreadX API service call made by this thread.
- *interrupt\_preemptions*: Pointer to destination for the number of preemptions of this thread as a result of interrupt processing.
- *priority\_inversions*: Pointer to destination for the number of priority inversions of this thread.
- *time\_slices*: Pointer to destination for the number of time-slices of this thread.
- *relinquishes*: Pointer to destination for the number of thread relinquishes performed by this thread.
- *timeouts*: Pointer to destination for the number of suspension timeouts on this thread.
- *wait\_aborts*: Pointer to destination for the number of wait aborts performed on this thread.
- *last\_preempted\_by*: Pointer to destination for the thread pointer that last preempted this thread.

### NOTE

*Supplying a `TX_NULL` for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.*

## Return Values

- `TX_SUCCESS` (0x00) Successful thread performance get.
- `TX_PTR_ERROR` (0x03) Invalid thread pointer.
- `TX_FEATURE_NOT_ENABLED` (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```

TX_THREAD my_thread;
ULONG resumptions;
ULONG suspensions;
ULONG solicited_preemptions;
ULONG interrupt_preemptions;
ULONG priority_inversions;
ULONG time_slices;
ULONG relinquishes;
ULONG timeouts;
ULONG wait_aborts;
TX_THREAD *last_preempted_by;

/* Retrieve performance information on the previously created
thread. */

status = tx_thread_performance_info_get(&my_thread, &resumptions,
    &suspensions,
    &solicited_preemptions, &interrupt_preemptions,
    &priority_inversions, &time_slices,
    &relinquishes, &timeouts,
    &wait_aborts, &last_preempted_by);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
successfully retrieved. */

```

## See Also

- [tx\\_thread\\_create](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_delete](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_entry\\_exit\\_notify](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_identify](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_performance\\_system\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_preemption\\_change](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_priority\\_change](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_relinquish](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_reset](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_resume](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_sleep](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_stack\\_error\\_notify](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_suspend](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_terminate](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_time\\_slice\\_change](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_wait\\_abort](#)

## tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get

Get thread system performance information

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_performance_system_info_get(
    ULONG *resumptions,
    ULONG *suspensions,
    ULONG *solicited_preemptions,
    ULONG *interrupt_preemptions,
    ULONG *priority_inversions,
    ULONG *time_slices,
    ULONG *relinquishes,
    ULONG *timeouts,
    ULONG *wait_aborts,
    ULONG *non_idle_returns,
    ULONG *idle_returns);
```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about all the threads in the system.

*The ThreadX library and application must be built with*

*TX\_THREAD\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO defined in order for this service to return performance information.*

## Parameters

- *resumptions*: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread resumptions.
- *suspensions*: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread suspensions.
- *solicited\_preemptions*: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread preemptions as a result of a thread calling a ThreadX API service.
- *interrupt\_preemptions*: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread preemptions as a result of interrupt processing.
- *priority\_inversions*: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread priority inversions.
- *time\_slices*: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread time-slices.
- *relinquishes*: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread relinquishes.
- *timeouts*: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread suspension timeouts.
- *wait\_aborts*: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread wait aborts.
- *non\_idle\_returns*: Pointer to destination for the number of times a thread returns to the system when another thread is ready to execute.
- *idle\_returns*: Pointer to destination for the number of times a thread returns to the system when no other thread is ready to execute (idle system).

## NOTE

*Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.*

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful thread system performance get.
- TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example



```

ULONG resumptions;
ULONG suspensions;
ULONG solicited_preemptions;
ULONG interrupt_preemptions;
ULONG priority_inversions;
ULONG time_slices;
ULONG relinquishes;
ULONG timeouts;
ULONG wait_aborts;
ULONG non_idle_returns;
ULONG idle_returns;

/* Retrieve performance information on all previously created
thread. */

status = tx_thread_performance_system_info_get(&resumptions,
        &suspensions,
        &solicited_preemptions, &interrupt_preemptions,
        &priority_inversions, &time_slices, &relinquishes,
        &timeouts, &wait_aborts, &non_idle_returns,
        &idle_returns);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
successfully retrieved. */

```

## See Also

- [tx\\_thread\\_create](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_delete](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_entry\\_exit\\_notify](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_identify](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_performance\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_preemption\\_change](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_priority\\_change](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_relinquish](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_reset](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_resume](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_sleep](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_stack\\_error\\_notify](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_suspend](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_terminate](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_time\\_slice\\_change](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_wait\\_abort](#)

## tx\_thread\_preemption\_change

Change preemption-threshold of application thread

### Prototype

```

UINT tx_thread_preemption_change(
    TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
    UINT new_threshold,
    UINT *old_threshold);

```

## Description

This service changes the preemption-threshold of the specified thread. The preemption-threshold prevents preemption of the specified thread by threads equal to or less than the preemption-threshold value.

### NOTE

*Using preemption-threshold disables time-slicing for the specified thread.*

## Parameters

- *thread\_ptr*: Pointer to a previously created application thread.
- *new\_threshold*: New preemption-threshold priority level (0 through (TX\_MAX\_PRIORITIES-1)).
- *old\_threshold*: Pointer to a location to return the previous preemption-threshold.

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful preemption-threshold change.
- TX\_THREAD\_ERROR (0x0E) Invalid application thread pointer.
- TX\_THRESH\_ERROR (0x18) Specified new preemption-threshold is not a valid thread priority (a value other than (0 through (TX\_MAX\_PRIORITIES-1)) or is greater than (lower priority) than the current thread priority.
- TX\_PTR\_ERROR (0x03) Invalid pointer to previous preemptionthreshold storage location.
- TX\_CALLER\_ERROR (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Threads and timers

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_THREAD my_thread;
UINT my_old_threshold;
UINT status;

/* Disable all preemption of the specified thread. The
current preemption-threshold is returned in
"my_old_threshold". Assume that "my_thread" has
already been created. */

status = tx_thread_preemption_change(&my_thread,
    0, &my_old_threshold);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application thread is
non-preemptable by another thread. Note that ISRs are
not prevented by preemption disabling. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get

- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_priority\_change

Change priority of application thread

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_priority_change(
    TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
    UINT new_priority,
    UINT *old_priority);
```

### Description

This service changes the priority of the specified thread. Valid priorities range from 0 through (TX\_MAX\_PRIORITIES-1), where 0 represents the highest priority level.

#### IMPORTANT

*The preemption-threshold of the specified thread is automatically set to the new priority. If a new threshold is desired, the **tx\_thread\_preemption\_change** service must be used after this call.*

### Parameters

- *thread\_ptr*: Pointer to a previously created application thread.
- *new\_priority*: New thread priority level (0 through (TX\_MAX\_PRIORITIES-1)).
- *old\_priority*: Pointer to a location to return the thread's previous priority.

### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful priority change.
- TX\_THREAD\_ERROR (0x0E) Invalid application thread pointer.
- TX\_PRIORITY\_ERROR (0x0F) Specified new priority is not valid (a value other than (0 through (TX\_MAX\_PRIORITIES-1))).
- TX\_PTR\_ERROR (0x03) Invalid pointer to previous priority storage location.
- TX\_CALLER\_ERROR (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads and timers

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_THREAD my_thread;
UINT my_old_priority;
UINT status;

/* Change the thread represented by "my_thread" to priority
0. */

status = tx_thread_priority_change(&my_thread,
    0, &my_old_priority);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application thread is
now at the highest priority level in the system. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_relinquish

Relinquish control to other application threads

### Prototype

```
VOID tx_thread_relinquish(VOID);
```

### Description

This service relinquishes processor control to other ready-to-run threads at the same or higher priority.

#### NOTE

*In addition to relinquishing control to threads of the same priority, this service also relinquishes control to the highest-priority thread prevented from execution because of the current thread's preemption-threshold setting.*

### Parameters

None

### Return Values

None

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
ULONG run_counter_1 = 0;
ULONG run_counter_2 = 0;

/* Example of two threads relinquishing control to
each other in an infinite loop. Assume that
both of these threads are ready and have the same
priority. The run counters will always stay within one
of each other. */

VOID my_first_thread(ULONG thread_input)
{
    /* Endless loop of relinquish. */
    while(1)
    {
        /* Increment the run counter. */
        run_counter_1++;

        /* Relinquish control to other thread. */
        tx_thread_relinquish();
    }
}

VOID my_second_thread(ULONG thread_input)
{
    /* Endless loop of relinquish. */
    while(1)
    {
        /* Increment the run counter. */
        run_counter_2++;

        /* Relinquish control to other thread. */
        tx_thread_relinquish();
    }
}
```

## See Also

- [tx\\_thread\\_create](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_delete](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_entry\\_exit\\_notify](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_identify](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_performance\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_performance\\_system\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_preemption\\_change](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_priority\\_change](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_reset](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_resume](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_sleep](#)

- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_reset

Reset thread

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_reset(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);
```

### Description

This service resets the specified thread to execute at the entry point defined at thread creation. The thread must be in either a **TX\_COMPLETED** or **TX\_TERMINATED** state for it to be reset

#### IMPORTANT

*The thread must be resumed for it to execute again.*

### Parameters

- *thread\_ptr*: Pointer to a previously created thread.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS** (0x00) Successful thread reset.
- **TX\_NOT\_DONE** (0x20) Specified thread is not in a **TX\_COMPLETED** or **TX\_TERMINATED** state.
- **TX\_THREAD\_ERROR** (0x0E) Invalid thread pointer.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR** (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_THREAD my_thread;

/* Reset the previously created thread "my_thread." */

status = tx_thread_reset(&my_thread);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the thread is reset. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get

- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preformance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_resume

Resume suspended application thread

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_resume(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);
```

### Description

This service resumes or prepares for execution a thread that was previously suspended by a *tx\_thread\_suspend* call. In addition, this service resumes threads that were created without an automatic start.

### Parameters

- *thread\_ptr*: Pointer to a suspended application thread.

### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful thread resume.
- TX\_SUSPEND\_LIFTED (0x19) Previously set delayed suspension was lifted.
- TX\_THREAD\_ERROR (0x0E) Invalid application thread pointer.
- TX\_RESUME\_ERROR (0x12) Specified thread is not suspended or was previously suspended by a service other than *tx\_thread\_suspend*.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

Yes

```
TX_THREAD my_thread;
```

### Example

```
TX_THREAD my_thread;
UINT status;

/* Resume the thread represented by "my_thread". */
status = tx_thread_resume(&my_thread);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application thread is
now ready to execute. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_sleep

Suspend current thread for specified time

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_sleep(ULONG timer_ticks);
```

### Description

This service causes the calling thread to suspend for the specified number of timer ticks. The amount of physical time associated with a timer tick is application specific. This service can be called only from an application thread.

### Parameters

- *timer\_ticks*: The number of timer ticks to suspend the calling application thread, ranging from 0 through 0xFFFFFFFF. If 0 is specified, the service returns immediately.

### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful thread sleep.
- TX\_WAIT\_ABORTED (0x1A) Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.
- TX\_CALLER\_ERROR (0x13) Service called from a non-thread.

### Allowed From

Threads

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example



```
UINT status;

/* Make the calling thread sleep for 100
timer-ticks. */
status = tx_thread_sleep(100);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the currently running
application thread slept for the specified number of
timer-ticks. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_thread\_create, tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify

Register thread stack error notification callback

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_stack_error_notify(VOID (*error_handler)(TX_THREAD *));
```

### Description

This service registers a notification callback function for handling thread stack errors. When ThreadX detects a thread stack error during execution, it will call this notification function to process the error. Processing of the error is completely defined by the application. Anything from suspending the violating thread to resetting the entire system may be done.

#### IMPORTANT

*The ThreadX library must be built with TX\_ENABLE\_STACK\_CHECKING defined in order for this service to return performance information.*

### Parameters

- *error\_handler*: Pointer to application's stack error handling function. If this value is TX\_NULL, the notification is disabled.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS** (0x00) Successful thread reset.
- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED** (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
void my_stack_error_handler(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);

/* Register the "my_stack_error_handler" function with ThreadX
so that thread stack errors can be handled by the application. */
status = tx_thread_stack_error_notify(my_stack_error_handler);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the stack error handler is registered.*/
```

## See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preformance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

# tx\_thread\_suspend

Suspend application thread

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_suspend(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);
```

## Description

This service suspends the specified application thread. A thread may call this service to suspend itself.

## NOTE

*If the specified thread is already suspended for another reason, this suspension is held internally until the prior suspension is lifted. When that happens, this unconditional suspension of the specified thread is performed. Further unconditional suspension requests have no effect.*

After being suspended, the thread must be resumed by ***tx\_thread\_resume*** to execute again.

## Parameters

- *thread\_ptr*. Pointer to an application thread.

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful thread suspend.
- TX\_THREAD\_ERROR (0x0E) Invalid application thread pointer.
- TX\_SUSPEND\_ERROR (0x14) Specified thread is in a terminated or completed state.
- TX\_CALLER\_ERROR (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_THREAD my_thread;
UINT status;

/* Suspend the thread represented by "my_thread". */
status = tx_thread_suspend(&my_thread);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application thread is
unconditionally suspended. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

# tx\_thread\_terminate

Terminates application thread

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_terminate(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);
```

## Description

This service terminates the specified application thread regardless of whether the thread is suspended or not. A thread may call this service to terminate itself.

### NOTE

*It is the application's responsibility to ensure that the thread is in a state suitable for termination. For example, a thread should not be terminated during critical application processing or inside of other middleware components where it could leave such processing in an unknown state.*

### IMPORTANT

*After being terminated, the thread must be reset for it to execute again.*

## Parameters

- *thread\_ptr*: Pointer to application thread.

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful thread terminate.
- TX\_THREAD\_ERROR (0x0E) Invalid application thread pointer.
- TX\_CALLER\_ERROR (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Threads and timers

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_THREAD my_thread;
UINT status;

/* Terminate the thread represented by "my_thread". */
status = tx_thread_terminate(&my_thread);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the thread is terminated
and cannot execute again until it is reset. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_thread\_create tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get

- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change

Changes time-slice of application thread

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_time_slice_change(
    TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
    ULONG new_time_slice,
    ULONG *old_time_slice);
```

### Description

This service changes the time-slice of the specified application thread. Selecting a time-slice for a thread insures that it won't execute more than the specified number of timer ticks before other threads of the same or higher priorities have a chance to execute.

#### NOTE

*Using `preemption-threshold` disables time-slicing for the specified thread.*

### Parameters

- *thread\_ptr*: Pointer to application thread.
- *new\_time\_slice*: New time slice value. Legal values include TX\_NO\_TIME\_SLICE and numeric values from 1 through 0xFFFFFFFF.
- *old\_time\_slice*: Pointer to location for storing the previous timeslice value of the specified thread.

### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful time-slice change.
- TX\_THREAD\_ERROR (0x0E) Invalid application thread pointer.
- TX\_PTR\_ERROR (0x03) Invalid pointer to previous time-slice storage location.
- TX\_CALLER\_ERROR (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads and timers

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```

TX_THREAD my_thread;
ULONG my_old_time_slice;
UINT status;

/* Change the time-slice of the thread associated with
"my_thread" to 20. This will mean that "my_thread"
can only run for 20 timer-ticks consecutively before
other threads of equal or higher priority get a chance
to run. */
status = tx_thread_time_slice_change(&my_thread, 20,
    &my_old_time_slice);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the thread's time-slice
has been changed to 20 and the previous time-slice is
in "my_old_time_slice." */

```

## See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

Abort suspension of specified thread

### Prototype

```

UINT tx_thread_wait_abort(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);

```

### Description

This service aborts sleep or any other object suspension of the specified thread. If the wait is aborted, a **TX\_WAIT\_ABORTED** value is returned from the service that the thread was waiting on.

#### NOTE

*This service does not release explicit suspension that is made by the tx\_thread\_suspend service.*

### Parameters

- *thread\_ptr*. Pointer to a previously created application thread.

### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful thread wait abort.
- TX\_THREAD\_ERROR (0x0E) Invalid application thread pointer.
- TX\_WAIT\_ABORT\_ERROR (0x1B) Specified thread is not in a waiting state.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_THREAD my_thread;
UINT status;

/* Abort the suspension condition of "my_thread." */
status = tx_thread_wait_abort(&my_thread);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the thread is now ready
again, with a return value showing its suspension
was aborted (TX_WAIT_ABORTED). */
```

### See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change

## tx\_time\_get

Retrieves the current time

Application Timers

### Prototype

```
ULONG tx_time_get(VOID);
```

## Description

This service returns the contents of the internal system clock. Each timertick increases the internal system clock by one. The system clock is set to zero during initialization and can be changed to a specific value by the service *tx\_time\_set*.

### NOTE

*The actual time each timer-tick represents is application specific.*

## Parameters

None

## Return Values

- *system clock ticks*\* Value of the internal, free running, system clock.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
ULONG current_time;

/* Pickup the current system time, in timer-ticks. */
current_time = tx_time_get();

/* Current time now contains a copy of the internal system
clock. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_time\_set

# tx\_time\_set

Sets the current time

## Prototype

```
VOID tx_time_set(ULONG new_time);
```

## Description

This service sets the internal system clock to the specified value. Each timer-tick increases the internal system clock by one.

### NOTE

*The actual time each timer-tick represents is application specific.*

## Parameters

- *new\_time*: New time to put in the system clock, legal values range from 0 through 0xFFFFFFFF.

## Return Values



None

### Allowed From

Threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
/* Set the internal system time to 0x1234. */
tx_time_set(0x1234);

/* Current time now contains 0x1234 until the next timer
interrupt. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_time\_get

## tx\_timer\_activate

Activate application timer

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_timer_activate(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr);
```

### Description

This service activates the specified application timer. The expiration routines of timers that expire at the same time are executed in the order they were activated.

#### NOTE

*An expired one-shot timer must be reset via **tx\_timer\_change** before it can be activated again.*

### Parameters

- *timer\_ptr*: Pointer to a previously created application timer.

### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful application timer activation.
- TX\_TIMER\_ERROR (0x15) Invalid application timer pointer.
- TX\_ACTIVATE\_ERROR (0x17) Timer was already active or is a one-shot timer that has already expired.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```

TX_TIMER my_timer;
UINT status;

/* Activate an application timer. Assume that the
application timer has already been created. */
status = tx_timer_activate(&my_timer);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application timer is
now active. */

```

## See Also

- `tx_timer_change`
- `tx_timer_create`
- `tx_timer_deactivate`
- `tx_timer_delete`
- `tx_timer_info_get`
- `tx_timer_performance_info_get`
- `tx_timer_performance_system_info_get`

# tx\_timer\_change

Change application timer

## Prototype

```

UINT tx_timer_change(
    TX_TIMER *timer_ptr,
    ULONG initial_ticks,
    ULONG reschedule_ticks);

```

## Description

This service changes the expiration characteristics of the specified application timer. The timer must be deactivated prior to calling this service.

### NOTE

*A call to the **tx\_timer\_activate** service is required after this service in order to start the timer again.*

## Parameters

- *timer\_ptr*: Pointer to a timer control block.
- *initial\_ticks*: Specifies the initial number of ticks for timer expiration. Legal values range from 1 through 0xFFFFFFFF.
- *reschedule\_ticks*: Specifies the number of ticks for all timer expirations after the first. A zero for this parameter makes the timer a *one-shot* timer. Otherwise, for periodic timers, legal values range from 1 through 0xFFFFFFFF.

### NOTE

*An expired one-shot timer must be reset via **tx\_timer\_change** before it can be activated again.*

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS** (0x00) Successful application timer change.

- **TX\_TIMER\_ERROR** (0x15) Invalid application timer pointer.
- **TX\_TICK\_ERROR** (0x16) Invalid value (a zero) supplied for initial ticks.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR** (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
TX_TIMER my_timer;
UINT status;

/* Change a previously created and now deactivated timer
to expire every 50 timer ticks, including the initial
expiration. */
status = tx_timer_change(&my_timer,50, 50);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the specified timer is
changed to expire every 50 ticks. */

/* Activate the specified timer to get it started again. */
status = tx_timer_activate(&my_timer);
```

### See Also

- tx\_timer\_activate
- tx\_timer\_create
- tx\_timer\_deactivate
- tx\_timer\_delete
- tx\_timer\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_system\_info\_get

## tx\_timer\_create

Create application timer

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_timer_create(
    TX_TIMER *timer_ptr,
    CHAR *name_ptr,
    VOID (*expiration_function)(ULONG),
    ULONG expiration_input,
    ULONG initial_ticks,
    ULONG reschedule_ticks,
    UINT auto_activate);
```

### Description

This service creates an application timer with the specified expiration function and periodic.

### Parameters

- *timer\_ptr*: Pointer to a timer control block
- *name\_ptr*: Pointer to the name of the timer.

- *expiration\_function*: Application function to call when the timer expires.
- *expiration\_input*: Input to pass to expiration function when timer expires.
- *initial\_ticks*: Specifies the initial number of ticks for timer expiration. Legal values range from 1 through 0xFFFFFFFF.
- *reschedule\_ticks*: Specifies the number of ticks for all timer expirations after the first. A zero for this parameter makes the timer a *one-shot* timer. Otherwise, for periodic timers, legal values range from 1 through 0xFFFFFFFF.

#### NOTE

*After a one-shot timer expires, it must be reset via `tx_timer_change` before it can be activated again.*

- *auto\_activate*: Determines if the timer is automatically activated during creation. If this value is `TX_AUTO_ACTIVATE` (0x01) the timer is made active. Otherwise, if the value `TX_NO_ACTIVATE` (0x00) is selected, the timer is created in a non-active state. In this case, a subsequent *tx\_timer\_activate* service call is necessary to get the timer actually started.

#### Return Values

- `TX_SUCCESS` (0x00) Successful application timer creation.
- `TX_TIMER_ERROR` (0x15) Invalid application timer pointer. Either the pointer is NULL or the timer is already created.
- `TX_TICK_ERROR` (0x16) Invalid value (a zero) supplied for initial ticks.
- `TX_ACTIVATE_ERROR` (0x17) Invalid activation selected.
- `TX_CALLER_ERROR` (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

#### Allowed From

Initialization and threads

#### Preemption Possible

No

#### Example

```
TX_TIMER my_timer;
UINT status;

/* Create an application timer that executes
"my_timer_function" after 100 ticks initially and then
after every 25 ticks. This timer is specified to start
immediately! */
status = tx_timer_create(&my_timer, "my_timer_name",
    my_timer_function, 0x1234, 100, 25,
    TX_AUTO_ACTIVATE);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_timer_function will
be called 100 timer ticks later and then called every
25 timer ticks. Note that the value 0x1234 is passed to
my_timer_function every time it is called. */
```

#### See Also

- `tx_timer_activate`
- `tx_timer_change`
- `tx_timer_deactivate`

- tx\_timer\_delete
- tx\_timer\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_system\_info\_get

## tx\_timer\_deactivate

Deactivate application timer

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_timer_deactivate(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr);
```

### Description

This service deactivates the specified application timer. If the timer is already deactivated, this service has no effect.

### Parameters

- *timer\_ptr*: Pointer to a previously created application timer.

### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful application timer deactivation.
- TX\_TIMER\_ERROR (0x15) Invalid application timer pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
TX_TIMER my_timer;
UINT status;

/* Deactivate an application timer. Assume that the
application timer has already been created. */
status = tx_timer_deactivate(&my_timer);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application timer is
now deactivated. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_timer\_activate
- tx\_timer\_change
- tx\_timer\_create
- tx\_timer\_delete
- tx\_timer\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_system\_info\_get

## tx\_timer\_delete

Delete application timer

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_timer_delete(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr);
```

## Description

This service deletes the specified application timer.

### NOTE

*It is the application's responsibility to prevent use of a deleted timer.*

## Parameters

- *timer\_ptr*: Pointer to a previously created application timer.

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful application timer deletion.
- TX\_TIMER\_ERROR (0x15) Invalid application timer pointer.
- TX\_CALLER\_ERROR (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_TIMER my_timer;
UINT status;

/* Delete application timer. Assume that the application
timer has already been created. */
status = tx_timer_delete(&my_timer);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application timer is
deleted. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_timer\_activate
- tx\_timer\_change
- tx\_timer\_create
- tx\_timer\_deactivate
- tx\_timer\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_system\_info\_get

# tx\_timer\_info\_get

Retrieve information about an application timer

## Prototype

```

UINT tx_timer_info_get(
    TX_TIMER *timer_ptr,
    CHAR **name,
    UINT *active,
    ULONG *remaining_ticks,
    ULONG *reschedule_ticks,
    TX_TIMER **next_timer);

```

## Description

This service retrieves information about the specified application timer.

## Parameters

- *timer\_ptr*: Pointer to a previously created application timer.
- *name*: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the timer's name.
- *active*: Pointer to destination for the timer active indication. If the timer is inactive or this service is called from the timer itself, a **TX\_FALSE** value is returned. Otherwise, if the timer is active, a **TX\_TRUE** value is returned.
- *remaining\_ticks*: Pointer to destination for the number of timer ticks left before the timer expires.
- *reschedule\_ticks*: Pointer to destination for the number of timer ticks that will be used to automatically reschedule this timer. If the value is zero, then the timer is a one-shot and won't be rescheduled.
- *next\_timer*: Pointer to destination for the pointer of the next created application timer.

### NOTE

*Supplying a **TX\_NULL** for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.*

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS** (0x00) Successful timer information retrieval.
- **TX\_TIMER\_ERROR** (0x15) Invalid application timer pointer.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```

TX_TIMER my_timer;
CHAR *name;
UINT active;
ULONG remaining_ticks;
ULONG reschedule_ticks;
TX_TIMER *next_timer;
UINT status;

/* Retrieve information about the previously created
application timer "my_timer." */
status = tx_timer_info_get(&my_timer, &name,
    &active,&remaining_ticks,
    &reschedule_ticks,
    &next_timer);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is
valid. */

```

## See Also

- tx\_timer\_activate
- tx\_timer\_change
- tx\_timer\_create
- tx\_timer\_deactivate
- tx\_timer\_delete
- tx\_timer\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_system\_info\_get

# tx\_timer\_performance\_info\_get

Get timer performance information

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_timer_performance_info_get(  
    TX_TIMER *timer_ptr,  
    ULONG *activates,  
    ULONG *reactivates,  
    ULONG *deactivates,  
    ULONG *expirations,  
    ULONG *expiration_adjusts);
```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about the specified application timer.

### IMPORTANT

*The ThreadX library and application must be built with `TX_TIMER_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO` defined for this service to return performance information.*

## Parameters

- *timer\_ptr*: Pointer to previously created timer.
- *activates*: Pointer to destination for the number of activation requests performed on this timer.
- *reactivates*: Pointer to destination for the number of automatic reactivations performed on this periodic timer.
- *deactivates*: Pointer to destination for the number of deactivation requests performed on this timer.
- *expirations*: Pointer to destination for the number of expirations of this timer.
- *expiration\_adjusts*: Pointer to destination for the number of internal expiration adjustments performed on this timer. These adjustments are done in the timer interrupt processing for timers that are larger than the default timer list size (by default timers with expirations greater than 32 ticks).

[NOTE] *Supplying a `TX_NULL` for any parameter indicates the parameter is not required.*

## Return Values

- `TX_SUCCESS` (0x00) Successful timer performance get.
- `TX_PTR_ERROR` (0x03) Invalid timer pointer.
- `TX_FEATURE_NOT_ENABLED` (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs



## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_TIMER my_timer;
ULONG activates;
ULONG reactivates;
ULONG deactivates;
ULONG expirations;
ULONG expiration_adjusts;

/* Retrieve performance information on the previously created
timer. */
status = tx_timer_performance_info_get(&my_timer, &activates,
    &reactivates,&deactivates, &expirations,
    &expiration_adjusts);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
successfully retrieved. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_timer\_activate
- tx\_timer\_change
- tx\_timer\_create
- tx\_timer\_deactivate
- tx\_timer\_delete
- tx\_timer\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_system\_info\_get

# tx\_timer\_performance\_system\_info\_get

Get timer system performance information

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_timer_performance_system_info_get(
    ULONG *activates,
    ULONG *reactivates,
    ULONG *deactivates,
    ULONG *expirations,
    ULONG *expiration_adjusts);
```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about all the application timers in the system.

### IMPORTANT

*The ThreadX library and application must be built with TX\_TIMER\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO defined for this service to return performance information.*

## Parameters

- *activates*: Pointer to destination for the total number of activation requests performed on all timers.
- *reactivates*: Pointer to destination for the total number of automatic reactivation performed on all periodic timers.

- *deactivates*: Pointer to destination for the total number of deactivation requests performed on all timers.
- *expirations*: Pointer to destination for the total number of expirations on all timers.
- *expiration\_adjusts*: Pointer to destination for the total number of internal expiration adjustments performed on all timers. These adjustments are done in the timer interrupt processing for timers that are larger than the default timer list size (by default timers with expirations greater than 32 ticks).

#### NOTE

*Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.*

#### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS (0x00) Successful timer system performance get.
- TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

#### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

#### Preemption Possible

No

#### Example

```
ULONG activates;
ULONG reactivates;
ULONG deactivates;
ULONG expirations;
ULONG expiration_adjusts;

/* Retrieve performance information on all previously created
timers. */
status = tx_timer_performance_system_info_get(&activates,
      &reactivates, &deactivates, &expirations,
      &expiration_adjusts);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
successfully retrieved. */
```

#### See Also

- tx\_timer\_activate
- tx\_timer\_change
- tx\_timer\_create
- tx\_timer\_deactivate
- tx\_timer\_delete
- tx\_timer\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_info\_get

# Chapter 5 - Device Drivers for Azure RTOS ThreadX

11/1/2022 • 13 minutes to read

This chapter contains a description of device drivers for Azure RTOS ThreadX. The information presented in this chapter is designed to help developers write application-specific drivers.

## Device Driver Introduction

Communication with the external environment is an important component of most embedded applications. This communication is accomplished through hardware devices that are accessible to the embedded application software. The software components responsible for managing such devices are commonly called *device drivers*.

Device drivers in embedded, real-time systems are inherently application dependent. This is true for two principal reasons: the vast diversity of target hardware and the equally vast performance requirements imposed on real-time applications. Because of this, it is virtually impossible to provide a common set of drivers that will meet the requirements of every application. For these reasons, the information in this chapter is designed to help users customize *off-the-shelf* ThreadX device drivers and write their own specific drivers.

## Driver Functions

ThreadX device drivers are composed of eight basic functional areas, as follows.

- Driver Initialization
- Driver Control
- Driver Access
- Driver Input
- Driver Output
- Driver Interrupts
- Driver Status
- Driver Termination

With the exception of initialization, each driver functional area is optional. Furthermore, the exact processing in each area is specific to the device driver.

### Driver Initialization

This functional area is responsible for initialization of the actual hardware device and the internal data structures of the driver. Calling other driver services is not allowed until initialization is complete.

#### NOTE

*The driver's initialization function component is typically called from the `tx_application_define` function or from an initialization thread.*

### Driver Control

After the driver is initialized and ready for operation, this functional area is responsible for run-time control. Typically, run-time control consists of making changes to the underlying hardware device. Examples include changing the baud rate of a serial device or seeking a new sector on a disk.

### Driver Access

Some device drivers are called only from a single application thread. In such cases, this functional area is not needed. However, in applications where multiple threads need simultaneous driver access, their interaction must be controlled by adding assign/ release facilities in the device driver. Alternatively, the application may use a semaphore to control driver access and avoid extra overhead and complication inside the driver.

### **Driver Input**

This functional area is responsible for all device input. The principal issues associated with driver input usually involve how the input is buffered and how threads wait for such input.

### **Driver Output**

This functional area is responsible for all device output. The principal issues associated with driver output usually involve how the output is buffered and how threads wait to perform output.

### **Driver Interrupts**

Most real-time systems rely on hardware interrupts to notify the driver of device input, output, control, and error events. Interrupts provide a guaranteed response time to such external events. Instead of interrupts, the driver software may periodically check the external hardware for such events. This technique is called *polling*. It is less real-time than interrupts, but polling may make sense for some less real-time applications.

### **Driver Status**

This function area is responsible for providing run-time status and statistics associated with the driver operation. Information managed by this function area typically includes the following.

- Current device status
- Input bytes
- Output bytes
- Device error counts

### **Driver Termination**

This functional area is optional. It is only required if the driver and/or the physical hardware device need to be shut down. After being terminated, the driver must not be called again until it is reinitialized.

## **Simple Driver Example**

An example is the best way to describe a device driver. In this example, the driver assumes a simple serial hardware device with a configuration register, an input register, and an output register. This simple driver example illustrates the initialization, input, output, and interrupt functional areas.

### **Simple Driver Initialization**

The `tx_sdriver_initialize` function of the simple driver creates two counting semaphores that are used to manage the driver's input and output operation. The input semaphore is set by the input ISR when a character is received by the serial hardware device. Because of this, the input semaphore is created with an initial count of zero.

Conversely, the output semaphore indicates the availability of the serial hardware transmit register. It is created with a value of one to indicate the transmit register is initially available.

The initialization function is also responsible for installing the low-level interrupt vector handlers for input and output notifications. Like other ThreadX interrupt service routines, the low-level handler must call `_tx_thread_context_save` before calling the simple driver ISR. After the driver ISR returns, the low-level handler must call `_tx_thread_context_restore`.

### IMPORTANT

\*It is important that initialization is called before any of the other driver functions. Typically, driver initialization is called from *tx\_application\_define*.

```
VOID tx_sdriver_initialize(VOID)
{
    /* Initialize the two counting semaphores used to control
    the simple driver I/O. */
    tx_semaphore_create(&tx_sdriver_input_semaphore,
        "simple driver input semaphore", 0);
    tx_semaphore_create(&tx_sdriver_output_semaphore,
        "simple driver output semaphore", 1);

    /* Setup interrupt vectors for input and output ISRs.
    The initial vector handling should call the ISRs
    defined in this file. */

    /* Configure serial device hardware for RX/TX interrupt
    generation, baud rate, stop bits, etc. */
}
```

FIGURE 9. Simple Driver Initialization

### Simple Driver Input

Input for the simple driver centers around the input semaphore. When a serial device input interrupt is received, the input semaphore is set. If one or more threads are waiting for a character from the driver, the thread waiting the longest is resumed. If no threads are waiting, the semaphore simply remains set until a thread calls the drive input function.

There are several limitations to the simple driver input handling. The most significant is the potential for dropping input characters. This is possible because there is no ability to buffer input characters that arrive before the previous character is processed. This is easily handled by adding an input character buffer.

### NOTE

*Only threads are allowed to call the **tx\_sdriver\_input** function.*

Figure 10 shows the source code associated with simple driver input.

```

UCHAR tx_sdriver_input(VOID)
{
    /* Determine if there is a character waiting. If not,
    suspend. */
    tx_semaphore_get(&tx_sdriver_input_semaphore,
    TX_WAIT_FOREVER;

    /* Return character from serial RX hardware register. */
    return(*serial_hardware_input_ptr);
}

VOID tx_sdriver_input_ISR(VOID)
{
    /* See if an input character notification is pending. */
    if (!tx_sdriver_input_semaphore.tx_semaphore_count)
    {
        /* If not, notify thread of an input character. */
        tx_semaphore_put(&tx_sdriver_input_semaphore);
    }
}

```

FIGURE 10. Simple Driver Input

### Simple Driver Output

Output processing utilizes the output semaphore to signal when the serial device's transmit register is free. Before an output character is actually written to the device, the output semaphore is obtained. If it is not available, the previous transmit is not yet complete.

The output ISR is responsible for handling the transmit complete interrupt. Processing of the output ISR amounts to setting the output semaphore, thereby allowing output of another character.

#### NOTE

*Only threads are allowed to call the **tx\_sdriver\_output** function.*

Figure 11 shows the source code associated with simple driver output.

```

VOID tx_sdriver_output(UCHAR alpha)
{
    /* Determine if the hardware is ready to transmit a
    character. If not, suspend until the previous output
    completes. */
    tx_semaphore_get(&tx_sdriver_output_semaphore,
    TX_WAIT_FOREVER);

    /* Send the character through the hardware. */
    *serial_hardware_output_ptr = alpha;
}

VOID tx_sdriver_output_ISR(VOID)
{
    /* Notify thread last character transmit is
    complete. */
    tx_semaphore_put(&tx_sdriver_output_semaphore);
}

```

FIGURE 11. Simple Driver Output

### Simple Driver Shortcomings

This simple device driver example illustrates the basic idea of a ThreadX device driver. However, because the simple device driver does not address data buffering or any overhead issues, it does not fully represent real-

world ThreadX drivers. The following section describes some of the more advanced issues associated with device drivers.

## Advanced Driver Issues

As mentioned previously, device drivers have requirements as unique as their applications. Some applications may require an enormous amount of data buffering while another application may require optimized driver ISRs because of high-frequency device interrupts.

### I/O Buffering

Data buffering in real-time embedded applications requires considerable planning. Some of the design is dictated by the underlying hardware device. If the device provides basic byte I/O, a simple circular buffer is probably in order. However, if the device provides block, DMA, or packet I/O, a buffer management scheme is probably warranted.

### Circular Byte Buffers

Circular byte buffers are typically used in drivers that manage a simple serial hardware device like a UART. Two circular buffers are most often used in such situations—one for input and one for output.

Each circular byte buffer is comprised of a byte memory area (typically an array of `UCHARs`), a read pointer, and a write pointer. A buffer is considered empty when the read pointer and the write pointers reference the same memory location in the buffer. Driver initialization sets both the read and write buffer pointers to the beginning address of the buffer.

### Circular Buffer Input

The input buffer is used to hold characters that arrive before the application is ready for them. When an input character is received (usually in an interrupt service routine), the new character is retrieved from the hardware device and placed into the input buffer at the location pointed to by the write pointer. The write pointer is then advanced to the next position in the buffer. If the next position is past the end of the buffer, the write pointer is set to the beginning of the buffer. The queue full condition is handled by canceling the write pointer advancement if the new write pointer is the same as the read pointer.

Application input byte requests to the driver first examine the read and write pointers of the input buffer. If the read and write pointers are identical, the buffer is empty. Otherwise, if the read pointer is not the same, the byte pointed to by the read pointer is copied from the input buffer and the read pointer is advanced to the next buffer location. If the new read pointer is past the end of the buffer, it is reset to the beginning. Figure 12 shows the logic for the circular input buffer.

```

UCHAR   tx_input_buffer[MAX_SIZE];
UCHAR   tx_input_write_ptr;
UCHAR   tx_input_read_ptr;

/* Initialization. */
tx_input_write_ptr = &tx_input_buffer[0];
tx_input_read_ptr = &tx_input_buffer[0];

/* Input byte ISR... UCHAR alpha has character from device. */
save_ptr = tx_input_write_ptr;
*tx_input_write_ptr++ = alpha;
if (tx_input_write_ptr > &tx_input_buffer[MAX_SIZE-1])
    tx_input_write_ptr = &tx_input_buffer[0]; /* Wrap */
if (tx_input_write_ptr == tx_input_read_ptr)
    tx_input_write_ptr = save_ptr; /* Buffer full */

/* Retrieve input byte from buffer... */
if (tx_input_read_ptr != tx_input_write_ptr)
{
    alpha = *tx_input_read_ptr++;
    if (tx_input_read_ptr > &tx_input_buffer[MAX_SIZE-1])
        tx_input_read_ptr = &tx_input_buffer[0];
}

```

**FIGURE 12.** Logic for Circular Input Buffer

#### NOTE

\*For reliable operation, it may be necessary to lockout interrupts when manipulating the read and write pointers of both the input and output circular buffers. \*

### Circular Output Buffer

The output buffer is used to hold characters that have arrived for output before the hardware device finished sending the previous byte. Output buffer processing is similar to input buffer processing, except the transmit complete interrupt processing manipulates the output read pointer, while the application output request utilizes the output write pointer. Otherwise, the output buffer processing is the same. Figure 13 shows the logic for the circular output buffer.



```

UCHAR   tx_output_buffer[MAX_SIZE];
UCHAR   tx_output_write_ptr;
UCHAR   tx_output_read_ptr;

/* Initialization. */
tx_output_write_ptr = &tx_output_buffer[0];
tx_output_read_ptr = &tx_output_buffer[0];

/* Transmit complete ISR... Device ready to send. */
if (tx_output_read_ptr != tx_output_write_ptr)
{
    *device_reg = *tx_output_read_ptr++;
    if (tx_output_read_ptr > &tx_output_buffer[MAX_SIZE-1])
        tx_output_read_ptr = &tx_output_buffer[0];
}

/* Output byte driver service. If device busy, buffer! */
save_ptr = tx_output_write_ptr;
*tx_output_write_ptr++ = alpha;
if (tx_output_write_ptr > &tx_output_buffer[MAX_SIZE-1])
    tx_output_write_ptr = &tx_output_buffer[0]; /* Wrap */
if (tx_output_write_ptr == tx_output_read_ptr)
    tx_output_write_ptr = save_ptr; /* Buffer full! */

```

FIGURE 13. Logic for Circular Output Buffer

### Buffer I/O Management

To improve the performance of embedded microprocessors, many peripheral device devices transmit and receive data with buffers supplied by software. In some implementations, multiple buffers may be used to transmit or receive individual packets of data.

The size and location of I/O buffers is determined by the application and/or driver software. Typically, buffers are fixed in size and managed within a ThreadX block memory pool. Figure 14 describes a typical I/O buffer and a ThreadX block memory pool that manages their allocation.

```

typedef struct TX_IO_BUFFER_STRUCT
{
    struct TX_IO_BUFFER_STRUCT *tx_next_packet;
    struct TX_IO_BUFFER_STRUCT *tx_next_buffer;
    UCHAR tx_buffer_area[TX_MAX_BUFFER_SIZE];
} TX_IO_BUFFER;

TX_BLOCK_POOL tx_io_block_pool;

/* Create a pool of I/O buffers. Assume that the pointer
"free_memory_ptr" points to an available memory area that
is 64 KBytes in size. */
tx_block_pool_create(&tx_io_block_pool,
    "Sample IO Driver Buffer Pool",
    free_memory_ptr, 0x10000,
    sizeof(TX_IO_BUFFER));

```

FIGURE 14. I/O Buffer

### TX\_IO\_BUFFER

The typedef TX\_IO\_BUFFER consists of two pointers. The **tx\_next\_packet** pointer is used to link multiple packets on either the input or output list. The **tx\_next\_buffer** pointer is used to link together buffers that make up an individual packet of data from the device. Both of these pointers are set to NULL when the buffer is allocated from the pool. In addition, some devices may require another field to indicate how much of the buffer area actually contains data.

## Buffered I/O Advantage

What are the advantages of a buffer I/O scheme? The biggest advantage is that data is not copied between the device registers and the application's memory. Instead, the driver provides the device with a series of buffer pointers. Physical device I/O utilizes the supplied buffer memory directly.

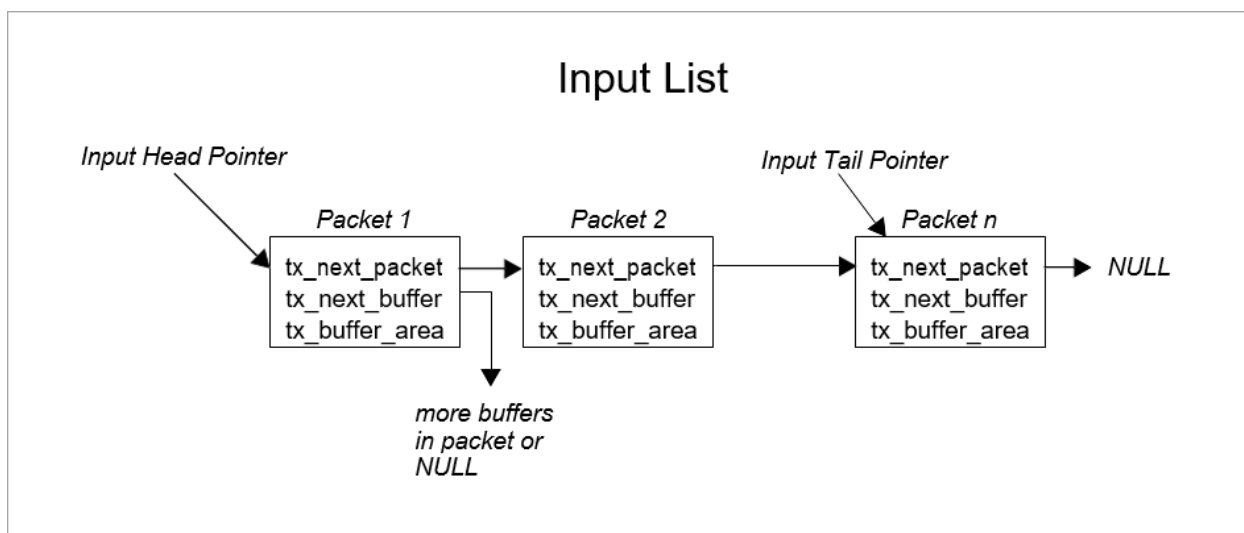
Using the processor to copy input or output packets of information is extremely costly and should be avoided in any high throughput I/O situation.

Another advantage to the buffered I/O approach is that the input and output lists do not have full conditions. All of the available buffers can be on either list at any one time. This contrasts with the simple byte circular buffers presented earlier in the chapter. Each had a fixed size determined at compilation.

## Buffered Driver Responsibilities

Buffered device drivers are only concerned with managing linked lists of I/O buffers. An input buffer list is maintained for packets that are received before the application software is ready. Conversely, an output buffer list is maintained for packets being sent faster than the hardware device can handle them. Figure 15 shows simple input and output linked lists of data packets and the buffer(s) that make up each packet.

### Input List



### Output List

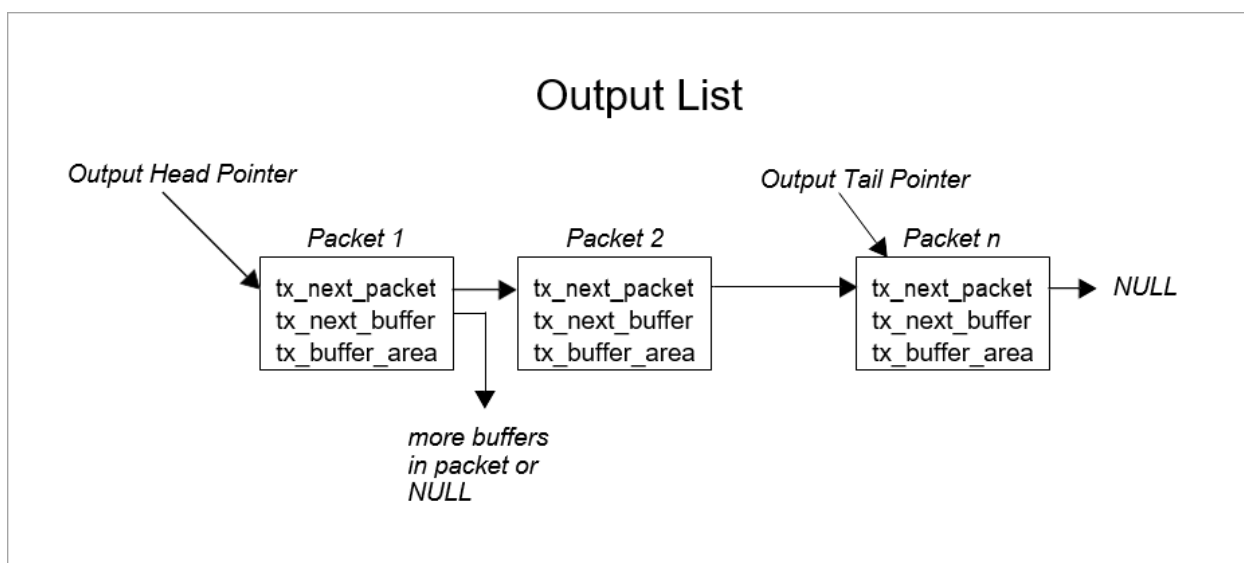


FIGURE 15. Input-Output Lists

Applications interface with buffered drivers with the same I/O buffers. On transmit, application software provides the driver with one or more buffers to transmit. When the application software requests input, the

driver returns the input data in I/O buffers.

**NOTE**

*In some applications, it may be useful to build a driver input interface that requires the application to exchange a free buffer for an input buffer from the driver. This might alleviate some buffer allocation processing inside of the driver.*

**Interrupt Management**

In some applications, the device interrupt frequency may prohibit writing the ISR in C or to interact with ThreadX on each interrupt. For example, if it takes 25us to save and restore the interrupted context, it would not be advisable to perform a full context save if the interrupt frequency was 50us. In such cases, a small assembly language ISR is used to handle most of the device interrupts. This low-overhead ISR would only interact with ThreadX when necessary.

A similar discussion can be found in the interrupt management discussion at the end of Chapter 3.

**Thread Suspension**

In the simple driver example presented earlier in this chapter, the caller of the input service suspends if a character is not available. In some applications, this might not be acceptable.

For example, if the thread responsible for processing input from a driver also has other duties, suspending on just the driver input is probably not going to work. Instead, the driver needs to be customized to request processing similar to the way other processing requests are made to the thread.

In most cases, the input buffer is placed on a linked list and an input event message is sent to the thread's input queue.

# Chapter 6 - Demonstration System for Azure RTOS ThreadX

11/1/2022 • 10 minutes to read

This chapter contains a description of the demonstration system that is delivered with all Azure RTOS ThreadX processor support packages.

## Overview

Each ThreadX product distribution contains a demonstration system that runs on all supported microprocessors.

This example system is defined in the distribution file *demo\_threadx.c* and is designed to illustrate how ThreadX is used in an embedded multithread environment. The demonstration consists of initialization, eight threads, one byte pool, one block pool, one queue, one semaphore, one mutex, and one event flags group.

### NOTE

*Except for the thread's stack size, the demonstration application is identical on all ThreadX supported processors.*

The complete listing of *demo\_threadx.c*, including the line numbers referenced throughout the remainder of this chapter.

## Application Define

The *tx\_application\_define* function executes after the basic ThreadX initialization is complete. It is responsible for setting up all of the initial system resources, including threads, queues, semaphores, mutexes, event flags, and memory pools.

The demonstration system's *tx\_application\_define* (line numbers 60-164) creates the demonstration objects in the following order:

- byte\_pool\_0
- thread\_0
- thread\_1
- thread\_2
- thread\_3
- thread\_4
- thread\_5
- thread\_6
- thread\_7
- queue\_0
- semaphore\_0
- event\_flags\_0
- mutex\_0
- block\_pool\_0

The demonstration system does not create any other additional ThreadX objects. However, an actual application may create system objects during runtime inside of executing threads.

## Initial Execution

All threads are created with the `TX_AUTO_START` option. This makes them initially ready for execution. After `tx_application_define` completes, control is transferred to the thread scheduler and from there to each individual thread.

The order in which the threads execute is determined by their priority and the order that they were created. In the demonstration system, `thread_0` executes first because it has the highest priority (*it was created with a priority of 1*). After `thread_0` suspends, `thread_5` is executed, followed by the execution of `thread_3`, `thread_4`, `thread_6`, `thread_7`, `thread_1`, and finally `thread_2`.

### NOTE

Even though `thread_3` and `thread_4` have the same priority (both created with a priority of 8), `thread_3` executes first. This is because `thread_3` was created and became ready before `thread_4`. Threads of equal priority execute in a FIFO fashion.

## Thread 0

The function `thread_0_entry` marks the entry point of the thread (*lines 167-190*). `Thread_0` is the first thread in the demonstration system to execute. Its processing is simple: it increments its counter, sleeps for 10 timer ticks, sets an event flag to wake up `thread_5`, then repeats the sequence.

`Thread_0` is the highest priority thread in the system. When its requested sleep expires, it will preempt any other executing thread in the demonstration.

## Thread 1

The function `thread_1_entry` marks the entry point of the thread (*lines 193-216*). `Thread_1` is the second-to-last thread in the demonstration system to execute. Its processing consists of incrementing its counter, sending a message to `thread_2` (through `queue_0`), and repeating the sequence. Notice that `thread_1` suspends whenever `queue_0` becomes full (*line 207*).

## Thread 2

The function `thread_2_entry` marks the entry point of the thread (*lines 219-243*). `Thread_2` is the last thread in the demonstration system to execute. Its processing consists of incrementing its counter, getting a message from `thread_1` (through `queue_0`), and repeating the sequence. Notice that `thread_2` suspends whenever `queue_0` becomes empty (*line 233*).

Although `thread_1` and `thread_2` share the lowest priority in the demonstration system (*priority 16*), they *Threads 3 and 4*

are also the only threads that are ready for execution most of the time. They are also the only threads created with time-slicing (*lines 87 and 93*). Each thread is allowed to execute for a maximum of 4 timer ticks before the other thread is executed.

## Threads 3 and 4

The function `thread_3_and_4_entry` marks the entry point of both `thread_3` and `thread_4` (*lines 246-280*). Both threads have a priority of 8, which makes them the third and fourth threads in the demonstration system to execute. The processing for each thread is the same: incrementing its counter, getting `semaphore_0`, sleeping for 2 timer ticks, releasing `semaphore_0`, and repeating the sequence. Notice that each thread suspends whenever `semaphore_0` is unavailable (*line 264*).

Also both threads use the same function for their main processing. This presents no problems because they both have their own unique stack, and C is naturally reentrant. Each thread determines which one it is by examination of the thread input parameter (line 258), which is setup when they are created (lines 102 and 109).

#### NOTE

*It is also reasonable to obtain the current thread point during thread execution and compare it with the control block's address to determine thread identity.*

## Thread 5

The function *thread\_5\_entry* marks the entry point of the thread (lines 283-305). *Thread\_5* is the second thread in the demonstration system to execute. Its processing consists of incrementing its counter, getting an event flag from *thread\_0* (through *event\_flags\_0*), and repeating the sequence. Notice that *thread\_5* suspends whenever the event flag in *event\_flags\_0* is not available (line 298).

## Threads 6 and 7

The function *thread\_6\_and\_7\_entry* marks the entry point of both *thread\_6* and *thread\_7* (lines 307-358). Both threads have a priority of 8, which makes them the fifth and sixth threads in the demonstration system to execute. The processing for each thread is the same: incrementing its counter, getting *mutex\_0* twice, sleeping for 2 timer ticks, releasing *mutex\_0* twice, and repeating the sequence. Notice that each thread suspends whenever *mutex\_0* is unavailable (line 325).

Also both threads use the same function for their main processing. This presents no problems because they both have their own unique stack, and C is naturally reentrant. Each thread determines which one it is by examination of the thread input parameter (line 319), which is setup when they are created (lines 126 and 133).

## Observing the Demonstration

Each of the demonstration threads increments its own unique counter. The following counters may be examined to check on the demo's operation:

- thread\_0\_counter
- thread\_1\_counter
- thread\_2\_counter
- thread\_3\_counter
- thread\_4\_counter
- thread\_5\_counter
- thread\_6\_counter
- thread\_7\_counter

Each of these counters should continue to increase as the demonstration executes, with *thread\_1\_counter* and *thread\_2\_counter* increasing at the fastest rate.

## Distribution file: demo\_threadx.c

This section displays the complete listing of *demo\_threadx.c*, including the line numbers referenced throughout this chapter.

```
/* This is a small demo of the high-performance ThreadX kernel. It includes examples of eight
threads of different priorities, using a message queue, semaphore, mutex, event flags group,
byte pool, and block pool. */
```

```

#include "tx_api.h"

#define DEMO_STACK_SIZE 1024
#define DEMO_BYTE_POOL_SIZE 9120
#define DEMO_BLOCK_POOL_SIZE 100
#define DEMO_QUEUE_SIZE 100

/* Define the ThreadX object control blocks... */

TX_THREAD thread_0;
TX_THREAD thread_1;
TX_THREAD thread_2;
TX_THREAD thread_3;
TX_THREAD thread_4;
TX_THREAD thread_5;
TX_THREAD thread_6;
TX_THREAD thread_7;
TX_QUEUE queue_0;
TX_SEMAPHORE semaphore_0;
TX_MUTEX mutex_0;
TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP event_flags_0;
TX_BYTE_POOL byte_pool_0;
TX_BLOCK_POOL block_pool_0;

/* Define the counters used in the demo application... */

ULONG thread_0_counter;
ULONG thread_1_counter;
ULONG thread_1_messages_sent;
ULONG thread_2_counter;
ULONG thread_2_messages_received;
ULONG thread_3_counter;
ULONG thread_4_counter;
ULONG thread_5_counter;
ULONG thread_6_counter;
ULONG thread_7_counter;

/* Define thread prototypes. */

void thread_0_entry(ULONG thread_input);
void thread_1_entry(ULONG thread_input);
void thread_2_entry(ULONG thread_input);
void thread_3_and_4_entry(ULONG thread_input);
void thread_5_entry(ULONG thread_input);
void thread_6_and_7_entry(ULONG thread_input);

/* Define main entry point. */

int main()
{
    /* Enter the ThreadX kernel. */
    tx_kernel_enter();
}

/* Define what the initial system looks like. */
void tx_application_define(void *first_unused_memory)
{
    CHAR *pointer;

    /* Create a byte memory pool from which to allocate the thread stacks. */
    tx_byte_pool_create(&byte_pool_0, "byte pool 0", first_unused_memory,
        DEMO_BYTE_POOL_SIZE);

    /* Put system definition stuff in here, e.g., thread creates and other assorted
        create information. */

    /* Allocate the stack for thread 0. */

```

```

/* Allocate the stack for thread 0. */
tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);

/* Create the main thread. */
tx_thread_create(&thread_0, "thread 0", thread_0_entry, 0,
    pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,
    1, 1, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE, TX_AUTO_START);

/* Allocate the stack for thread 1. */
tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);

/* Create threads 1 and 2. These threads pass information through a ThreadX
    message queue. It is also interesting to note that these threads have a time
    slice. */
tx_thread_create(&thread_1, "thread 1", thread_1_entry, 1,
    pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,
    16, 16, 4, TX_AUTO_START);

/* Allocate the stack for thread 2. */
tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);
tx_thread_create(&thread_2, "thread 2", thread_2_entry, 2,
    pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,
    16, 16, 4, TX_AUTO_START);

/* Allocate the stack for thread 3. */
tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);

/* Create threads 3 and 4. These threads compete for a ThreadX counting semaphore.
    An interesting thing here is that both threads share the same instruction area. */
tx_thread_create(&thread_3, "thread 3", thread_3_and_4_entry, 3,
    pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,
    8, 8, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE, TX_AUTO_START);

/* Allocate the stack for thread 4. */
tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);

tx_thread_create(&thread_4, "thread 4", thread_3_and_4_entry, 4,
    pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,
    8, 8, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE, TX_AUTO_START);

/* Allocate the stack for thread 5. */
tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);

/* Create thread 5. This thread simply pends on an event flag, which will be set
    by thread_0. */
tx_thread_create(&thread_5, "thread 5", thread_5_entry, 5,
    pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,
    4, 4, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE, TX_AUTO_START);

/* Allocate the stack for thread 6. */
tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);

/* Create threads 6 and 7. These threads compete for a ThreadX mutex. */
tx_thread_create(&thread_6, "thread 6", thread_6_and_7_entry, 6,
    pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,
    8, 8, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE, TX_AUTO_START);

/* Allocate the stack for thread 7. */
tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);

tx_thread_create(&thread_7, "thread 7", thread_6_and_7_entry, 7,
    pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,
    8, 8, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE, TX_AUTO_START);

/* Allocate the message queue. */
tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_QUEUE_SIZE*sizeof(ULONG), TX_NO_WAIT);

/* Create the message queue shared by threads 1 and 2. */
tx_queue_create(&queue_0, "queue 0", TX_1_ULONG, pointer, DEMO_QUEUE_SIZE*sizeof(ULONG));

```



```

/* Create the semaphore used by threads 3 and 4. */
tx_semaphore_create(&semaphore_0, "semaphore 0", 1);

/* Create the event flags group used by threads 1 and 5. */
tx_event_flags_create(&event_flags_0, "event flags 0");

/* Create the mutex used by thread 6 and 7 without priority inheritance. */
tx_mutex_create(&mutex_0, "mutex 0", TX_NO_INHERIT);

/* Allocate the memory for a small block pool. */
tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_BLOCK_POOL_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);

/* Create a block memory pool to allocate a message buffer from. */
tx_block_pool_create(&block_pool_0, "block pool 0", sizeof(ULONG), pointer,
    DEMO_BLOCK_POOL_SIZE);

/* Allocate a block and release the block memory. */
tx_block_allocate(&block_pool_0, &pointer, TX_NO_WAIT);

/* Release the block back to the pool. */
tx_block_release(pointer);
}

/* Define the test threads. */
void thread_0_entry(ULONG thread_input)
{
    UINT status;

    /* This thread simply sits in while-forever-sleep loop. */
    while(1)
    {

        /* Increment the thread counter. */
        thread_0_counter++;

        /* Sleep for 10 ticks. */
        tx_thread_sleep(10);

        /* Set event flag 0 to wakeup thread 5. */
        status = tx_event_flags_set(&event_flags_0, 0x1, TX_OR);

        /* Check status. */
        if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
            break;
    }
}

void thread_1_entry(ULONG thread_input)
{
    UINT status;

    /* This thread simply sends messages to a queue shared by thread 2. */
    while(1)
    {
        /* Increment the thread counter. */
        thread_1_counter++;

        /* Send message to queue 0. */
        status = tx_queue_send(&queue_0, &thread_1_messages_sent, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);

        /* Check completion status. */
        if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
            break;

        /* Increment the message sent. */

```

```

        thread_1_messages_sent++;
    }
}

void thread_2_entry(ULONG thread_input)
{
    ULONG received_message;
    UINT status;

    /* This thread retrieves messages placed on the queue by thread 1. */
    while(1)
    {
        /* Increment the thread counter. */
        thread_2_counter++;

        /* Retrieve a message from the queue. */
        status = tx_queue_receive(&queue_0, &received_message, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);

        /* Check completion status and make sure the message is what we
        expected. */
        if ((status != TX_SUCCESS) || (received_message != thread_2_messages_received))
            break;

        /* Otherwise, all is okay. Increment the received message count. */
        thread_2_messages_received++;
    }
}

void thread_3_and_4_entry(ULONG thread_input)
{
    UINT status;

    /* This function is executed from thread 3 and thread 4. As the loop
    below shows, these function compete for ownership of semaphore_0. */
    while(1)
    {
        /* Increment the thread counter. */
        if (thread_input == 3)
            thread_3_counter++;
        else
            thread_4_counter++;

        /* Get the semaphore with suspension. */
        status = tx_semaphore_get(&semaphore_0, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);

        /* Check status. */
        if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
            break;

        /* Sleep for 2 ticks to hold the semaphore. */
        tx_thread_sleep(2);

        /* Release the semaphore. */
        status = tx_semaphore_put(&semaphore_0);

        /* Check status. */
        if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
            break;
    }
}

void thread_5_entry(ULONG thread_input)
{
    UINT status;
    ULONG actual_flags;

```

```

/* This thread simply waits for an event in a forever loop. */
while(1)
{
    /* Increment the thread counter. */
    thread_5_counter++;

    /* Wait for event flag 0. */
    status = tx_event_flags_get(&event_flags_0, 0x1, TX_OR_CLEAR,
        &actual_flags, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);

    /* Check status. */
    if ((status != TX_SUCCESS) || (actual_flags != 0x1))
        break;
}
}

void thread_6_and_7_entry(ULONG thread_input)
{
    UINT status;

    /* This function is executed from thread 6 and thread 7. As the loop
       below shows, these function compete for ownership of mutex_0. */
    while(1)
    {
        /* Increment the thread counter. */
        if (thread_input == 6)
            thread_6_counter++;
        else
            thread_7_counter++;

        /* Get the mutex with suspension. */
        status = tx_mutex_get(&mutex_0, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);

        /* Check status. */
        if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
            break;

        /* Get the mutex again with suspension. This shows
           that an owning thread may retrieve the mutex it
           owns multiple times. */
        status = tx_mutex_get(&mutex_0, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);

        /* Check status. */
        if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
            break;

        /* Sleep for 2 ticks to hold the mutex. */
        tx_thread_sleep(2);

        /* Release the mutex. */
        status = tx_mutex_put(&mutex_0);

        /* Check status. */
        if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
            break;

        /* Release the mutex again. This will actually
           release ownership since it was obtained twice. */
        status = tx_mutex_put(&mutex_0);

        /* Check status. */
        if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
            break;
    }
}

```



```
UINT tx_byte_pool_create(TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr,
    CHAR *name_ptr,
    VOID *pool_start, ULONG pool_size);
```

```
UINT tx_byte_pool_delete(TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr);
```

```
UINT tx_byte_pool_info_get(TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr,
    CHAR **name, ULONG *available_bytes,
    ULONG *fragments, TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
    ULONG *suspended_count,
    TX_BYTE_POOL **next_pool);
```

```
UINT tx_byte_pool_performance_info_get(TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr,
    ULONG *allocates,
    ULONG *releases, ULONG *fragments_searched, ULONG *merges,
    ULONG *splits, ULONG *suspensions, ULONG *timeouts);
```

```
UINT tx_byte_pool_performance_system_info_get(ULONG *allocates,  
        ULONG *releases, ULONG *fragments_searched, ULONG *merges,  
        ULONG *splits, ULONG *suspensions, ULONG *timeouts);
```

```
UINT tx_byte_pool_prioritize(TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr);
```

```
UINT tx_byte_release(VOID *memory_ptr);
```

## Event Flags Services

```
UINT tx_event_flags_create(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,
    CHAR *name_ptr);
```

```
UINT tx_event_flags_delete(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr);
```

```
UINT tx_event_flags_get(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,
    ULONG requested_flags, UINT get_option,
    ULONG *actual_flags_ptr, ULONG wait_option);
```

```
UINT tx_event_flags_info_get(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,
    CHAR **name, ULONG *current_flags,
    TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
    ULONG *suspended_count,
    TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP **next_group);
```

```
UINT tx_event_flags_performance_info_get(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP
    *group_ptr, ULONG *sets, ULONG *gets, ULONG *suspensions,
    ULONG *timeouts);
```

```
UINT      tx_event_flags_performance_system_info_get(ULONG *sets,
                                                    ULONG *gets,
                                                    ULONG *suspensions, ULONG *timeouts);
```

```
UINT      tx_event_flags_set(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,
                              ULONG flags_to_set, UINT set_option);
```

```
UINT      tx_event_flags_set_notify(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,
                                      VOID (*events_set_notify)(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *));
```

## Interrupt Control

```
UINT      tx_interrupt_control(UINT new_posture);
```

## Mutex Services

```
UINT      tx_mutex_create(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr, CHAR *name_ptr,
                           UINT inherit);
```

```
UINT      tx_mutex_delete(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr);
```

```
UINT      tx_mutex_get(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr, ULONG wait_option);
```

```
UINT      tx_mutex_info_get(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr, CHAR **name,
                             ULONG *count, TX_THREAD **owner,
                             TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
                             ULONG *suspended_count,
                             TX_MUTEX **next_mutex);
```

```
UINT      tx_mutex_performance_info_get(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr, ULONG
                                         *puts, ULONG *gets, ULONG *suspensions, ULONG *timeouts,
                                         ULONG *inversions, ULONG *inheritances);
```

```
UINT      tx_mutex_performance_system_info_get(ULONG *puts, ULONG
                                                *gets,
                                                ULONG *suspensions, ULONG *timeouts, ULONG *inversions,
                                                ULONG *inheritances);
```

```
UINT      tx_mutex_prioritize(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr);
```

```
UINT      tx_mutex_put(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr);
```

## Queue Services

```
UINT tx_queue_create(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr, CHAR *name_ptr,  
    UINT message_size, VOID *queue_start,  
    ULONG queue_size);
```

```
UINT tx_queue_delete(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr);
```

```
UINT tx_queue_flush(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr);
```

```
UINT tx_queue_front_send(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr, VOID *source_ptr,
    ULONG wait_option);
```

```
UINT tx_queue_info_get(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr, CHAR **name,
    ULONG *enqueued, ULONG *available_storage,
    TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
    ULONG *suspended_count, TX_QUEUE **next_queue);
```

```
UINT tx_queue_performance_info_get(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr,
    ULONG *messages_sent, ULONG *messages_received,
    ULONG *empty_suspensions, ULONG *full_suspensions,
    ULONG *full_errors, ULONG *timeouts);
```

```
UINT tx_queue_performance_system_info_get(ULONG *messages_sent,  
    ULONG *messages_received, ULONG *empty_suspensions,  
    ULONG *full_suspensions, ULONG *full_errors,  
    ULONG *timeouts);
```

```
UINT tx_queue_prioritize(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr);
```

```
UINT tx_queue_receive(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr,
    VOID *destination_ptr, ULONG wait_option);
```

```
UINT tx_queue_send(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr, VOID *source_ptr,
    ULONG wait_option);
```

```
UINT tx_queue_send_notify(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr, VOID
    (*queue_send_notify)(TX_QUEUE *));
```

## Semaphore Services

```
UINT      tx_semaphore_ceiling_put(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr,  
                                     ULONG ceiling);
```

```
UINT tx_semaphore_create(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr,  
    CHAR *name_ptr, ULONG initial_count);
```

```
UINT      tx_semaphore_delete(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr);
```

```
UINT      tx_semaphore_get(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr,  
                           ULONG wait_option);
```

```
UINT      tx_semaphore_info_get(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr, CHAR **name,  
                                ULONG *current_value,  
                                TX_THREAD **first_suspended,  
                                ULONG *suspended_count,  
                                TX_SEMAPHORE **next_semaphore);
```

```
UINT      tx_semaphore_performance_info_get(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr,  
                                             ULONG *puts, ULONG *gets, ULONG *suspensions,  
                                             ULONG *timeouts);
```

```
UINT      tx_semaphore_performance_system_info_get(ULONG *puts,  
                                                    ULONG *gets, ULONG *suspensions, ULONG *timeouts);
```

```
UINT      tx_semaphore_prioritize(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr);
```

```
UINT      tx_semaphore_put(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr);
```

```
UINT      tx_semaphore_put_notify(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr,  
                                  VOID (*semaphore_put_notify)(TX_SEMAPHORE *));
```

## Thread Control Services

```
UINT      tx_thread_create(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,  
                           CHAR *name_ptr,  
                           VOID (*entry_function)(ULONG), ULONG entry_input,  
                           VOID *stack_start, ULONG stack_size,  
                           UINT priority, UINT preempt_threshold,  
                           ULONG time_slice, UINT auto_start);
```

```
UINT      tx_thread_delete(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);
```

```
UINT      tx_thread_entry_exit_notify(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,  
                                       VOID (*thread_entry_exit_notify)(TX_THREAD *, UINT));
```

```
TX_THREAD *tx_thread_identify(VOID);
```



```
UINT      tx_thread_info_get(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr, CHAR **name,
                             UINT *state, ULONG *run_count, UINT *priority,
                             UINT *preemption_threshold, ULONG *time_slice,
                             TX_THREAD **next_thread,
                             TX_THREAD **next_suspended_thread);
```

```
UINT      tx_thread_performance_info_get(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
                                           ULONG *resumptions, ULONG *suspensions,
                                           ULONG *solicited_preemptions,
                                           ULONG *interrupt_preemptions,
                                           ULONG *priority_inversions, ULONG *time_slices, ULONG
                                           *relinquishes, ULONG *timeouts,
                                           ULONG *wait_aborts, TX_THREAD **last_preempted_by);
```

```
UINT      tx_thread_performance_system_info_get(ULONG *resumptions,
                                                  ULONG *suspensions,
                                                  ULONG *solicited_preemptions,
                                                  ULONG *interrupt_preemptions,
                                                  ULONG *priority_inversions, ULONG *time_slices, ULONG
                                                  *relinquishes, ULONG *timeouts,
                                                  ULONG *wait_aborts, ULONG *non_idle_returns,
                                                  ULONG *idle_returns);
```

```
UINT      tx_thread_preemption_change(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
                                       UINT new_threshold, UINT *old_threshold);
```

```
UINT      tx_thread_priority_change(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
                                     UINT new_priority, UINT *old_priority);
```

```
VOID      tx_thread_relinquish(VOID);
```

```
UINT      tx_thread_reset(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);
```

```
UINT      tx_thread_resume(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);
```

```
UINT      tx_thread_sleep(ULONG timer_ticks);
```

```
UINT      tx_thread_stack_error_notify
          VOID(*stack_error_handler)(TX_THREAD *));
```

```
UINT      tx_thread_suspend(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);
```

```
UINT      tx_thread_terminate(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);
```

```
UINT      tx_thread_time_slice_change(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,  
                                       ULONG new_time_slice, ULONG *old_time_slice);
```

```
UINT      tx_thread_wait_abort(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);
```

## Time Services

```
ULONG     tx_time_get(VOID);  
VOID      tx_time_set(ULONG new_time);
```

## Timer Services

```
UINT      tx_timer_activate(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr);
```

```
UINT      tx_timer_change(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr,  
                          ULONG initial_ticks,  
                          ULONG reschedule_ticks);
```

```
UINT      tx_timer_create(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr,  
                          CHAR *name_ptr,  
                          VOID (*expiration_function)(ULONG),  
                          ULONG expiration_input, ULONG initial_ticks,  
                          ULONG reschedule_ticks, UINT auto_activate);
```

```
UINT      tx_timer_deactivate(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr);
```

```
UINT      tx_timer_delete(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr);
```

```
UINT      tx_timer_info_get(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr, CHAR **name,  
                          UINT *active, ULONG *remaining_ticks,  
                          ULONG *reschedule_ticks,  
                          TX_TIMER **next_timer);
```

```
UINT      tx_timer_performance_info_get(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr,  
                                       ULONG *activates,  
                                       ULONG *reactivates, ULONG *deactivates,  
                                       ULONG *expirations,  
                                       ULONG *expiration_adjusts);
```

```
UINT      tx_timer_performance_system_info_get  
          ULONG *activates, ULONG *reactivates,  
          ULONG *deactivates, ULONG *expirations,  
          ULONG *expiration_adjusts);
```

# Appendix B - Azure RTOS ThreadX Constants

11/1/2022 • 2 minutes to read

- [Alphabetic Listings](#)
- [Listing by Value](#)

## Alphabetic Listings

CONSTANT (BY ALPHABETIC)	VALUE
TX_1_ULONG	1
TX_2_ULONG	2
TX_4_ULONG	4
TX_8_ULONG	8
TX_16_ULONG	16
TX_ACTIVATE_ERROR	0x17
TX_AND	2
TX_AND_CLEAR	3
TX_AUTO_ACTIVATE	1
TX_AUTO_START	1
TX_BLOCK_MEMORY	8
TX_BYTE_MEMORY	9
TX_CALLER_ERROR	0x13
TX_CEILING_EXCEEDED	0x21
TX_CLEAR_ID	0
TX_COMPLETED	1
TX_DELETE_ERROR	0x11
TX_DELETED	0x01
TX_DONT_START	0

CONSTANT (BY ALPHABETIC)	VALUE
TX_EMPTY	0
TX_EVENT_FLAG	7
TX_FALSE	0
TX_FEATURE_NOT_ENABLED	0xFF
TX_FILE	11
TX_GROUP_ERROR	0x06
TX_INHERIT	1
TX_INHERIT_ERROR	0x1F
TX_INVALID_CEILING	0x22
TX_IO_DRIVER	10
TX_LOOP_FOREVER	1
TX_MUTEX_ERROR	0x1C
TX_MUTEX_SUSP	13
TX_NO_ACTIVATE	0
TX_NO_EVENTS	0x07
TX_NO_INHERIT	0
TX_NO_INSTANCE	0x0D
TX_NO_MEMORY	0x10
TX_NO_MESSAGES	0
TX_NO_SUSPENSIONS	0
TX_NO_TIME_SLICE	0
TX_NO_WAIT	0
TX_NOT_AVAILABLE	0x1D
TX_NOT_DONE	0x20
TX_NOT_OWNED	0x1E

CONSTANT (BY ALPHABETIC)	VALUE
TX_NULL	0
TX_OPTION_ERROR	0x08
TX_OR	0
TX_OR_CLEAR	1
TX_POOL_ERROR	0x02
TX_PRIORITY_CHANGE	14
TX_PRIORITY_ERROR	0x0F
TX_PTR_ERROR	0x03
TX_QUEUE_EMPTY	0x0A
TX_QUEUE_ERROR	0x09
TX_QUEUE_FULL	0x0B
TX_QUEUE_SUSP	5
TX_READY	0
TX_RESUME_ERROR	0x12
TX_SEMAPHORE_ERROR	0x0C
TX_SEMAPHORE_SUSP	6
TX_SIZE_ERROR	0x05
TX_SLEEP	4
TX_STACK_FILL	0xEFEFEFEFUL
TX_START_ERROR	0x10
TX_SUCCESS	0x00
TX_SUSPEND_ERROR	0x14
TX_SUSPEND_LIFTED	0x19
TX_SUSPENDED	3
TX_TCP_IP	12

CONSTANT (BY ALPHABETIC)	VALUE
TX_TERMINATED	2
TX_THREAD_ENTRY	0
TX_THREAD_ERROR	0x0E
TX_THREAD_EXIT	1
TX_THRESH_ERROR	0x18
TX_TICK_ERROR	0x16
TX_TIMER_ERROR	0x15
TX_TRUE	1
TX_WAIT_ABORT_ERROR	0x1B
TX_WAIT_ABORTED	0x1A
TX_WAIT_ERROR	0x04
TX_WAIT_FOREVER	0xFFFFFFFFUL

## Listing by Value

CONSTANT (BY VALUE)	VALUE
TX_CLEAR_ID	0
TX_DONT_START	0
TX_EMPTY	0
TX_FALSE	0
TX_NO_ACTIVATE	0
TX_NO_INHERIT	0
TX_NO_MESSAGES	0
TX_NO_SUSPENSIONS	0
TX_NO_TIME_SLICE	0
TX_NO_WAIT	0

CONSTANT (BY VALUE)	VALUE
TX_NULL	0
TX_OR	0
TX_READY	0
TX_SUCCESS	0x00
TX_THREAD_ENTRY	0
TX_1_ULONG	1
TX_AUTO_ACTIVATE	1
TX_AUTO_START	1
TX_COMPLETED	1
TX_INHERIT	1
TX_LOOP_FOREVER	1
TX_DELETED	0x01
TX_OR_CLEAR	1
TX_THREAD_EXIT	1
TX_TRUE	1
TX_2_ULONG	2
TX_AND	2
TX_POOL_ERROR	0x02
TX_TERMINATED	2
TX_AND_CLEAR	3
TX_PTR_ERROR	0x03
TX_SUSPENDED	3
TX_4_ULONG	4
TX_SLEEP	4
TX_WAIT_ERROR	0x04

CONSTANT (BY VALUE)	VALUE
TX_QUEUE_SUSP	5
TX_SIZE_ERROR	0x05
TX_GROUP_ERROR	0x06
TX_SEMAPHORE_SUSP	6
TX_EVENT_FLAG	7
TX_NO_EVENTS	0x07
TX_8_ULONG	8
TX_BLOCK_MEMORY	8
TX_OPTION_ERROR	0x08
TX_BYTE_MEMORY	9
TX_QUEUE_ERROR	0x09
TX_IO_DRIVER	10
TX_QUEUE_EMPTY	0x0A
TX_FILE	11
TX_QUEUE_FULL	0x0B
TX_TCP_IP	12
TX_SEMAPHORE_ERROR	0x0C
TX_MUTEX_SUSP	13
TX_NO_INSTANCE	0x0D
TX_PRIORITY_CHANGE	14
TX_THREAD_ERROR	0x0E
TX_PRIORITY_ERROR	0x0F
TX_16_ULONG	16
TX_NO_MEMORY	0x10
TX_START_ERROR	0x10



CONSTANT (BY VALUE)	VALUE
TX_DELETE_ERROR	0x11
TX_RESUME_ERROR	0x12
TX_CALLER_ERROR	0x13
TX_SUSPEND_ERROR	0x14
TX_TIMER_ERROR	0x15
TX_TICK_ERROR	0x16
TX_ACTIVATE_ERROR	0x17
TX_THRESH_ERROR	0x18
TX_SUSPEND_LIFTED	0x19
TX_WAIT_ABORTED	0x1A
TX_WAIT_ABORT_ERROR	0x1B
TX_MUTEX_ERROR	0x1C
TX_NOT_AVAILABLE	0x1D
TX_NOT_OWNED	0x1E
TX_INHERIT_ERROR	0x1F
TX_NOT_DONE	0x20
TX_CEILING_EXCEEDED	0x21
TX_INVALID_CEILING	0x22
TX_FEATURE_NOT_ENABLED	0xFF
TX_STACK_FILL	0xEFEFEFEFUL
TX_WAIT_FOREVER	0xFFFFFFFFFUL

# Appendix C - Azure RTOS ThreadX Data Types

11/1/2022 • 2 minutes to read

## TX\_BLOCK\_POOL

```
typedef struct TX_BLOCK_POOL_STRUCT
{
    ULONG tx_block_pool_id;
    CHAR *tx_block_pool_name;
    ULONG tx_block_pool_available;
    ULONG tx_block_pool_total;
    UCHAR *tx_block_pool_available_list;
    UCHAR *tx_block_pool_start;
    ULONG tx_block_pool_size;
    ULONG tx_block_pool_block_size;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT
    *tx_block_pool_suspension_list;
    ULONG tx_block_pool_suspended_count;
    struct TX_BLOCK_POOL_STRUCT
    *tx_block_pool_created_next,
    *tx_block_pool_created_previous;

#ifdef TX_BLOCK_POOL_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
    ULONG tx_block_pool_performance_allocate_count;
    ULONG tx_block_pool_performance_release_count;
    ULONG tx_block_pool_performance_suspension_count;
    ULONG tx_block_pool_performance_timeout_count;
#endif
    TX_BLOCK_POOL_EXTENSION /* Port defined */
}
```

## TX\_BYTE\_POOL

```

typedef struct TX_BYTE_POOL_STRUCT
{
    ULONG tx_byte_pool_id;
    CHAR *tx_byte_pool_name;
    ULONG tx_byte_pool_available;
    ULONG tx_byte_pool_fragments;
    UCHAR *tx_byte_pool_list;
    UCHAR *tx_byte_pool_search;
    UCHAR *tx_byte_pool_start;
    ULONG tx_byte_pool_size;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT
    *tx_byte_pool_owner;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT
    *tx_byte_pool_suspension_list;
    ULONG tx_byte_pool_suspended_count;
    struct TX_BYTE_POOL_STRUCT
    *tx_byte_pool_created_next,
    *tx_byte_pool_created_previous;

#ifdef TX_BYTE_POOL_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
    ULONG tx_byte_pool_performance_allocate_count;
    ULONG tx_byte_pool_performance_release_count;
    ULONG tx_byte_pool_performance_merge_count;
    ULONG tx_byte_pool_performance_split_count;
    ULONG tx_byte_pool_performance_search_count;
    ULONG tx_byte_pool_performance_suspension_count;
    ULONG tx_byte_pool_performance_timeout_count;
#endif
    TX_BYTE_POOL_EXTENSION /* Port defined */
}

```

## TX\_EVENT\_FLAGS\_GROUP

```

typedef struct TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP_STRUCT
{
    ULONG tx_event_flags_group_id;
    CHAR *tx_event_flags_group_name;
    ULONG tx_event_flags_group_current;
    UINT tx_event_flags_group_reset_search;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT *tx_event_flags_group_suspension_list;
    ULONG tx_event_flags_group_suspended_count;
    struct TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP_STRUCT *tx_event_flags_group_created_next,
    *tx_event_flags_group_created_previous;
    ULONG tx_event_flags_group_delayed_clear;

#ifdef TX_EVENT_FLAGS_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
    ULONG tx_event_flags_group_performance_set_count;
    ULONG tx_event_flags_group__performance_get_count;
    ULONG tx_event_flags_group__performance_suspension_count;
    ULONG tx_event_flags_group__performance_timeout_count;
#endif

#ifdef TX_DISABLE_NOTIFY_CALLBACKS
    VOID (*tx_event_flags_group_set_notify)(struct TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP_STRUCT);
#endif
    TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP_EXTENSION /* Port defined */
}

```

## TX\_MUTEX

```

typedef struct TX_MUTEX_STRUCT
{
    ULONG tx_mutex_id;
    CHAR *tx_mutex_name;
    ULONG tx_mutex_ownership_count;
    TX_THREAD *tx_mutex_owner;
    UINT tx_mutex_inherit;
    UINT tx_mutex_original_priority;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT *tx_mutex_suspension_list;
    ULONG tx_mutex_suspended_count;
    struct TX_MUTEX_STRUCT *tx_mutex_created_next, *tx_mutex_created_previous;
    ULONG tx_mutex_highest_priority_waiting;
    struct TX_MUTEX_STRUCT *tx_mutex_owned_next, *tx_mutex_owned_previous;

#ifdef TX_MUTEX_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
    ULONG tx_mutex_performance_put_count;
    ULONG tx_mutex_performance_get_count;
    ULONG tx_mutex_performance_suspension_count;
    ULONG tx_mutex_performance_timeout_count;
    ULONG tx_mutex_performance_priority_inversion_count;
    ULONG tx_mutex_performance__priority_inheritance_count;
#endif

    TX_MUTEX_EXTENSION /* Port defined */
}

```

## TX\_QUEUE

```

typedef struct TX_QUEUE_STRUCT
{
    ULONG tx_queue_id;
    CHAR *tx_queue_name;
    UINT tx_queue_message_size;
    ULONG tx_queue_capacity;
    ULONG tx_queue_enqueued;
    ULONG tx_queue_available_storage;
    ULONG *tx_queue_start;
    ULONG *tx_queue_end;
    ULONG *tx_queue_read;
    ULONG *tx_queue_write;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT *tx_queue_suspension_list;
    ULONG tx_queue_suspended_count;
    struct TX_QUEUE_STRUCT *tx_queue_created_next, *tx_queue_created_previous;

#ifdef TX_QUEUE_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
    ULONG tx_queue_performance_messages_sent_count;
    ULONG tx_queue_performance_messages_received_count;
    ULONG tx_queue_performance_empty_suspension_count;
    ULONG tx_queue_performance_full_suspension_count;
    ULONG tx_queue_performance_full_error_count;
    ULONG tx_queue_performance_timeout_count;
#endif

#ifdef TX_DISABLE_NOTIFY_CALLBACKS
    VOID *tx_queue_send_notify)(struct TX_QUEUE_STRUCT *);
#endif

    TX_QUEUE_EXTENSION /* Port defined */
}

```

## TX\_SEMAPHORE

```

typedef struct TX_SEMAPHORE_STRUCT
{
    ULONG tx_semaphore_id;
    CHAR *tx_semaphore_name;
    ULONG tx_semaphore_count;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT *tx_semaphore_suspension_list;
    ULONG tx_semaphore_suspended_count;
    struct TX_SEMAPHORE_STRUCT *tx_semaphore_created_next, *tx_semaphore_created_previous;

#ifdef TX_SEMAPHORE_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
    ULONG tx_semaphore_performance_put_count;
    ULONG tx_semaphore_performance_get_count;
    ULONG tx_semaphore_performance_suspension_count;
    ULONG tx_semaphore_performance_timeout_count;
#endif

#ifdef TX_DISABLE_NOTIFY_CALLBACKS
    VOID (*tx_semaphore_put_notify)(struct TX_SEMAPHORE_STRUCT *);
#endif

    TX_SEMAPHORE_EXTENSION /* Port defined */
}

```

## TX\_THREAD

```

typedef struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT
{
    ULONG tx_thread_id;
    ULONG tx_thread_run_count;
    VOID *tx_thread_stack_ptr;
    VOID *tx_thread_stack_start;
    VOID *tx_thread_stack_end;
    ULONG tx_thread_stack_size;
    ULONG tx_thread_time_slice;
    ULONG tx_thread_new_time_slice;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT *tx_thread_ready_next, *tx_thread_ready_previous;
    TX_THREAD_EXTENSION_0 /* Port defined */
    CHAR *tx_thread_name;
    UINT tx_thread_priority;
    UINT tx_thread_state;
    UINT tx_thread_delayed_suspend;
    UINT tx_thread_suspending;
    UINT tx_thread_preempt_threshold;
    VOID (*tx_thread_schedule_hook)(struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT *, ULONG);
    VOID (*tx_thread_entry)(ULONG);
    ULONG tx_thread_entry_parameter;
    TX_TIMER_INTERNAL tx_thread_timer;
    VOID (*tx_thread_suspend_cleanup)(struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT *);
    VOID *tx_thread_suspend_control_block;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT *tx_thread_suspended_next, *tx_thread_suspended_previous;
    ULONG tx_thread_suspend_info;
    VOID *tx_thread_additional_suspend_info;
    UINT tx_thread_suspend_option;
    UINT tx_thread_suspend_status;
    TX_THREAD_EXTENSION_1 /* Port defined */
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT *tx_thread_created_next, *tx_thread_created_previous;
    TX_THREAD_EXTENSION_2 /* Port defined */
    VOID *tx_thread_filex_ptr;
    UINT tx_thread_user_priority;
    UINT tx_thread_user_preempt_threshold;
    UINT tx_thread_inherit_priority;
    ULONG tx_thread_owned_mutex_count;
    struct TX_MUTEX_STRUCT *tx_thread_owned_mutex_list;

#ifdef TX_THREAD_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
    ULONG tx_thread_performance_resume_count;
    ULONG tx_thread_performance_suspend_count;
    ULONG tx_thread_performance_solicited_preemption_count;
    ULONG tx_thread_performance_interrupt_preemption_count;
    ULONG tx_thread_performance_priority_inversion_count;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT *tx_thread_performance_last_preempting_thread;
    ULONG tx_thread_performance_time_slice_count;
    ULONG tx_thread_performance_relinquish_count;
    ULONG tx_thread_performance_timeout_count;
    ULONG tx_thread_performance_wait_abort_count;
#endif

    VOID *tx_thread_stack_highest_ptr;

#ifdef TX_DISABLE_NOTIFY_CALLBACKS
    VOID (*tx_thread_entry_exit_notify) (struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT *, UINT);
#endif

    TX_THREAD_EXTENSION_3 /* Port defined */
    ULONG tx_thread_suspension_sequence;
    TX_THREAD_USER_EXTENSION
}

```

## TX\_TIMER

```

typedef struct TX_TIMER_STRUCT
{
    ULONG tx_timer_id;
    CHAR *tx_timer_name;
    TX_TIMER_INTERNAL tx_timer_internal;
    struct TX_TIMER_STRUCT *tx_timer_created_next, *tx_timer_created_previous;
    TX_TIMER_EXTENSION /* Port defined */

#ifdef TX_TIMER_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
    ULONG tx_timer_performance_activate_count;
    ULONG tx_timer_performance_reactivate_count;
    ULONG tx_timer_performance_deactivate_count;
    ULONG tx_timer_performance_expiration_count;
    ULONG tx_timer_performance__expiration_adjust_count;
#endif
}

```

## TX\_TIMER\_INTERNAL

```

typedef struct TX_TIMER_INTERNAL_STRUCT
{
    ULONG tx_timer_internal_remaining_ticks;
    ULONG tx_timer_internal_re_initialize_ticks;
    VOID (*tx_timer_internal_timeout_function)(ULONG);
    ULONG tx_timer_internal_timeout_param;
    struct TX_TIMER_INTERNAL_STRUCT *tx_timer_internal_active_next, *tx_timer_internal_active_previous;
    struct TX_TIMER_INTERNAL_STRUCT *tx_timer_internal_list_head;
    TX_TIMER_INTERNAL_EXTENSION /* Port defined */
}

```

# Appendix D - Azure RTOS ThreadX ASCII Character Codes

11/1/2022 • 2 minutes to read

## ASCII Character Codes in HEX

		<i>most significant nibble</i>							
		0_	1_	2_	3_	4_	5_	6_	7_
<i>least significant nibble</i>	_0	NUL	DLE	SP	0	@	P	'	p
	_1	SOH	DC1	!	1	A	Q	a	q
	_2	STX	DC2	"	2	B	R	b	r
	_3	ETX	DC3	#	3	C	S	c	s
	_4	EOT	DC4	\$	4	D	T	d	t
	_5	ENQ	NAK	%	5	E	U	e	u
	_6	ACK	SYN	&	6	F	V	f	v
	_7	BEL	ETB	'	7	G	W	g	w
	_8	BS	CAN	(	8	H	X	h	x
	_9	HT	EM	)	9	I	Y	i	y
	_A	LF	SUB	*	:	J	Z	j	z
	_B	VT	ESC	+	;	K	[	K	}
	_C	FF	FS	,	<	L	\	l	
	_D	CR	GS	-	=	M	]	m	}
	_E	SO	RS	.	>	N	^	n	~
	_F	SI	US	/	?	O	_	o	DEL



# Chapter 1 Overview

11/1/2022 • 2 minutes to read

The ARMv8-M architecture introduces new security features, including TrustZone, which allows memory to be tagged as secure or non-secure. Following ARM's guidelines, ThreadX (and the user application) is designed to be run in non-secure mode. ThreadX (and the user application) can also be run in secure mode. In order to interface with secure mode software, some new ThreadX APIs are necessary. This document describes these ThreadX services that are specific to the ARMv8-M architecture, including the Cortex-M23, Cortex-M33, Cortex-M35P, and Cortex-M55.

# Chapter 2 Installing ThreadX support for ARMv8-M

11/1/2022 • 2 minutes to read

There are additional ThreadX source code files to support the ARMv8-M architecture.

If ThreadX is to be run in *secure mode*, these additional files and APIs are not needed. To run ThreadX in secure mode, define the symbol `TX_SINGLE_MODE_SECURE` at the top of *tx\_port.h* or on the command line or project settings. Ensure `TX_SINGLE_MODE_SECURE` is defined for all c and assembly files. ThreadX and the user application will execute in secure mode.

If ThreadX and the user application are to run only in *non-secure mode*, define the symbol `TX_SINGLE_MODE_NON_SECURE` at the top of *tx\_port.h* or on the command line or project settings. Ensure `TX_SINGLE_MODE_NON_SECURE` is defined for all c and assembly files. ThreadX and the user application will execute in non-secure mode with no support for making secure function calls.

By default, ThreadX and the user application are designed to run in non-secure mode with support for non-secure callable secure functions. To run ThreadX and the user application in non-secure mode and support non-secure callable secure functions, please do the following:

The file *tx\_thread\_secure\_stack.c* must be added to the secure application.

The following files must be added to the ThreadX library:

- *tx\_secure\_interface.h*
- *txe\_thread\_secure\_stack\_allocate.c*
- *txe\_thread\_secure\_stack\_free.c*
- *tx\_thread\_secure\_stack\_allocate.s*
- *tx\_thread\_secure\_stack\_free.s*

## Additional ThreadX Sources for ARMv8-M

The additional ThreadX files for the ARMv8-M TrustZone architecture are described below.

FILE NAME	CONTENTS
<i>tx_secure_interface.h</i>	Include file that defines the ThreadX non-secure callable functions.
<i>txe_thread_secure_stack_allocate.c</i>	Error-checking file for the secure stack allocate API.
<i>txe_thread_secure_stack_free.c</i>	Error-checking file for the secure stack free API.
<i>tx_thread_secure_stack_initialize.s</i>	Initialize the secure stacks.
<i>tx_thread_secure_stack_allocate.s</i>	Non-secure veneer for the secure stack allocate service.
<i>tx_thread_secure_stack_free.s</i>	Non-secure veneer for the secure stack free service.

# Chapter 3 ThreadX APIs for ARMv8-M

11/1/2022 • 2 minutes to read

This chapter contains a description of the ARMv8-M-specific ThreadX services in alphabetic order. Their names are designed so all similar services are grouped together. In the "Return Values" section in the following descriptions, values in **BOLD** are not affected by the **TX\_DISABLE\_ERROR\_CHECKING** define used to disable API error checking; while values shown in non-bold are completely disabled.

- [tx\\_thread\\_secure\\_stack\\_allocate](#) Allocate a thread stack in secure memory.
- [tx\\_thread\\_secure\\_stack\\_free](#) Free thread stack in secure memory

## tx\_thread\_secure\_stack\_allocate

Allocate a thread stack in secure memory.

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_secure_stack_allocate(  
    TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,  
    ULONG stack_size);
```

### Description

This service allocates a stack of size `stack_size` bytes in secure memory. This function should be called for every thread that calls secure functions.

### Input Parameters

- `thread_ptr` Pointer to previously created thread.
- `stack_size` Size of secure stack.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS** (0x00) Successful request.
- **TX\_SIZE\_ERROR** (0x05) Stack size out of range.
- **TX\_THREAD\_ERROR** (0x0E) Invalid thread pointer.
- **TX\_NO\_MEMORY** (0x10) Unable to allocate memory.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR** (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.
- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED** (0xFF) The system was compiled to run in secure mode.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads

### Example

```
/* Create thread. */
tx_thread_create(&thread_0, "thread 0", thread_0_entry, 0, pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, 1, 1, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE,
TX_AUTO_START);

/* Allocate secure stack so this thread can call secure functions. */
status = tx_thread_secure_stack_allocate(&thread_0, 256);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the request was successful. */
```

## See Also

[tx\\_thread\\_secure\\_stack\\_free](#)

# tx\_thread\_secure\_stack\_free

Free a thread stack in secure memory.

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_secure_stack_free(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);
```

## Description

This service frees a thread's secure stack in secure memory. This function should be called if a thread has a secure stack and when the thread no longer needs to call secure functions or the thread is deleted.

## Input Parameters

- **thread\_ptr** Pointer to previously created thread.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS** (0x00) Successful request.
- **TX\_THREAD\_ERROR** (0x0E) Invalid thread pointer.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR** (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.
- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED** (0xFF) The system was compiled to run in secure mode.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads

## Example

```
/* Free thread's secure stack. */
status = tx_thread_secure_stack_free(&thread_0);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the request was successful. */

/* Delete thread. */
tx_thread_delete(&thread_0);
```

## See Also

[tx\\_thread\\_secure\\_stack\\_allocate](#)

# About This Guide

11/1/2022 • 2 minutes to read

This guide provides comprehensive information about Azure RTOS ThreadX SMP, the Microsoft high-performance embedded real-time kernel.

It is intended for the embedded real-time software developer. The developer should be familiar with standard real-time operating system functions and the C programming language.

## Organization

CHAPTER	OVERVIEW
Chapter 1	Provides a basic overview of ThreadX SMP and its relationship to real-time embedded development.
Chapter 2	Gives the basic steps to install and use ThreadX SMP in your application right <i>out of the box</i> .
Chapter 3	Describes in detail the functional operation of ThreadX SMP, the high-performance real-time SMP kernel.
Chapter 4	Details the application's interface to ThreadX SMP.
Chapter 5	Describes writing I/O drivers for ThreadX SMP applications.
Chapter 6	Describes the demonstration application that is supplied with every ThreadX SMP processor support package.
Appendix A	ThreadX SMP API
Appendix B	ThreadX SMP constants
Appendix C	ThreadX SMP data types
Appendix D	ASCII chart

## Guide Conventions

- *Italics* - typeface denotes book titles, emphasizes important words, and indicates variables.
- **Boldface** - typeface denotes file names, key words, and further emphasizes important words and variables.

### IMPORTANT

Information symbols draw attention to important or additional information that could affect performance or function.

#### WARNING

Warning symbols draw attention to situations in which developers should take care to avoid because they could cause fatal errors.

## ThreadX SMP Data Types

In addition to the custom ThreadX SMP control structure data types, there are a series of special data types that are used in ThreadX SMP service call interfaces. These special data types map directly to data types of the underlying C compiler. This is done to insure portability between different C compilers. The exact implementation can be found in the *tx\_port.h* file included on the distribution disk.

The following is a list of ThreadX SMP service call data types and their associated meanings:

DATA TYPE	MEANING
UINT	Basic unsigned integer. This type must support 8-bit unsigned data; however, it is mapped to the most convenient unsigned data type.
ULONG	Unsigned long type. This type must support 32-bit unsigned data.
VOID	Almost always equivalent to the compiler's void type.
CHAR	Most often a standard 8-bit character type.

Additional data types are used within the ThreadX SMP source. They are also located in the *tx\_port.h* file.

## Customer Support Center

Support email: [azure-rtos-support@microsoft.com](mailto:azure-rtos-support@microsoft.com) Web page: [azure.com/rtos](https://azure.com/rtos)

### Latest Product Information

Visit the [azure.com/rtos](https://azure.com/rtos) web site and select the "Support" menu option to find the latest online support information, including information about the latest ThreadX SMP product releases.

### What We Need From You

Please supply us with the following information in an email message so we can more efficiently resolve your support request:

1. A detailed description of the problem, including frequency of occurrence and whether it can be reliably reproduced.
2. A detailed description of any changes to the application and/or ThreadX SMP that preceded the problem.
3. The contents of the *\_tx\_version\_id* string found in the *tx\_port.h* file of your distribution. This string will provide us valuable information regarding your run-time environment.
4. The contents in RAM of the *\_tx\_build\_options* ULONG variable. This variable will give us information on how your ThreadX SMP library was built.

### Where to Send Comments About This Guide

Email any comments and suggestions to the Customer Support Center at [azure-rtos-support@microsoft.com](mailto:azure-rtos-support@microsoft.com). Enter "ThreadX SMP User Guide" in the subject line.

# Chapter 1: Introduction to Azure RTOS ThreadX SMP

11/1/2022 • 9 minutes to read

Azure RTOS ThreadX SMP is a high-performance real-time SMP kernel designed specifically for embedded applications. This chapter contains an introduction to the product and a description of its applications and benefits.

## ThreadX SMP Unique Features

ThreadX SMP brings Symmetric Multi-Processing (SMP) technology to embedded applications. ThreadX SMP application threads (of varying priority) that are "READY" to run are dynamically allocated to available processor cores during scheduling. This results in true SMP processing, including automatic load balancing of application thread execution across all available processor cores.

Unlike other real-time kernels, ThreadX SMP is designed to be versatile—easily scaling among small micro-controller-based applications through those that use powerful CISC, RISC, and DSP processors.

ThreadX SMP is scalable based on its underlying architecture. Because ThreadX SMP services are implemented as a C library, only those services actually used by the application are brought into the run-time image. Hence, the actual size of ThreadX SMP is completely determined by the application. For most applications, the instruction image of ThreadX SMP ranges between 5 KBytes and 20 KBytes in size.

### **picokernel™ Architecture**

Instead of layering kernel functions on top of each other like traditional *microkernel* architectures, ThreadX SMP services plug directly into its core. This results in the fastest possible context switching and service call performance. We call this nonlayering design a *picokernel* architecture.

### **ANSI C Source Code**

ThreadX SMP is written primarily in ANSI C. A small amount of assembly language is needed to tailor the kernel to the underlying target processor. This design makes it possible to port ThreadX SMP to a new processor family in a very short time—usually within weeks!

### **Advanced Technology**

The following are highlights of the ThreadX SMP advanced technology:

- Simple *picokernel* architecture
- Automatic load balancing
- Per-thread processor exclusion
- Automatic scaling (small footprint)
- Deterministic processing
- Fast real-time performance
- Preemptive and cooperative scheduling
- Flexible thread priority support (32-1024)
- Dynamic system object creation
- Unlimited number of system objects
- Optimized interrupt handling
- Preemption-threshold™

- Priority inheritance
- Event-chaining™
- Fast software timers
- Run-time memory management
- Run-time performance monitoring
- Run-time stack analysis
- Built-in system trace
- Vast processor support
- Vast development tool support
- Completely endian neutral

### Not A Black Box

Most distributions of ThreadX SMP include the complete C source code as well as the processorspecific assembly language. This eliminates the “black-box” problems that occur with many commercial kernels. With ThreadX SMP, application developers can see exactly what the kernel is doing—there are no mysteries!

The source code also allows for application specific modifications. Although not recommended, it is certainly beneficial to have the ability to modify the kernel if it is absolutely required.

These features are especially comforting to developers accustomed to working with their own *inhouse kernels*. They expect to have source code and the ability to modify the kernel. ThreadX SMP is the ultimate kernel for such developers.

### The RTOS Standard

Because of its versatility, high-performance *picokernel* architecture, advanced technology, and demonstrated portability, ThreadX SMP is deployed in more than two-billion devices today. This effectively makes ThreadX SMP the RTOS standard for deeply embedded applications.

## Safety Certifications

### TÜV Certification

ThreadX SMP has been certified by SGS-TÜV Saar for use in safety-critical systems, according to IEC-61508 SIL 4. The certification confirms that ThreadX SMP can be used in the development of safety-related software for the highest safety integrity levels of IEC-61508 for the “Functional Safety of electrical, electronic, and programmable electronic safety-related systems.” SGS-TUV Saar, formed through a joint venture of Germany’s SGS-Group and TUV Saarland, has become the leading accredited, independent company for testing, auditing, verifying, and certifying embedded software for safety-related systems worldwide.



- IEC 61508 up to SIL 4

#### IMPORTANT

Please contact [azure-rtos-support@microsoft.com](mailto:azure-rtos-support@microsoft.com) for more information on which version(s) of ThreadX SMP have been certified by TÜV or for the availability of test reports, certificates, and associated documentation.

### MISRA C Compliant



MISRA C is a set of programming guidelines for critical systems using the C programming language. The original MISRA C guidelines were primarily targeted toward automotive applications; however, MISRA C is now widely recognized as being applicable to any safety critical application. ThreadX SMP is compliant with all “required” and “mandatory” rules of MISRA-C:2004 and MISRA C:2012. ThreadX SMP is also compliant with all but three “advisory” rules. Refer to the *ThreadX\_MISRA\_Compliance.pdf* document for more details.

### UL Certification

ThreadX SMP has been certified by UL for compliance with UL 60730-1 Annex H, CSA E607301 Annex H, IEC 60730-1 Annex H, UL 60335-1 Annex R, IEC 60335-1 Annex R, and UL 1998 safety standards for software in programmable components. Along with IEC/UL 60730-1, which has requirements for “Controls Using Software” in its Annex H, the IEC 60335-1 standard describes the requirements for “Programmable Electronic Circuits” in its Annex R. IEC 60730 Annex H and IEC 60335-1 Annex R address the safety of MCU hardware and software used in appliances such as washing machines, dishwashers, dryers, refrigerators, freezers, and ovens.



*UL/IEC 60730, UL/IEC 60335, UL 1998*

#### IMPORTANT

Please contact [azure-rtos-support@microsoft.com](mailto:azure-rtos-support@microsoft.com) for more information on which version(s) of ThreadX SMP have been certified by TÜV or for the availability of test reports, certificates, and associated documentation.

## Embedded Applications

Embedded applications execute on microprocessors buried within products such as wireless communication devices, automobile engines, laser printers, medical devices, etc. Another distinction of embedded applications is that their software and hardware have a dedicated purpose.

### Real-time Software

When time constraints are imposed on the application software, it is called the *real-time* software. Basically, software that must perform its processing within an exact period of time is called *real-time* software. Embedded applications are almost always real-time because of their inherent interaction with external events.

### Multitasking

As mentioned, embedded applications have a dedicated purpose. To fulfill this purpose, the software must perform a variety of *tasks*. A task is a semi-independent portion of the application that carries out a specific duty. It is also the case that some tasks are more important than others. One of the major difficulties in an embedded application is the allocation of the processor between the various application tasks. This allocation of processing between competing tasks is the primary purpose of ThreadX SMP.

### Tasks vs. Threads

Another distinction about tasks must be made. The term task is used in a variety of ways. It sometimes means a separately loadable program. In other instances, it may refer to an internal program segment.

In contemporary operating system discussion, there are two terms that more or less replace the use of task: *process* and *thread*. A *process* is a completely independent program that has its own address space, while a *thread* is a semi-independent program segment that executes within a process. Threads share the same process address space. The overhead associated with thread management is minimal.

Most embedded applications cannot afford the overhead (both memory and performance) associated with a

full-blown process-oriented operating system. In addition, smaller microprocessors don't have the hardware architecture to support a true process-oriented operating system. For these reasons, ThreadX SMP implements a thread model, which is both extremely efficient and practical for most real-time embedded applications.

To avoid confusion, ThreadX SMP does not use the term *task*. Instead, the more descriptive and contemporary name *thread* is used.

## ThreadX SMP Benefits

Using ThreadX SMP provides many benefits to embedded applications. Of course, the primary benefit rests in how embedded application threads are allocated processing time.

### Automatic Load Balancing

ThreadX SMP provides automatic load balancing (thread execution across available cores), which makes utilizing multicore processors as easy as possible.

### Improved Responsiveness

Prior to real-time kernels like ThreadX SMP, most embedded applications allocated processing time with a simple control loop, usually from within the C *main* function. This approach is still used in very small or simple applications. However, in large or complex applications, it is not practical because the response time to any event is a function of the worstcase processing time of one pass through the control loop.

Making matters worse, the timing characteristics of the application change whenever modifications are made to the control loop. This makes the application inherently unstable and difficult to maintain and improve on.

ThreadX SMP provides fast and deterministic response times to important external events. ThreadX SMP accomplishes this through its preemptive, priority-based scheduling algorithm, which allows a higher-priority thread to preempt an executing lower-priority thread. As a result, the worst-case response time approaches the time required to perform a context switch. This is not only deterministic, but it is also extremely fast.

### Software Maintenance

The ThreadX SMP kernel enables application developers to concentrate on specific requirements of their application threads without having to worry about changing the timing of other areas of the application. This feature also makes it much easier to repair or enhance an application that utilizes ThreadX SMP.

### Increased Throughput

A possible work-around to the control loop response time problem is to add more polling. This improves the responsiveness, but it still doesn't guarantee a constant worst-case response time and does nothing to enhance future modification of the application. Also, the processor is now performing even more unnecessary processing because of the extra polling. All of this unnecessary processing reduces the overall throughput of the system.

An interesting point regarding overhead is that many developers assume that multithreaded environments like ThreadX SMP increase overhead and have a negative impact on total system throughput. But in some cases, multithreading actually reduces overhead by eliminating all of the redundant polling that occurs in control loop environments. The overhead associated with multithreaded kernels is typically a function of the time required for context switching. If the context switch time is less than the polling process, ThreadX SMP provides a solution with the potential of less overhead and more throughput. This makes ThreadX SMP an obvious choice for applications that have any degree of complexity or size.

### Processor Isolation

ThreadX SMP provides a robust processor-independent interface between the application and the underlying processor. This allows developers to concentrate on the application rather than spending a significant amount of time learning hardware details.

### Dividing the Application

In control loop-based applications, each developer must have an intimate knowledge of the entire application's run-time behavior and requirements. This is because the processor allocation logic is dispersed throughout the entire application. As an application increases in size or complexity, it becomes impossible for all developers to remember the precise processing requirements of the entire application.

ThreadX SMP frees each developer from the worries associated with processor allocation and allows them to concentrate on their specific piece of the embedded application. In addition, ThreadX SMP forces the application to be divided into clearly defined threads. By itself, this division of the application into threads makes development much simpler.

### **Ease of Use**

ThreadX SMP is designed with the application developer in mind. The ThreadX SMP architecture and service call interface are designed to be easily understood. As a result, ThreadX SMP developers can quickly use its advanced features.

### **Improve Time-to-market**

All of the benefits of ThreadX SMP accelerate the software development process. ThreadX SMP takes care of most processor issues and the most common safety certifications, thereby removing this effort from the development schedule. All of this results in a faster time to market!

### **Protecting the Software Investment**

Because of its architecture, ThreadX SMP is easily ported to new processor and/or development tool environments. This, coupled with the fact that ThreadX SMP insulates applications from details of the underlying processors, makes ThreadX SMP applications highly portable. As a result, the application's migration path is guaranteed, and the original development investment is protected.

# Chapter 2 - Installation & Use of Azure RTOS ThreadX SMP

11/1/2022 • 11 minutes to read

This chapter contains a description of various issues related to installation, setup, and usage of the highperformance Azure RTOS ThreadX SMP kernel.

## Host Considerations

Embedded software is usually developed on Windows or Linux (Unix) host computers. After the application is compiled, linked, and located on the host, it is downloaded to the target hardware for execution.

Usually the target download is done from within the development tool debugger. After download, the debugger is responsible for providing target execution control (go, halt, breakpoint, etc.) as well as access to memory and processor registers.

Most development tool debuggers communicate with the target hardware via on-chip debug (OCD) connections such as JTAG (IEEE 1149.1) and Background Debug Mode (BDM). Debuggers also communicate with target hardware through In-Circuit Emulation (ICE) connections. Both OCD and ICE connections provide robust solutions with minimal intrusion on the target resident software.

As for resources used on the host, the source code for ThreadX SMP is delivered in ASCII format and requires approximately 1 MBytes of space on the host computer's hard disk.

### IMPORTANT

Please review the supplied `readme_threadx.txt` file for additional host system considerations and options.

## Target Considerations

ThreadX SMP requires between 2 KBytes and 20 KBytes of Read Only Memory (ROM) on the target. Another 1 to 2 KBytes of the target's Random Access Memory (RAM) are required for the ThreadX SMP system stack and other global data structures.

For timer-related functions like service call time-outs, time-slicing, and application timers to function, the underlying target hardware must provide a periodic interrupt source. If the processor has this capability, it is utilized by ThreadX SMP. Otherwise, if the target processor does not have the ability to generate a periodic interrupt, the user's hardware must provide it. Setup and configuration of the timer interrupt is typically located in the `tx_initialize_low_level` assembly file in the ThreadX SMP distribution.

### IMPORTANT

ThreadX SMP is still functional even if no periodic timer interrupt source is available. However, none of the timer-related services are functional. Please review the supplied `readme_threadx.txt` file for any additional host system considerations and/or options.

## Product Distribution

The exact content of the distribution disk depends on the target processor, development tools, and the ThreadX

SMP package purchased. However, the following is a list of several important files that are common to most product distributions:

### **ThreadX\_Express\_Startup.pdf**

This PDF provides a simple, four-step procedure to get ThreadX SMP running on a specific target processor/board and specific development tools.

### **readme\_threadx.txt**

Text file containing specific information about the ThreadX SMP port, including information about the target processor and the development tools.

TOOL	DESCRIPTION
<b>tx_api.h</b>	C header file containing all system equates, data structures, and service prototypes.
<b>tx_port.h</b>	C header file containing all development-tool and targetspecific data definitions and structures.
<b>demo_threadx.c</b>	C file containing a small demo application.
<b>tx.a (or tx.lib)</b>	Binary version of the ThreadX SMP C library that is distributed with the <i>standard</i> package.

#### **IMPORTANT**

All file names are in lower-case. This naming convention makes it easier to convert the commands to Linux (Unix) development platforms.

## ThreadX SMP Installation

Installation of ThreadX SMP is straightforward. Refer to the *ThreadX\_Express\_Startup.pdf* file and the *readme\_threadx.txt* file for specific information on installing ThreadX SMP for your specific environment.

#### **IMPORTANT**

Be sure to back up the ThreadX SMP distribution disk and store it in a safe location.

#### **IMPORTANT**

Application software needs access to the ThreadX SMP library file (usually **tx.a** or **tx.lib**) and the C include files **tx\_api.h** and **tx\_port.h**. This is accomplished either by setting the appropriate path for the development tools or by copying these files into the application development area.

## Using ThreadX SMP

Using ThreadX SMP is easy. Basically, the application code must include **tx\_api.h** during compilation and link with the ThreadX SMP run-time library **tx.a** (or **tx.lib**).

There are four steps required to build a ThreadX SMP application:

Include the **tx\_api.h** file in all application files that use ThreadX SMP services or data structures.

Create the standard C *main* function. This function must eventually call *tx\_kernel\_enter* to start ThreadX SMP. Application-specific initialization that does not involve ThreadX SMP may be added prior to entering the kernel.

#### IMPORTANT

The ThreadX SMP entry function *tx\_kernel\_enter* does not return. So be sure not to place any processing or function calls after it.

Create the *tx\_application\_define* function. This is where the initial system resources are created. Examples of system resources include threads, queues, memory pools, event flags groups, mutexes, and semaphores.

Compile application source and link with the ThreadX SMP run-time library *tx.lib*. The resulting image can be downloaded to the target and executed!

## Small Example System

The small example system in Figure 1 on page 28 shows the creation of a single thread with a priority of 3. The thread executes, increments a counter, then sleeps for one clock tick. This process continues forever.

```
#include          "tx_api.h"

unsigned long      my_thread_counter = 0;
TX_THREAD         my_thread;

main( )
{
    /* Enter the ThreadX SMP kernel. */
    tx_kernel_enter( );
}

void tx_application_define(void *first_unused_memory)
{
    /* Create my_thread! */
    tx_thread_create(&my_thread, "My Thread",
        my_thread_entry, 0x1234, first_unused_memory, 1024,
        3, 3, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE, TX_AUTO_START);
}

void my_thread_entry(ULONG thread_input)
{
    /* Enter into a forever loop. */
    while(1)
    {
        /* Increment thread counter. */
        my_thread_counter++;

        /* Sleep for 1 tick. */
        tx_thread_sleep(1);
    }
}
```

FIGURE 1. Template for Application Development

Although this is a simple example, it provides a good template for real application development. Once again, please see the *readme\_threadx.txt* file for additional details.

## Troubleshooting

Each ThreadX SMP port is delivered with a demonstration application. It is always a good idea to first get the demonstration system running—either on actual target hardware or simulated environment.

#### **IMPORTANT**

See the `readme_threadx.txt` file supplied with the distribution for more specific details regarding the demonstration system.

If the demonstration system does not execute properly, the following are some troubleshooting tips:

- Determine how much of the demonstration is run-ning.
- Increase stack sizes (this is more important in actual application code than it is for the demonstration).
- Rebuild the ThreadX SMP library with `TX_ENABLE_STACK_CHECKING` defined. This will enable the built-in ThreadX SMP stack checking.
- Temporarily bypass any recent changes to see if the problem disappears or changes. Such information should prove useful to support engineers.

Follow the procedures outlined in “What We Need From You” on page 12 to send the information gathered from the troubleshooting steps.

## Configuration Options

There are several configuration options when building the ThreadX SMP library and the application using ThreadX SMP. The options below can be defined in the application source, on the command line, or within the `tx_user.h` include file.

#### **IMPORTANT**

Options defined in `tx_user.h` are applied only if the application and ThreadX SMP library are built with `TX_INCLUDE_USER_DEFINE_FILE` defined.

### **Smallest Configuration**

For the smallest code size, the following ThreadX SMP configuration options should be considered (in absence of all other options):

- `TX_DISABLE_ERROR_CHECKING`
- `TX_DISABLE_PREEMPTION_THRESHOLD`
- `TX_DISABLE_NOTIFY_CALLBACKS`
- `TX_DISABLE_REDUNDANT_CLEARING`
- `TX_DISABLE_STACK_FILLING`
- `TX_NOT_INTERRUPTABLE`
- `TX_TIMER_PROCESS_IN_ISR`

### **Fastest Configuration**

For the fastest execution, the same configuration options used for the Smallest Configuration previously, but with this option also considered:

- `TX_REACTIVATE_INLINE`

Review the `readme_threadx.txt` file for additional options for your specific version of ThreadX SMP. Detailed configuration options are described beginning on page 28.

## Global Time Source

For other Azure RTOS products (FileX, NetX, GUIX, USBX, etc.), ThreadX SMP defines the number of ThreadX SMP timer ticks that represents one second. Others derive their time requirements based on this constant. By default, the value is 100, assuming a 10ms periodic interrupt. The user may override this value by defining `TX_TIMER_TICKS_PER_SECOND` with the desired value in *tx\_port.h* or within the IDE or command line.

## Detailed Configuration Options

- **TX\_BLOCK\_POOL\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO** : When defined, enables the gathering of performance information on block pools. By default, this option is not defined.
- **TX\_BYTE\_POOL\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO** : When defined, enables the gathering of performance information on byte pools. By default, this option is not defined.
- **TX\_DISABLE\_ERROR\_CHECKING**: Bypasses basic service call error checking. When defined in the application source, all basic parameter error checking is disabled. This may improve performance by as much as 30% and may also reduce the image size.

### NOTE

*It is only safe to disable error checking if the application can absolutely guarantee all input parameters are always valid under all circumstances, including input parameters derived from external input. If invalid input is supplied to the API with error checking disabled, the resulting behavior is undefined and could result in memory corruption or system crash.*

### NOTE

*ThreadX SMP API return values not affected by disabling error checking are listed in bold in the "Return Values" section of each API description in Chapter 4. The nonbold return values are void if error checking is disabled by using the `TX_DISABLE_ERROR_CHECKING` option.*

- **TX\_DISABLE\_NOTIFY\_CALLBACKS** : When defined, disables the notify callbacks for various ThreadX SMP objects. Using this option slightly reduces code size and improves performance. By default, this option is not defined.
- **TX\_DISABLE\_PREEMPTION\_THRESHOLD** : When defined, disables the preemption-threshold feature and slightly reduces code size and improves performance. Of course, the preemptionthreshold capabilities are no longer available. By default, this option is not defined.
- **TX\_DISABLE\_REDUNDANT\_CLEARING** : When defined, removes the logic for initializing ThreadX SMP global C data structures to zero. This should only be used if the compiler's initialization code sets all uninitialized C global data to zero. Using this option slightly reduces code size and improves performance during initialization. By default, this option is not defined.
- **TX\_DISABLE\_STACK\_FILLING** : When defined, disables placing the 0xEF value in each byte of each thread's stack when created. By default, this option is not defined.
- **TX\_ENABLE\_EVENT\_TRACE** : When defined, ThreadX SMP enables the event gathering code for creating a TraceX trace buffer. See the TraceX User Guide for more details.
- **TX\_ENABLE\_STACK\_CHECKING** : When defined, enables ThreadX SMP run-time stack checking, which includes analysis of how much stack has been used and examination of data pattern "fences" before and after the stack area. If a stack error is detected, the registered application stack error handler is called. This option does result in slightly increased overhead and code size. Review the *tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify* API for more information. By default, this option is not defined.
- **TX\_EVENT\_FLAGS\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO** : When defined, enables the gathering of performance information on event flags groups. By default, this option is not defined.



- **TX\_INLINE\_THREAD\_RESUME\_SUSPEND** : When defined, ThreadX SMP improves the *tx\_thread\_resume* and *tx\_thread\_suspend* API calls via in-line code. This increases code size but enhances performance of these two API calls.
- **TX\_MAX\_PRIORITIES** : Defines the priority levels for ThreadX SMP. Legal values range from 32 through 1024 (inclusive) and must be evenly divisible by 32. Increasing the number of priority levels supported increases the RAM usage by 128 bytes for every group of 32 priorities. However, there is only a negligible effect on performance. By default, this value is set to 32 priority levels.
- **TX\_MINIMUM\_STACK** : Defines the minimum stack size (in bytes). It is used for error checking when threads are created. The default value is port-specific and is found in *tx\_port.h*.
- **TX\_MISRA\_ENABLE** : When defined, ThreadX SMP utilizes MISRA C compliant conventions. Refer to the [ThreadX MISRA Compliance](#) for details.
- **TX\_MUTEX\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO** : When defined, enables the gathering of performance information on mutexes. By default, this option is not defined.
- **TX\_NO\_TIMER** : When defined, the ThreadX SMP timer logic is completely disabled. This is useful in cases where the ThreadX SMP timer features (thread sleep, API timeouts, time-slicing, and application timers) are not utilized.
- **TX\_NOT\_INTERRUPTABLE** : When defined, ThreadX SMP does not attempt to minimize interrupt lockout time. This results in faster execution but does slightly increase interrupt lockout time.
- **TX\_QUEUE\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO** : When defined, enables the gathering of performance information on queues. By default, this option is not defined.
- **TX\_REACTIVATE\_INLINE** : When defined, performs reactivation of ThreadX SMP timers in-line instead of using a function call. This improves performance but slightly increases code size. By default, this option is not defined.
- **TX\_SEMAPHORE\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO** : When defined, enables the gathering of performance information on semaphores. By default, this option is not defined.
- **TX\_THREAD\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO** : When defined, enables the gathering of performance information on threads. By default, this option is not defined.
- **TX\_THREAD\_SMP\_CORE\_MASK** : Defines bit map mask for CORE exclusion. For example, a 4-core environment has a value of 0xF for this define.
- **TX\_THREAD\_SMP\_DEBUG\_ENABLE** : When defined, ThreadX SMP debug information is saved in a circular buffer.
- **TX\_THREAD\_SMP\_DYNAMIC\_CORE\_MAX** : When defined, enables the dynamic maximum number of cores that can be adjusted at run-time.
- **TX\_THREAD\_SMP\_EQUAL\_PRIORITY** : When defined, ThreadX SMP only schedules equal priority threads in parallel. This should be defined prior to building the ThreadX SMP library.
- **TX\_THREAD\_SMP\_INTER\_CORE\_INTERRUPT** : When defined, ThreadX SMP generates inter-core interrupts.
- **TX\_THREAD\_SMP\_MAX\_CORES** : Defines the maximum number of cores.
- **TX\_THREAD\_SMP\_ONLY\_CORE\_0\_DEFAULT** : When defined, ThreadX SMP defaults all threads and timers to execute only on core 0 by default. The application may override this by calling the core exclude APIs. This should be defined prior to building the ThreadX SMP library.
- **TX\_THREAD\_SMP\_WAKEUP\_LOGIC** : When defined, application macro to wakeup core "i" is invoked.

This should be defined prior to inclusion of *tx\_port.h*.

- **TX\_THREAD\_SMP\_WAKEUP(i)** : Defines an application macro to wakeup core "i". This should be defined prior to inclusion of *tx\_port.h*.
- **TX\_TIMER\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO** : When defined, enables the gathering of performance information on timers. By default, this option is not defined.
- **TX\_TIMER\_PROCESS\_IN\_ISR** : When defined, eliminates the internal system timer thread for ThreadX SMP. This results in improved performance on timer events and smaller RAM requirements because the timer stack and control block are no longer needed. However, using this option moves all the timer expiration processing to the timer ISR level. By default, this option is not defined.

#### NOTE

That services allowed from timers may not be allowed from ISRs and thus might not be allowed when using this option.

- **TX\_TIMER\_THREAD\_PRIORITY** : Defines the priority of the internal ThreadX SMP system timer thread. The default value is priority 0—the highest priority in ThreadX SMP. The default value is defined in *tx\_port.h*.
- **TX\_TIMER\_THREAD\_STACK\_SIZE** : Defines the stack size (in bytes) of the internal ThreadX SMP system timer thread. This thread processes all thread sleep requests as well as all service call timeouts. In addition, all application timer callback routines are invoked from this context. The default value is port-specific and is found in *tx\_port.h*.

## ThreadX SMP Version ID

The ThreadX SMP version ID can be found in the *readme\_threadx.txt* file. This file also contains a version history of the corresponding port. Application software can obtain the ThreadX SMP version by examining the global string *\_tx\_version\_id*.

# Chapter 3 - Functional Components of Azure RTOS ThreadX SMP

11/1/2022 • 57 minutes to read

This chapter contains a description of the highperformance Azure RTOS ThreadX SMP kernel from a functional perspective. Each functional component is presented in an easy-to-understand manner.

## Execution Overview

There are four types of program execution within a ThreadX SMP application: Initialization, Thread Execution, Interrupt Service Routines (ISRs), and Application Timers.

Figure 1 on page 45 shows each different type of program execution. More detailed information about each of these types is found in subsequent sections of this chapter.

### Initialization

As the name implies, this is the first type of program execution in a ThreadX SMP application. Initialization includes all program execution between processor reset and the entry point of the *thread scheduling loop*.

#### IMPORTANT

Initialization is performed by or initiated by core 0, which is the default running core after reset.

### Thread Execution

After initialization is complete, each core running ThreadX SMP enters its thread scheduling loop. The scheduling loop looks for an application thread ready for execution on that core. When a ready thread is found, ThreadX SMP transfers control to it. After the thread is finished (or another higher-priority thread becomes ready), execution transfers back to the thread scheduling loop to find the next highest priority ready thread on each core.

This process of continually executing and scheduling threads is the most common type of program execution in ThreadX SMP applications.

## Execution Overview

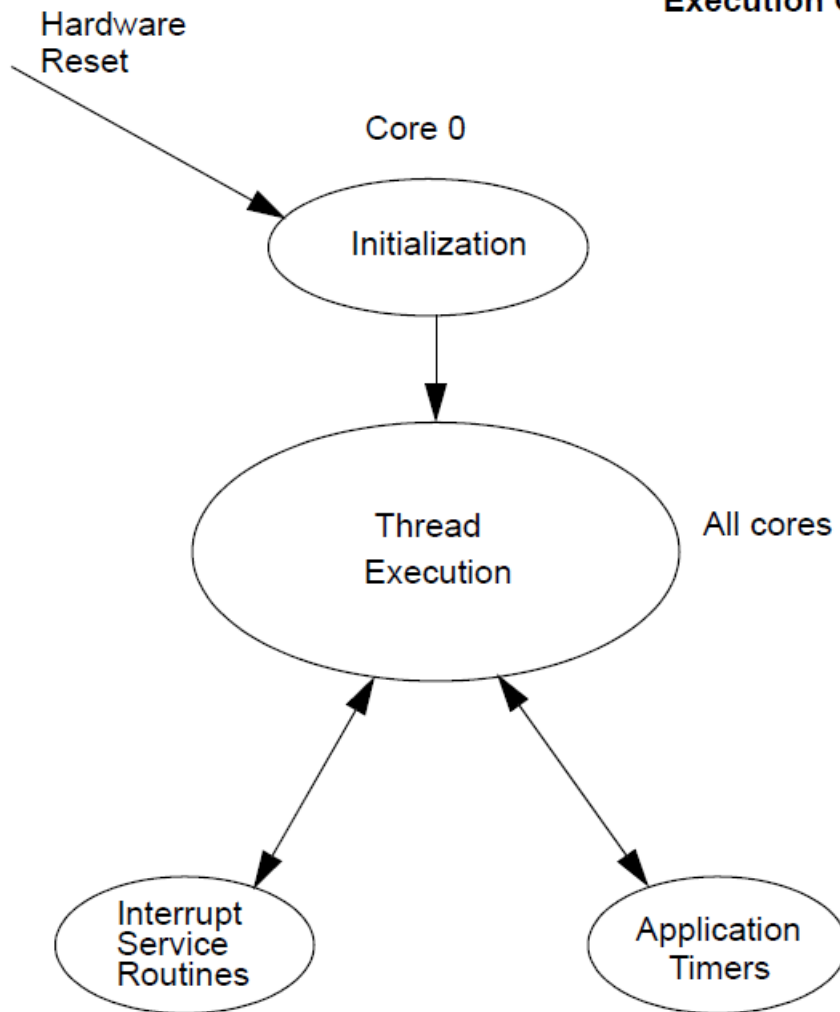


FIGURE 1. Types of Program Execution

### Interrupt Service Routines (ISR)

Interrupts are the cornerstone of real-time systems. Without interrupts it would be extremely difficult to respond to changes in the external world in a timely manner. On detection of an interrupt, the processor saves key information about the current program execution (usually on the stack), then transfers control to a predefined program area. This predefined program area is commonly called an Interrupt Service Routine.

In most cases, interrupts occur during thread execution (or in the thread scheduling loop). However, interrupts may also occur inside of an executing ISR or an Application Timer.

All cores are allowed to process interrupts. The mapping of interrupts to cores is under the direct control of the application. The ThreadX SMP timer interrupt is by default assigned to core 0 for processing. Please see the code in *tx\_timer\_interrupt.S* for implementation of this assignment.

### Application Timers

Application Timers are similar to ISRs, except the hardware implementation (usually a single periodic hardware interrupt is used) is hidden from the application. Such timers are used by applications to perform time-outs, periodics, and/or watchdog services. Just like ISRs, Application Timers most often interrupt thread execution. Unlike ISRs, however, Application Timers cannot interrupt each other.

#### NOTE

That like threads, application timers can be excluded from execution on any core.

## Memory Usage

ThreadX SMP resides along with the application program. As a result, the static memory (or fixed memory) usage of ThreadX SMP is determined by the development tools; e.g., the compiler, linker, and locator. Dynamic memory (or run-time memory) usage is under direct control of the application.

#### NOTE

All the memory accessed by ThreadX SMP must be cache coherent and accessible from all cores executing ThreadX SMP.

### Static Memory Usage

Most of the development tools divide the application program image into five basic areas: *instruction*, *constant*, *initialized data*, *uninitialized data*, and *system stack*. Figure 2 on page 47 shows an example of these memory areas.

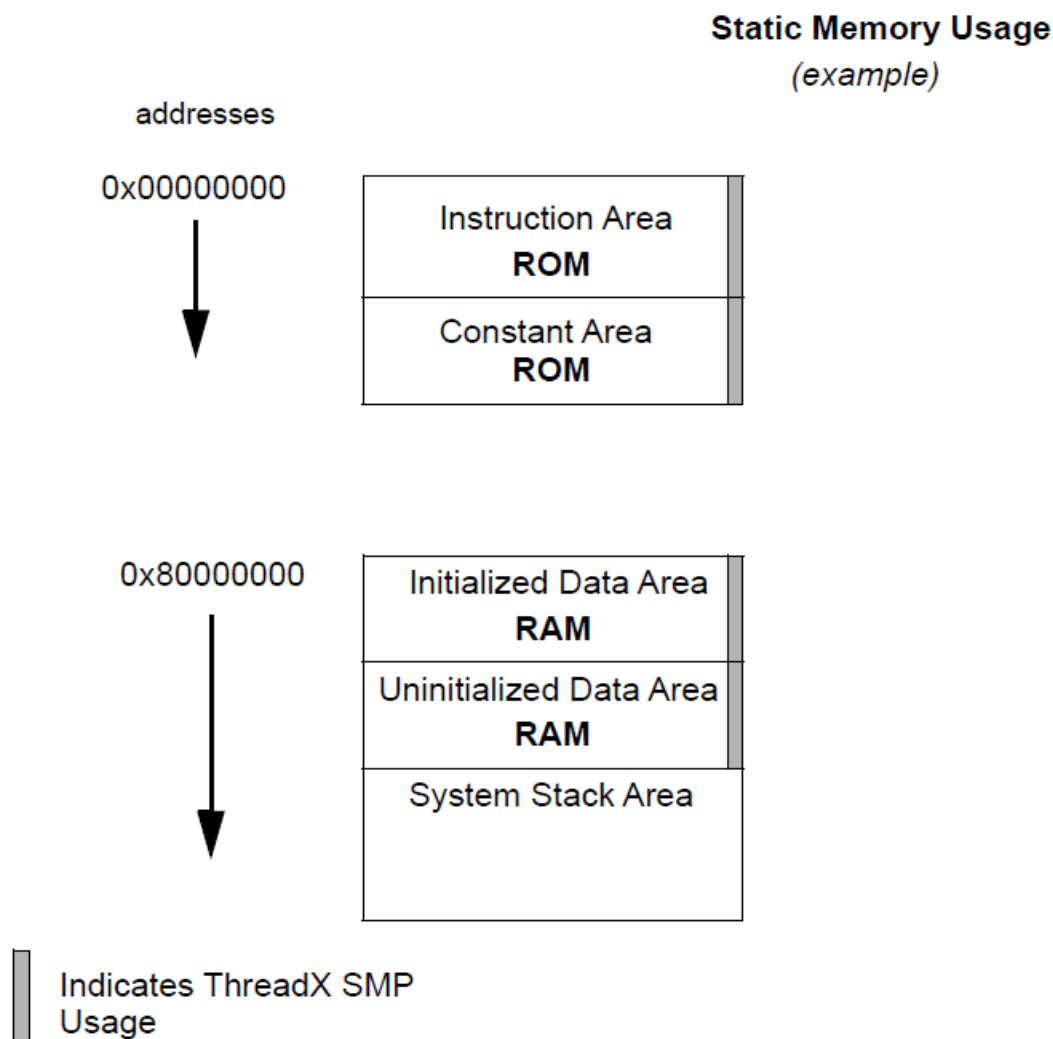


FIGURE 2. Memory Area Example

It is important to understand that this is only an example. The actual static memory layout is specific to the processor, development tools, and the underlying hardware.

The instruction area contains all of the program's processor instructions. This area is typically the largest and is often located in ROM.

The constant area contains various compiled constants, including strings defined or referenced within the program. In addition, this area contains the "initial copy" of the initialized data area. During the compiler's initialization process, this portion of the constant area is used to set up the initialized data area in RAM. The constant area usually follows the instruction area and is often located in ROM.

The initialized data and uninitialized data areas contain all of the global and static variables. These areas are always located in RAM.

The system stack is generally set up immediately following the initialized and uninitialized data areas. The system stack is used by the compiler during initialization, then by ThreadX SMP during initialization and, subsequently, in ISR processing.

### Dynamic Memory Usage

As mentioned before, dynamic memory usage is under direct control of the application. Control blocks and memory areas associated with stacks, queues, and memory pools can be placed anywhere in the target's memory space. This is an important feature because it facilitates easy utilization of different types of physical memory.

For example, suppose a target hardware environment has both fast memory and slow memory. If the application needs extra performance for a high-priority thread, its control block (TX\_THREAD) and stack can be placed in the fast memory area, which may greatly enhance its performance.

## Initialization

Understanding the initialization process is important. The initial hardware environment is set up here. In addition, this is where the application is given its initial personality.

### IMPORTANT

ThreadX SMP attempts to utilize (whenever possible) the complete development tool's initialization process. This makes it easier to upgrade to new versions of the development tools in the future.

### System Reset Vector

All microprocessors have reset logic. When a reset occurs (either hardware or software), the address of the application's entry point is retrieved from a specific memory location. After the entry point is retrieved, the processor transfers control to that location.

The application entry point is quite often written in the native assembly language and is usually supplied by the development tools (at least in template form). In some cases, a special version of the entry program is supplied with ThreadX SMP.

### Development Tool Initialization

After the low-level initialization is complete, control transfers to the development tool's high-level initialization. This is usually the place where initialized global and static C variables are set up. Remember their initial values are retrieved from the constant area. Exact initialization processing is development tool specific.

### main Function

When the development tool initialization is complete, control transfers to the user-supplied *main* function. At this point, the application controls what happens next. For most applications, the main function simply calls *tx\_kernel\_enter*, which is the entry into ThreadX SMP. However, applications can perform preliminary processing (usually for hardware initialization) prior to entering ThreadX SMP.

#### IMPORTANT

The call to `tx_kernel_enter` does not return, so do not place any processing after it!

### **tx\_kernel\_enter**

The entry function coordinates initialization of various internal ThreadX SMP data structures and then calls the application's definition function `tx_application_define`.

When `tx_application_define` returns, control is transferred to the thread scheduling loop. This marks the end of initialization!

### **Application Definition Function**

The `tx_application_define` function defines all of the initial application threads, queues, semaphores, mutexes, event flags, memory pools, and timers. It is also possible to create and delete system resources from threads during the normal operation of the application. However, all initial application resources are defined here.

The `tx_application_define` function has a single input parameter and it is certainly worth mentioning. The *first-available* RAM address is the sole input parameter to this function. It is typically used as a starting point for initial run-time memory allocations of thread stacks, queues, and memory pools.

#### IMPORTANT

After initialization is complete, only an executing thread can create and delete system resources—including other threads. Therefore, at least one thread must be created during initialization.

### **Interrupts**

Interrupts are left disabled during the entire initialization process. If the application somehow enables interrupts, unpredictable behavior may occur. Figure 3 on page 52 shows the entire initialization process, from system reset through application-specific initialization.

## **Thread Execution**

Scheduling and executing application threads is the most important activity of ThreadX SMP. A thread is typically defined as a semi-independent program segment with a dedicated purpose. The combined processing of all threads makes an application.

Threads are created dynamically by calling `tx_thread_create` during initialization or during thread execution. Threads are created in either a *ready* or *suspended* state.

## SMP Initialization Process

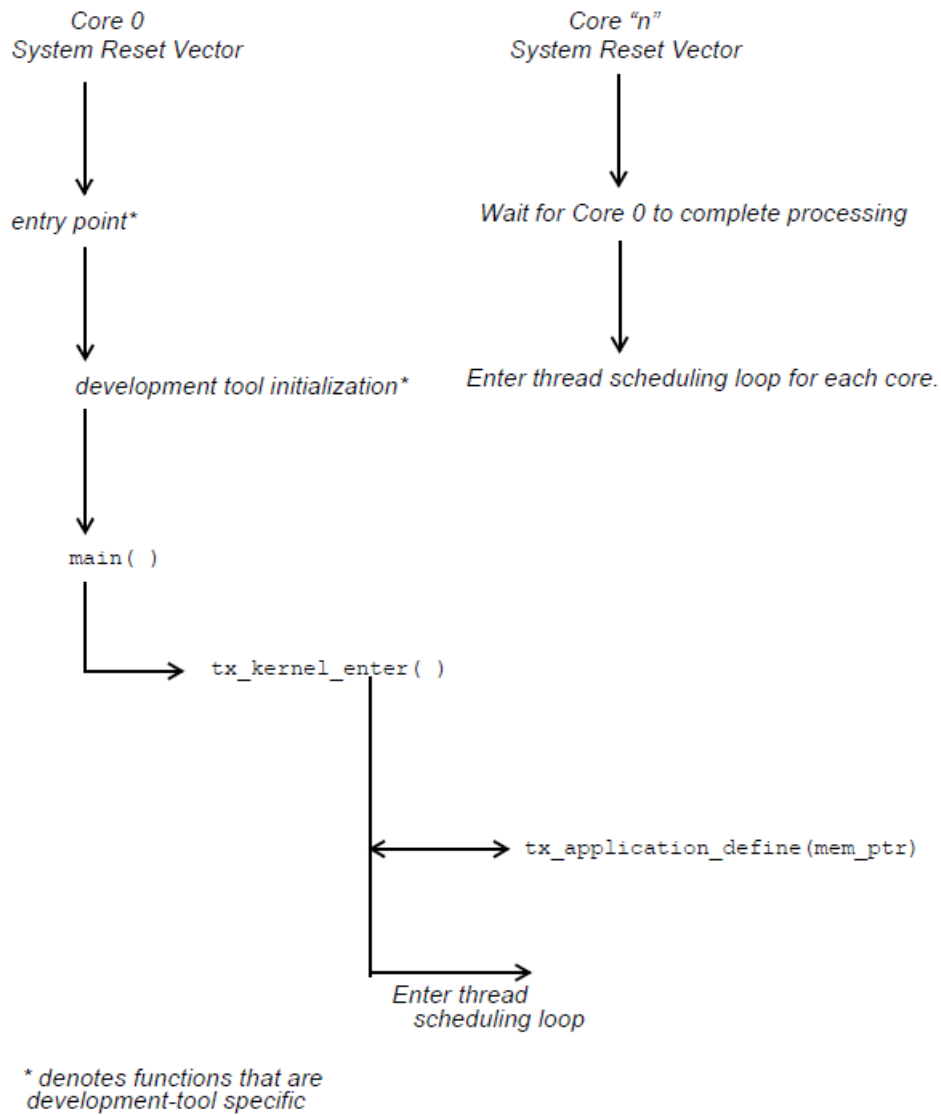


FIGURE 3. SMP Initialization Process

### Thread Execution States

Understanding the different processing states of threads is a key ingredient to understanding the entire multithreaded environment. In ThreadX SMP, there are five distinct thread states: *ready*, *suspended*, *executing*, *terminated*, and *completed*. Figure 4 shows the thread state transition diagram for ThreadX SMP.



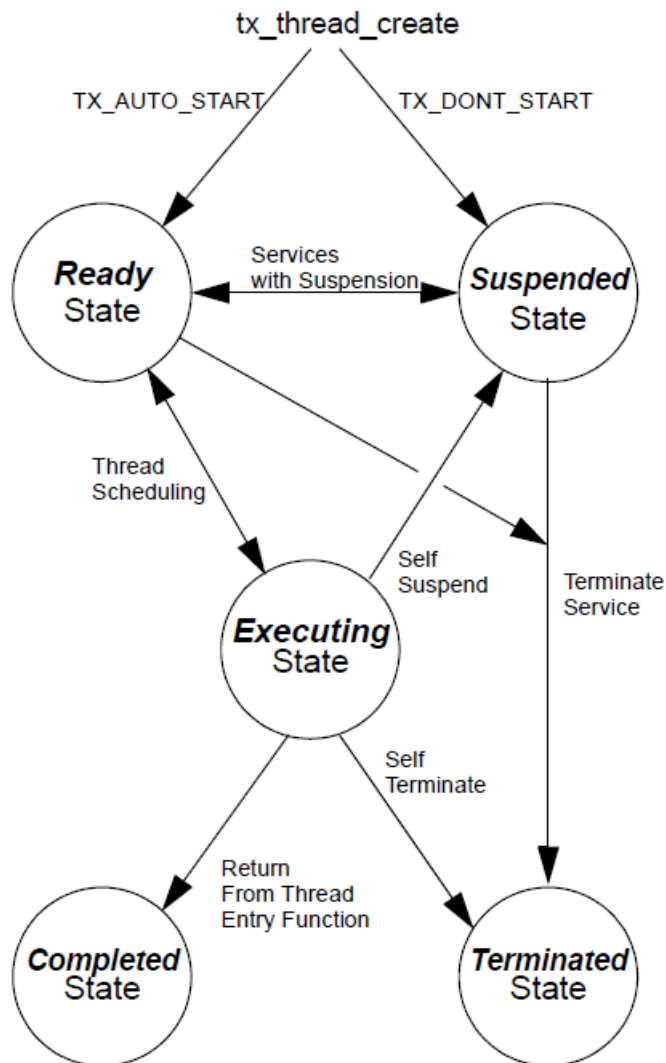


FIGURE 4. Thread State Transition

A thread is in a *ready* state when it is ready for execution. A ready thread is not executed until it is the highest priority thread in ready state. When this happens, ThreadX SMP executes the thread, which then changes its state to *executing*.

If a higher-priority thread becomes ready, the executing thread reverts back to a *ready* state. The newly ready high-priority thread is then executed, which changes its logical state to *executing*. This transition between *ready* and *executing* states occurs every time thread preemption occurs.

At any given moment, only one thread is in an *executing* state. This is because a thread in the *executing* state has control of the underlying processor.

Threads in a *suspended* state are not eligible for execution. Reasons for being in a *suspended* state include suspension for time, queue messages, semaphores, mutexes, event flags, memory, and basic thread suspension. After the cause for suspension is removed, the thread is placed back in a *ready* state.

A thread in a *completed* state is a thread that has completed its processing and returned from its entry function. The entry function is specified during thread creation. A thread in a *completed* state cannot execute again.

A thread is in a *terminated* state because another thread or the thread itself called the *tx\_thread\_terminate* service. A thread in a *terminated* state cannot execute again.

## IMPORTANT

If re-starting a completed or terminated thread is desired, the application must first delete the thread. It can then be re-created and re-started.

## Thread Entry/Exit Notification

Some applications may find it advantageous to be notified when a specific thread is entered for the first time, when it completes, or is terminated. ThreadX SMP provides this ability through the *tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify* service. This service registers an application notification function for a specific thread, which is called by ThreadX SMP whenever the thread starts running, completes, or is terminated. After being invoked, the application notification function can perform the applicationspecific processing. This typically involves informing another application thread of the event via a ThreadX SMP synchronization primitive.

## Thread Priorities

As mentioned before, a thread is a semi-independent program segment with a dedicated purpose. However, all threads are not created equal! The dedicated purpose of some threads is much more important than others. This heterogeneous type of thread importance is a hallmark of embedded realtime applications.

ThreadX SMP determines a thread's importance when the thread is created by assigning a numerical value representing its *priority*. The maximum number of ThreadX SMP priorities is configurable from 32 through 1024 in increments of 32. The actual maximum number of priorities is determined by the *TX\_MAX\_PRIORITIES* constant during compilation of the ThreadX SMP library. Having a larger number of priorities does not significantly increase processing overhead. However, for each group of 32 priority levels an additional 128 bytes of RAM is required to manage them. For example, 32 priority levels require 128 bytes of RAM, 64 priority levels require 256 bytes of RAM, and 96 priority levels requires 384 bytes of RAM.

By default, ThreadX SMP has 32 priority levels, ranging from priority 0 through priority 31.

Numerically smaller values imply higher priority. Hence, priority 0 represents the highest priority, while priority (*TX\_MAX\_PRIORITIES*-1) represents the lowest priority.

Multiple threads can have the same priority relying on cooperative scheduling or time-slicing. In addition, thread priorities can be changed during run-time.

## Thread Scheduling

ThreadX SMP schedules threads based on their priority. The ready thread with the highest priority is executed first. If multiple threads of the same priority are ready, they are executed in a *first-in-first-out* (FIFO) manner.

By default, ThreadX SMP schedules the "n" highest priority threads on the "n" available processors. If concurrent processing is only required on ready threads of the same priority, the ThreadX SMP library must be built with *TX\_THREAD\_SMP\_EQUAL\_PRIORITY* defined.

## NOTE

That all threads can be initially defaulted to only run on core 0, by building the ThreadX SMP library with *TX\_THREAD\_SMP\_ONLY\_CORE\_0\_DEFAULT* defined.

## Round-robin Scheduling

ThreadX SMP supports *round-robin* scheduling of multiple threads having the same priority. This is accomplished through cooperative calls to *tx\_thread\_relinquish*. This service gives all other ready threads of the same priority a chance to execute before the *tx\_thread\_relinquish* caller executes again.

## Time-Slicing

*Time-slicing* is another form of round-robin scheduling. A time-slice specifies the maximum number of timer

ticks (timer interrupts) that a thread can execute without giving up the processor. In ThreadX SMP, time-slicing is available on a perthread basis. The thread's time-slice is assigned during creation and can be modified during run-time. When a time-slice expires, all other ready threads of the same priority level are given a chance to execute before the time-sliced thread executes again.

A fresh thread time-slice is given to a thread after it suspends, relinquishes, makes a ThreadX SMP service call that causes preemption, or is itself timesliced.

When a time-sliced thread is preempted, it will resume before other ready threads of equal priority for the remainder of its time-slice.

#### **IMPORTANT**

Using time-slicing results in a slight amount of system overhead. Because time-slicing is only useful in cases in which multiple threads share the same priority, threads having a unique priority should not be assigned a time-slice.

### **Preemption**

Preemption is the process of temporarily interrupting an executing thread in favor of a higher-priority thread. This process is invisible to the executing thread. When the higher-priority thread is finished, control is transferred back to the exact place where the preemption took place.

This is a very important feature in real-time systems because it facilitates fast response to important application events. Although a very important feature, preemption can also be a source of a variety of problems, including starvation, excessive overhead, and priority inversion.

### **Preemption-Threshold™**

To ease some of the inherent problems of preemption, ThreadX SMP provides a unique and advanced feature called *preemption-threshold*.

A preemption-threshold allows a thread to specify a priority *ceiling* for disabling preemption. Threads that have higher priorities than the ceiling are still allowed to preempt, while those less than the ceiling are not allowed to preempt.

For example, suppose a thread of priority 20 only interacts with a group of threads that have priorities between 15 and 20. During its critical sections, the thread of priority 20 can set its preemption-threshold to 15, thereby preventing preemption from all of the threads that it interacts with. This still permits really important threads (priorities between 0 and 14) to preempt this thread during its critical section processing, which results in much more responsive processing.

Of course, it is still possible for a thread to disable all preemption by setting its preemption-threshold to 0. In addition, preemption-threshold can be changed during run-time.

#### **IMPORTANT**

Using preemption-threshold disables time-slicing for the specified thread.

### **Priority Inheritance**

ThreadX SMP also supports optional priority inheritance within its mutex services described later in this chapter. Priority inheritance allows a lower priority thread to temporarily assume the priority of a high priority thread that is waiting for a mutex owned by the lower priority thread. This capability helps the application to avoid nondeterministic priority inversion by eliminating preemption of intermediate thread priorities. Of course, *preemption-threshold* may be used to achieve a similar result.

### **Thread Creation**

Application threads are created during initialization or during the execution of other application threads. There is

no limit on the number of threads that can be created by an application.

### Thread Control Block `TX_THREAD`

The characteristics of each thread are contained in its control block. This structure is defined in the `tx_api.h` file.

A thread's control block can be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

Locating the control block in other areas requires a bit more care, just like all dynamically allocated memory. If a control block is allocated within a C function, the memory associated with it is part of the calling thread's stack. In general, avoid using local storage for control blocks because after the function returns, all of its local variable stack space is released—regardless of whether another thread is using it for a control block!

In most cases, the application is oblivious to the contents of the thread's control block. However, there are some situations, especially during debug, in which looking at certain members is useful. The following are some of the more useful control block members:

- `tx_thread_run_count` contains a counter of the number of many times the thread has been scheduled. An increasing counter indicates the thread is being scheduled and executed.
- `tx_thread_state` contains the state of the associated thread. The following lists the possible thread states:
  - `TX_READY(0x00)`
  - `TX_COMPLETED(0x01)`
  - `TX_TERMINATED(0x02)`
  - `TX_SUSPENDED(0x03)`
  - `TX_SLEEP(0x04)`
  - `TX_QUEUE_SUSP(0x05)`
  - `TX_SEMAPHORE_SUSP(0x06)`
  - `TX_EVENT_FLAG (0x07)`
  - `TX_BLOCK_MEMORY(0x08)`
  - `TX_BYTE_MEMORY (0x09)`
  - `TX_MUTEX_SUSP(0x0D)`

#### IMPORTANT

Of course there are many other interesting fields in the thread control block, including the stack pointer, time-slice value, priorities, etc. Users are welcome to review control block members, but modifications are strictly prohibited!

#### IMPORTANT

There is no equate for the "executing" state mentioned earlier in this section. It is not necessary because there is only one executing thread at a given time. The state of an executing thread is also `TX_READY`.

### Currently Executing Thread

As mentioned before, there is only one thread executing at any given time. There are several ways to identify the executing thread, depending on which thread is making the request.

A program segment can get the control block address of the executing thread by calling `tx_thread_identify`. This is useful in shared portions of application code that are executed from multiple threads.

In debug sessions, users can examine the internal ThreadX SMP pointer array `_tx_thread_current_ptr[core]`. It contains the control block address of the currently executing thread. If this pointer is NULL, no application thread is executing; i.e., ThreadX SMP is waiting in its scheduling loop for a thread to become ready.

## Thread Stack Area

Each thread must have its own stack for saving the context of its last execution and compiler use. Most C compilers use the stack for making function calls and for temporarily allocating local variables. Figure 5 on page 61 shows a typical thread's stack.

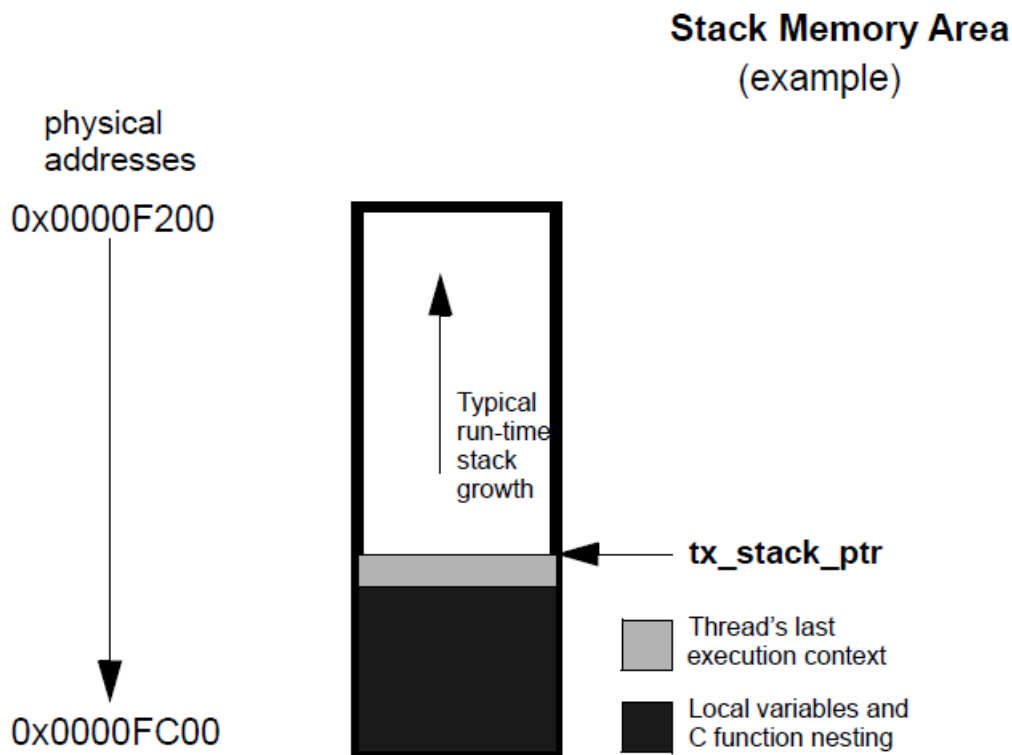


FIGURE 5. Typical Thread Stack

Where a thread stack is located in memory is up to the application. The stack area is specified during thread creation and can be located anywhere in the target's address space. This is an important feature because it allows applications to improve performance of important threads by placing their stack in high-speed RAM.

How big a stack should be is one of the most frequently asked questions about threads. A thread's stack area must be large enough to accommodate worst-case function call nesting, local variable allocation, and saving its last execution context.

The minimum stack size, `TX_MINIMUM_STACK`, is defined by ThreadX SMP. A stack of this size supports saving a thread's context and minimum amount of function calls and local variable allocation.

For most threads, however, the minimum stack size is too small, and the user must ascertain the worstcase size requirement by examining function-call nesting and local variable allocation. Of course, it is always better to start with a larger stack area.

After the application is debugged, it is possible to tune the thread stack sizes if memory is scarce. A favorite trick is to preset all stack areas with an easily identifiable data pattern like `(0xEEFF)` prior to creating the threads. After the application has been thoroughly put through its paces, the stack areas can be examined to see how much stack was actually used by finding the area of the stack where the data pattern is still intact. Figure 6 shows a stack preset to `0xEEFF` after thorough thread execution.

### IMPORTANT

By default, ThreadX SMP initializes every byte of each thread stack with a value of `0xEF`.

## Memory Pitfalls

The stack requirements for threads can be large. Therefore, it is important to design the application to have a reasonable number of threads. Furthermore, some care must be taken to avoid excessive stack usage within threads. Recursive algorithms and large local data structures should be avoided.

In most cases, an overflowed stack causes thread execution to corrupt memory adjacent (usually

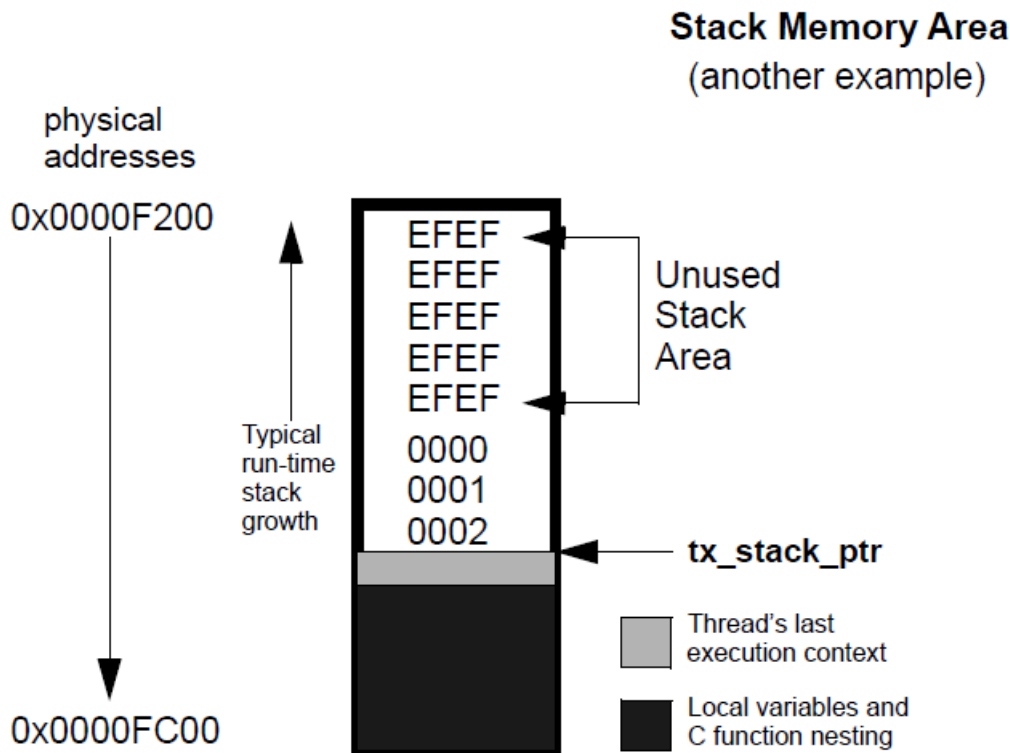


FIGURE 6. Stack Preset to 0xEFEF

before) its stack area. The results are unpredictable, but most often result in an un-natural change in the program counter. This is often called "jumping into the weeds." Of course, the only way to prevent this is to ensure all thread stacks are large enough.

### Optional Run-time Stack Checking

ThreadX SMP provides the ability to check each thread's stack for corruption during run-time. By default, ThreadX SMP fills every byte of thread stacks with a 0xEF data pattern during creation. If the application builds the ThreadX SMP library with **TX\_ENABLE\_STACK\_CHECKING** defined, ThreadX SMP will examine each thread's stack for corruption as it is suspended or resumed. If stack corruption is detected, ThreadX SMP will call the application's stack error handling routine as specified by the call to *tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify*. Otherwise, if no stack error handler was specified, ThreadX SMP will call the internal *\_tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_handler* routine.

### Reentrancy

One of the real beauties of multithreading is that the same C function can be called from multiple threads. This provides great power and also helps reduce code space. However, it does require that C functions called from multiple threads are *reentrant*.

Basically, a reentrant function stores the caller's return address on the current stack and does not rely on global or static C variables that it previously set up. Most compilers place the return address on the stack. Hence, application developers must only worry about the use of *globals* and *statics*.

An example of a non-reentrant function is the string token function “strtok” found in the standard C library. This function remembers the previous string pointer on subsequent calls. It does this with a static string pointer. If this function is called from multiple threads, it would most likely return an invalid pointer.

### Thread Priority Pitfalls

Selecting thread priorities is one of the most important aspects of multithreading. It is sometimes very tempting to assign priorities based on a perceived notion of thread importance rather than determining what is exactly required during run-time. Misuse of thread priorities can starve other threads, create priority inversion, reduce processing bandwidth, and make the application’s run-time behavior difficult to understand.

As mentioned before, ThreadX SMP provides a priority-based, preemptive scheduling algorithm. Lower priority threads do not execute until there are no higher priority threads ready for execution. If a higher priority thread is always ready, the lower priority threads never execute. This condition is called *thread starvation*.

Most thread starvation problems are detected early in debug and can be solved by ensuring that higher priority threads don’t execute continuously. Alternatively, logic can be added to the application that gradually raises the priority of starved threads until they get a chance to execute.

Another pitfall associated with thread priorities is *priority inversion*. Priority inversion takes place when a higher priority thread is suspended because a lower priority thread has a needed resource. Of course, in some instances it is necessary for two threads of different priority to share a common resource. If these threads are the only ones active, the priority inversion time is bounded by the time the lower priority thread holds the resource. This condition is both deterministic and quite normal. However, if threads of intermediate priority become active during this priority inversion condition, the priority inversion time is no longer deterministic and could cause an application failure.

There are principally three distinct methods of preventing nondeterministic priority inversion in ThreadX SMP. First, the application priority selections and run-time behavior can be designed in a manner that prevents the priority inversion problem. Second, lower priority threads can utilize *preemption-threshold* to block preemption from intermediate threads while they share resources with higher priority threads. Finally, threads using ThreadX SMP mutex objects to protect system resources may utilize the optional mutex *priority inheritance* to eliminate nondeterministic priority inversion.

### Priority Overhead

One of the most overlooked ways to reduce overhead in multithreading is to reduce the number of context switches. As previously mentioned, a context switch occurs when execution of a higher priority thread is favored over that of the executing thread. It is worthwhile to mention that higher priority threads can become ready as a result of both external events (like interrupts) and from service calls made by the executing thread.

To illustrate the effects thread priorities have on context switch overhead, assume a three thread environment with threads named *thread\_1*, *thread\_2*, and *thread\_3*. Assume further that all of the threads are in a state of suspension waiting for a message. When *thread\_1* receives a message, it immediately forwards it to *thread\_2*. *Thread\_2* then forwards the message to *thread\_3*. *Thread\_3* just discards the message. After each thread processes its message, it goes back and waits for another message.

The processing required to execute these three threads varies greatly depending on their priorities. If all of the threads have the same priority, a single context switch occurs before the execution of each thread. The context switch occurs when each thread suspends on an empty message queue.

However, if *thread\_2* is higher priority than *thread\_1* and *thread\_3* is higher priority than *thread\_2*, the number of context switches doubles. This is because another context switch occurs inside of the *tx\_queue\_send* service when it detects that a higher priority thread is now ready.

The ThreadX SMP preemption-threshold mechanism can avoid these extra context switches and still allow the previously mentioned priority selections. This is an important feature because it allows several thread priorities during scheduling, while at the same time eliminating some of the unwanted context switching between them

during thread execution.

### Run-time Thread Performance Information

ThreadX SMP provides optional run-time thread performance information. If the ThreadX SMP library and application is built with *TX\_THREAD\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO* defined, ThreadX SMP accumulates the following information:

Total number for the overall system:

- thread resumptions
- thread suspensions
- service call preemptions
- interrupt preemptions
- priority inversions
- time-slices
- relinquishes
- thread timeouts
- suspension aborts
- idle system returns
- non-idle system returns

Total number for each thread:

- resumptions
- suspensions
- service call preemptions
- interrupt preemptions
- priority inversions
- time-slices
- thread relinquishes
- thread timeouts
- suspension aborts

This information is available at run-time through the services *tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get* and *tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get*. Thread performance information is useful in determining if the application is behaving properly. It is also useful in optimizing the application. For example, a relatively high number of service call preemptions might suggest the thread's priority and/or preemption-threshold is too low. Furthermore, a relatively low number of idle system returns might suggest that lower priority threads are not suspending enough.

### Debugging Pitfalls

Debugging multithreaded applications is a little more difficult because the same program code can be executed from multiple threads. In such cases, a break-point alone may not be enough. The debugger must also view the current thread pointer array *\_tx\_thread\_current\_ptr[core]* using a conditional breakpoint to see if the calling thread is the one to debug.

Much of this is being handled in multithreading support packages offered through various development tool vendors. Because of its simple design, integrating ThreadX SMP with different development tools is relatively easy.

Stack size is always an important debug topic in multithreading. Whenever unexplained behavior is observed, it is usually a good first guess to increase stack sizes for all threads—especially the stack size of the last thread to execute!



### IMPORTANT

It is also a good idea to build the ThreadX SMP library with `TX_ENABLE_STACK_CHECKING` defined. This will help isolate stack corruption problems as early in the processing as possible!

## Message Queues

Message queues are the primary means of interthread communication in ThreadX SMP. One or more messages can reside in a message queue. A message queue that holds a single message is commonly called a *mailbox*.

Messages are copied to a queue by `tx_queue_send` and are copied from a queue by `tx_queue_receive`. The only exception to this is when a thread is suspended while waiting for a message on an empty queue. In this case, the next message sent to the queue is placed directly into the thread's destination area.

Each message queue is a public resource. ThreadX SMP places no constraints on how message queues are used.

### Creating Message Queues

Message queues are created either during initialization or during run-time by application threads. There is no limit on the number of message queues in an application.

### Message Size

Each message queue supports a number of fixed-sized messages. The available message sizes are 1 through 16 32-bit words inclusive. The message size is specified when the queue is created.

Application messages greater than 16 words must be passed by pointer. This is accomplished by creating a queue with a message size of 1 word (enough to hold a pointer) and then sending and receiving message pointers instead of the entire message.

### Message Queue Capacity

The number of messages a queue can hold is a function of its message size and the size of the memory area supplied during creation. The total message capacity of the queue is calculated by dividing the number of bytes in each message into the total number of bytes in the supplied memory area.

For example, if a message queue that supports a message size of 1 32-bit word (4 bytes) is created with a 100-byte memory area, its capacity is 25 messages.

### Queue Memory Area

As mentioned before, the memory area for buffering messages is specified during queue creation. Like other memory areas in ThreadX SMP, it can be located anywhere in the target's address space.

This is an important feature because it gives the application considerable flexibility. For example, an application might locate the memory area of an important queue in high-speed RAM to improve performance.

### Thread Suspension

Application threads can suspend while attempting to send or receive a message from a queue. Typically, thread suspension involves waiting for a message from an empty queue. However, it is also possible for a thread to suspend trying to send a message to a full queue.

After the condition for suspension is resolved, the service requested is completed and the waiting thread is resumed. If multiple threads are suspended on the same queue, they are resumed in the order they were suspended (FIFO).

However, priority resumption is also possible if the application calls `tx_queue_prioritize` prior to the queue service that lifts thread suspension. The queue prioritize service places the highest priority thread at the front of the suspension list, while leaving all other suspended threads in the same FIFO order.

Time-outs are also available for all queue suspensions. Basically, a time-out specifies the maximum number of timer ticks the thread will stay suspended. If a time-out occurs, the thread is resumed and the service returns with the appropriate error code.

### Queue Send Notification

Some applications may find it advantageous to be notified whenever a message is placed on a queue. ThreadX SMP provides this ability through the *tx\_queue\_send\_notify* service. This service registers the supplied application notification function with the specified queue. ThreadX SMP will subsequently invoke this application notification function whenever a message is sent to the queue. The exact processing within the application notification function is determined by the application; however, it typically consists of resuming the appropriate thread for processing the new message.

### Queue Event-chaining™

The notification capabilities in ThreadX SMP can be used to chain various synchronization events together. This is typically useful when a single thread must process multiple synchronization events.

For example, suppose a single thread is responsible for processing messages from five different queues and must also suspend when no messages are available. This is easily accomplished by registering an application notification function for each queue and introducing an additional counting semaphore. Specifically, the application notification function performs a *tx\_semaphore\_put* whenever it is called (the semaphore count represents the total number of messages in all five queues). The processing thread suspends on this semaphore via the *tx\_semaphore\_get* service. When the semaphore is available (in this case, when a message is available!), the processing thread is resumed. It then interrogates each queue for a message, processes the found message, and performs another *tx\_semaphore\_get* to wait for the next message. Accomplishing this without event-chaining is quite difficult and likely would require more threads and/or additional application code.

In general, *event-chaining* results in fewer threads, less overhead, and smaller RAM requirements. It also provides a highly flexible mechanism to handle synchronization requirements of more complex systems.

### Run-time Queue Performance Information

ThreadX SMP provides optional run-time queue performance information. If the ThreadX SMP library and application is built with *TX\_QUEUE\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO* defined, ThreadX SMP accumulates the following information:

Total number for the overall system:

- messages sent
- messages received
- queue empty suspensions
- queue full suspensions
- queue full error returns (suspension not specified)
- queue timeouts

Total number for each queue:

- messages sent
- messages received
- queue empty suspensions
- queue full suspensions
- queue full error returns (suspension not specified)
- queue timeouts

This information is available at run-time through the services *tx\_queue\_performance\_info\_get* and *tx\_queue\_performance\_system\_info\_get*. Queue performance information is useful in determining if the

application is behaving properly. It is also useful in optimizing the application. For example, a relatively high number of “queue full suspensions” suggests an increase in the queue size might be beneficial.

### Queue Control Block TX\_QUEUE

The characteristics of each message queue are found in its control block. It contains interesting information such as the number of messages in the queue. This structure is defined in the *tx\_api.h* file.

Message queue control blocks can also be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

### Message Destination Pitfall

As mentioned previously, messages are copied between the queue area and application data areas. It is important to ensure the destination for a received message is large enough to hold the entire message. If not, the memory following the message destination will likely be corrupted.

#### WARNING

This is especially lethal when a too-small message destination is on the stack—nothing like corrupting the return address of a function!

## Counting Semaphores

ThreadX SMP provides 32-bit counting semaphores that range in value between 0 and 4,294,967,295. There are two operations for counting semaphores: *tx\_semaphore\_get* and *tx\_semaphore\_put*. The get operation decreases the semaphore by one. If the semaphore is 0, the get operation is not successful. The inverse of the get operation is the put operation. It increases the semaphore by one.

Each counting semaphore is a public resource. ThreadX SMP places no constraints on how counting semaphores are used.

Counting semaphores are typically used for *mutual exclusion*. However, counting semaphores can also be used as a method for event notification.

### Mutual Exclusion

Mutual exclusion pertains to controlling the access of threads to certain application areas (also called *critical sections* or *application resources*). When used for mutual exclusion, the “current count” of a semaphore represents the total number of threads that are allowed access. In most cases, counting semaphores used for mutual exclusion will have an initial value of 1, meaning that only one thread can access the associated resource at a time. Counting semaphores that only have values of 0 or 1 are commonly called *binary semaphores*.

#### IMPORTANT

If a binary semaphore is being used, the user must prevent the same thread from performing a get operation on a semaphore it already owns. A second get would be unsuccessful and could cause indefinite suspension of the calling thread and permanent unavailability of the resource.

### Event Notification

It is also possible to use counting semaphores as event notification, in a producer-consumer fashion. The consumer attempts to get the counting semaphore while the producer increases the semaphore whenever something is available. Such semaphores usually have an initial value of 0 and will not increase until the producer has something ready for the consumer. Semaphores used for event notification may also benefit from use of the *tx\_semaphore\_ceiling\_put* service call. This service ensures that the semaphore count never exceeds the value supplied in the call.

## Creating Counting Semaphores

Counting semaphores are created either during initialization or during run-time by application threads. The initial count of the semaphore is specified during creation. There is no limit on the number of counting semaphores in an application.

## Thread Suspension

Application threads can suspend while attempting to perform a get operation on a semaphore with a current count of 0.

After a put operation is performed, the suspended thread's get operation is performed and the thread is resumed. If multiple threads are suspended on the same counting semaphore, they are resumed in the same order they were suspended (FIFO).

However, priority resumption is also possible if the application calls *tx\_semaphore\_prioritize* prior to the semaphore put call that lifts thread suspension. The semaphore prioritize service places the highest priority thread at the front of the suspension list, while leaving all other suspended threads in the same FIFO order.

## Semaphore Put Notification

Some applications may find it advantageous to be notified whenever a semaphore is put. ThreadX SMP provides this ability through the *tx\_semaphore\_put\_notify* service. This service registers the supplied application notification function with the specified semaphore. ThreadX SMP will subsequently invoke this application notification function whenever the semaphore is put. The exact processing within the application notification function is determined by the application; however, it typically consists of resuming the appropriate thread for processing the new semaphore put event.

## Semaphore Eventchaining™

The notification capabilities in ThreadX SMP can be used to chain various synchronization events together. This is typically useful when a single thread must process multiple synchronization events.

For example, instead of having separate threads suspend for a queue message, event flags, and a semaphore, the application can register a notification routine for each object. When invoked, the application notification routine can then resume a single thread, which can interrogate each object to find and process the new event.

In general, *event-chaining* results in fewer threads, less overhead, and smaller RAM requirements. It also provides a highly flexible mechanism to handle synchronization requirements of more complex systems.

## Run-time Semaphore Performance Information

ThreadX SMP provides optional run-time semaphore performance information. If the ThreadX SMP library and application is built with *TX\_SEMAPHORE\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO* defined, ThreadX SMP accumulates the following information.

Total number for the overall system:

- semaphore puts
- semaphore gets
- semaphore get suspensions
- semaphore get timeouts

Total number for each semaphore:

- semaphore puts
- semaphore gets
- semaphore get suspensions
- semaphore get timeouts

This information is available at run-time through the services *tx\_semaphore\_performance\_info\_get* and

*tx\_semaphore\_performance\_system\_info\_get*. Semaphore performance information is useful in determining if the application is behaving properly. It is also useful in optimizing the application. For example, a relatively high number of “semaphore get timeouts” might suggest that other threads are holding resources too long.

### Semaphore Control Block TX\_SEMAPHORE

The characteristics of each counting semaphore are found in its control block. It contains information such as the current semaphore count. This structure is defined in the *tx\_api.h* file.

Semaphore control blocks can be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

### Deadly Embrace

One of the most interesting and dangerous pitfalls associated with semaphores used for mutual exclusion is the *deadly embrace*. A deadly embrace, or *deadlock*, is a condition in which two or more threads are suspended indefinitely while attempting to get semaphores already owned by each other.

This condition is best illustrated by a two thread, two semaphore example. Suppose the first thread owns the first semaphore and the second thread owns the second semaphore. If the first thread attempts to get the second semaphore and at the same time the second thread attempts to get the first semaphore, both threads enter a deadlock condition. In addition, if these threads stay suspended forever, their associated resources are locked-out forever as well. Figure 7 on page 78 illustrates this example.

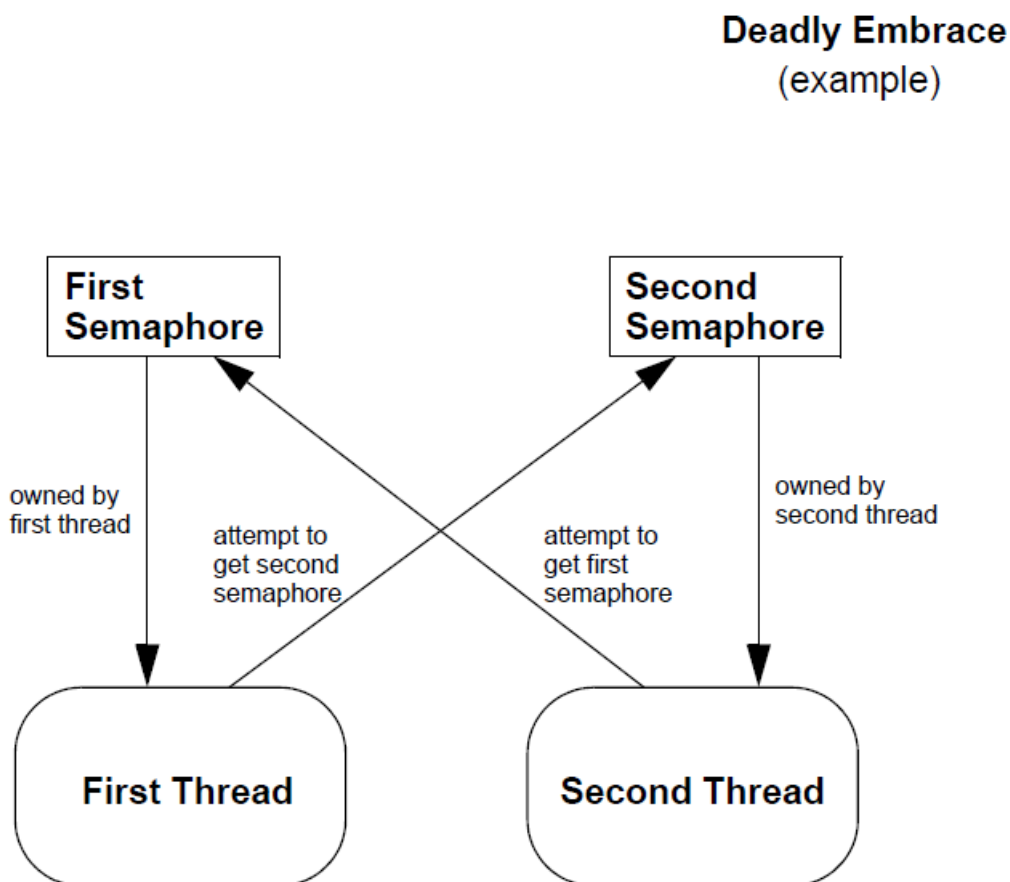


FIGURE 7. Example of Suspended Threads

For real-time systems, deadly embraces can be prevented by placing certain restrictions on how threads obtain semaphores. Threads can only have one semaphore at a time. Alternatively, threads can own multiple semaphores if they gather them in the same order. In the previous example, if the first and second thread obtain the first and second semaphore in order, the deadly embrace is prevented.

#### IMPORTANT

It is also possible to use the suspension time-out associated with the get operation to recover from a deadly embrace.

### Priority Inversion

Another pitfall associated with mutual exclusion semaphores is priority inversion. This topic is discussed more fully in “Thread Priority Pitfalls” on page 64.

The basic problem results from a situation in which a lower-priority thread has a semaphore that a higher priority thread needs. This in itself is normal. However, threads with priorities in between them may cause the priority inversion to last a nondeterministic amount of time. This can be handled through careful selection of thread priorities, using preemption-threshold, and temporarily raising the priority of the thread that owns the resource to that of the high priority thread.

## Mutexes

In addition to semaphores, ThreadX SMP also provides a mutex object. A mutex is basically a binary semaphore, which means that only one thread can own a mutex at a time. In addition, the same thread may perform a successful mutex get operation on an owned mutex multiple times, 4,294,967,295 to be exact. There are two operations on the mutex object: *tx\_mutex\_get* and *tx\_mutex\_put*. The get operation obtains a mutex not owned by another thread, while the put operation releases a previously obtained mutex. For a thread to release a mutex, the number of put operations must equal the number of prior get operations.

Each mutex is a public resource. ThreadX SMP places no constraints on how mutexes are used.

ThreadX mutexes are used solely for *mutual exclusion*. Unlike counting semaphores, mutexes have no use as a method for event notification.

### Mutex Mutual Exclusion

Similar to the discussion in the counting semaphore section, mutual exclusion pertains to controlling the access of threads to certain application areas (also called *critical sections* or *application resources*). When available, a ThreadX SMP mutex will have an ownership count of 0. After the mutex is obtained by a thread, the ownership count is incremented once for every successful get operation performed on the mutex and decremented for every successful put operation.

### Creating Mutexes

ThreadX SMP mutexes are created either during initialization or during run-time by application threads. The initial condition of a mutex is always “available.” A mutex may also be created with *priority inheritance* selected.

### Thread Suspension

Application threads can suspend while attempting to perform a get operation on a mutex already owned by another thread.

After the same number of put operations are performed by the owning thread, the suspended thread’s get operation is performed, giving it ownership of the mutex, and the thread is resumed. If multiple threads are suspended on the same mutex, they are resumed in the same order they were suspended (FIFO).

However, priority resumption is done automatically if the mutex priority inheritance was selected during creation. Priority resumption is also possible if the application calls *tx\_mutex\_prioritize* prior to the mutex put call that lifts thread suspension. The mutex prioritize service places the highest priority thread at the front of the suspension list, while leaving all other suspended threads in the same FIFO order.

### Run-time Mutex Performance Information

ThreadX SMP provides optional run-time mutex performance information. If the ThreadX SMP library and application is built with *TX\_MUTEX\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO* defined, ThreadX SMP accumulates the

following information.

Total number for the overall system:

- mutex puts
- mutex gets
- mutex get suspensions
- mutex get timeouts
- mutex priority inversions
- mutex priority inheritances

Total number for each mutex:

- mutex puts
- mutex gets
- mutex get suspensions
- mutex get timeouts
- mutex priority inversions
- mutex priority inheritances

This information is available at run-time through the services `tx_mutex_performance_info_get` and `tx_mutex_performance_system_info_get`. Mutex performance information is useful in determining if the application is behaving properly. It is also useful in optimizing the application. For example, a relatively high number of “mutex get timeouts” might suggest that other threads are holding resources too long.

### **Mutex Control Block TX\_MUTEX**

The characteristics of each mutex are found in its control block. It contains information such as the current mutex ownership count along with the pointer of the thread that owns the mutex. This structure is defined in the `tx_api.h` file.

Mutex control blocks can be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

### **Deadly Embrace**

One of the most interesting and dangerous pitfalls associated with mutex ownership is the *deadly embrace*. A deadly embrace, or *deadlock*, is a condition where two or more threads are suspended indefinitely while attempting to get a mutex already owned by the other threads. The discussion of *deadly embrace* and its remedies found on page 77 is completely valid for the mutex object as well.

### **Priority Inversion**

As mentioned previously, a major pitfall associated with mutual exclusion is priority inversion. This topic is discussed more fully in “Thread Priority Pitfalls” on page 64.

The basic problem results from a situation in which a lower priority thread has a semaphore that a higher priority thread needs. This in itself is normal. However, threads with priorities in between them may cause the priority inversion to last a nondeterministic amount of time. Unlike semaphores discussed previously, the ThreadX SMP mutex object has optional *priority inheritance*. The basic idea behind priority inheritance is that a lower priority thread has its priority raised temporarily to the priority of a high priority thread that wants the same mutex owned by the lower priority thread. When the lower priority thread releases the mutex, its original priority is then restored and the higher priority thread is given ownership of the mutex. This feature eliminates nondeterministic priority inversion by bounding the amount of inversion to the time the lower priority thread holds the mutex. Of course, the techniques discussed earlier in this chapter to handle nondeterministic priority inversion are also valid with mutexes as well.

# Event Flags

Event flags provide a powerful tool for thread synchronization. Each event flag is represented by a single bit. Event flags are arranged in groups of 32.

Threads can operate on all 32 event flags in a group at the same time. Events are set by `tx_event_flags_set` and are retrieved by `tx_event_flags_get`.

Setting event flags is done with a logical AND/OR operation between the current event flags and the new event flags. The type of logical operation (either an AND or OR) is specified in the `tx_event_flags_set` call.

There are similar logical options for retrieval of event flags. A get request can specify that all specified event flags are required (a logical AND). Alternatively, a get request can specify that any of the specified event flags will satisfy the request (a logical OR). The type of logical operation associated with event flags retrieval is specified in the `tx_event_flags_get` call.

## IMPORTANT

Event flags that satisfy a get request are consumed, i.e., set to zero, if `TX_OR_CLEAR` or `TX_AND_CLEAR` are specified by the request.

Each event flags group is a public resource. ThreadX SMP places no constraints on how event flags groups are used.

## Creating Event Flags Groups

Event flags groups are created either during initialization or during run-time by application threads. At the time of their creation, all event flags in the group are set to zero. There is no limit on the number of event flags groups in an application.

## Thread Suspension

Application threads can suspend while attempting to get any logical combination of event flags from a group. After an event flag is set, the get requests of all suspended threads are reviewed. All the threads that now have the required event flags are resumed.

## IMPORTANT

All suspended threads on an event flags group are reviewed when its event flags are set. This, of course, introduces additional overhead. Therefore, it is good practice to limit the number of threads using the same event flags group to a reasonable number.

## Event Flags Set Notification

Some applications may find it advantageous to be notified whenever an event flag is set. ThreadX SMP provides this ability through the `tx_event_flags_set_notify` service. This service registers the supplied application notification function with the specified event flags group. ThreadX SMP will subsequently invoke this application notification function whenever an event flag in the group is set. The exact processing within the application notification function is determined by the application, but it typically consists of resuming the appropriate thread for processing the new event flag.

## Event Flags Event-chaining™

The notification capabilities in ThreadX SMP can be used to “chain” various synchronization events together. This is typically useful when a single thread must process multiple synchronization events.

For example, instead of having separate threads suspend for a queue message, event flags, and a semaphore, the application can register a notification routine for each object. When invoked, the application notification



routine can then resume a single thread, which can interrogate each object to find and process the new event.

In general, *event-chaining* results in fewer threads, less overhead, and smaller RAM requirements. It also provides a highly flexible mechanism to handle synchronization requirements of more complex systems.

### Run-time Event Flags Performance Information

ThreadX SMP provides optional run-time event flags performance information. If the ThreadX SMP library and application is built with `TX_EVENT_FLAGS_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO` defined, ThreadX SMP accumulates the following information.

Total number for the overall system:

- event flags sets
- event flags gets
- event flags get suspensions
- event flags get timeouts

Total number for each event flags group:

- event flags sets
- event flags gets
- event flags get suspensions
- event flags get timeouts

This information is available at run-time through the services `tx_event_flags_performance_info_get` and `tx_event_flags_performance_system_info_get`. Event Flags performance information is useful in determining if the application is behaving properly. It is also useful in optimizing the application. For example, a relatively high number of timeouts on the `tx_event_flags_get` service might suggest that the event flags suspension timeout is too short.

### Event Flags Group Control Block `TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP`

The characteristics of each event flags group are found in its control block. It contains information such as the current event flags settings and the number of threads suspended for events. This structure is defined in the `tx_api.h` file.

Event group control blocks can be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

## Memory Block Pools

Allocating memory in a fast and deterministic manner is always a challenge in real-time applications. With this in mind, ThreadX SMP provides the ability to create and manage multiple pools of fixed-size memory blocks.

Because memory block pools consist of fixed-size blocks, there are never any fragmentation problems. Of course, fragmentation causes behavior that is inherently nondeterministic. In addition, the time required to allocate and free a fixed-size memory block is comparable to that of simple linked-list manipulation. Furthermore, memory block allocation and de-allocation is done at the head of the available list. This provides the fastest possible linked list processing and might help keep the actual memory block in cache.

Lack of flexibility is the main drawback of fixed-size memory pools. The block size of a pool must be large enough to handle the worst case memory requirements of its users. Of course, memory may be wasted if many different size memory requests are made to the same pool. A possible solution is to make several different memory block pools that contain different sized memory blocks.

Each memory block pool is a public resource. ThreadX SMP places no constraints on how pools are used.

### Creating Memory Block Pools

Memory block pools are created either during initialization or during run-time by application threads. There is no limit on the number of memory block pools in an application.

### Memory Block Size

As mentioned earlier, memory block pools contain a number of fixed-size blocks. The block size, in bytes, is specified during creation of the pool.

#### IMPORTANT

ThreadX SMP adds a small amount of overhead—the size of a C pointer—to each memory block in the pool. In addition, ThreadX SMP might have to pad the block size to keep the beginning of each memory block on proper alignment.

### Pool Capacity

The number of memory blocks in a pool is a function of the block size and the total number of bytes in the memory area supplied during creation. The capacity of a pool is calculated by dividing the block size (including padding and the pointer overhead bytes) into the total number of bytes in the supplied memory area.

### Pool's Memory Area

As mentioned before, the memory area for the block pool is specified during creation. Like other memory areas in ThreadX SMP, it can be located anywhere in the target's address space.

This is an important feature because of the considerable flexibility it provides. For example, suppose that a communication product has a highspeed memory area for I/O. This memory area is easily managed by making it into a ThreadX SMP memory block pool.

### Thread Suspension

Application threads can suspend while waiting for a memory block from an empty pool. When a block is returned to the pool, the suspended thread is given this block and the thread is resumed.

If multiple threads are suspended on the same memory block pool, they are resumed in the order they were suspended (FIFO).

However, priority resumption is also possible if the application calls *tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize* prior to the block release call that lifts thread suspension. The block pool prioritize service places the highest priority thread at the front of the suspension list, while leaving all other suspended threads in the same FIFO order.

### Run-time Block Pool Performance Information

ThreadX SMP provides optional run-time block pool performance information. If the ThreadX SMP library and application is built with *TX\_BLOCK\_POOL\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO* defined, ThreadX SMP accumulates the following information.

Total number for the overall system:

- blocks allocated
- blocks released
- allocation suspensions
- allocation timeouts

Total number for each block pool:

- blocks allocated
- blocks released
- allocation suspensions
- allocation timeouts

This information is available at run-time through the services `tx_block_pool_performance_info_get` and `tx_block_pool_performance_system_info_get`. Block pool performance information is useful in determining if the application is behaving properly. It is also useful in optimizing the application. For example, a relatively high number of “allocation suspensions” might suggest that the block pool is too small.

### Memory Block Pool Control Block TX\_BLOCK\_POOL

The characteristics of each memory block pool are found in its control block. It contains information such as the number of memory blocks available and the memory pool block size. This structure is defined in the `tx_api.h` file.

Pool control blocks can also be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

### Overwriting Memory Blocks

It is important to ensure that the user of an allocated memory block does not write outside its boundaries. If this happens, corruption occurs in an adjacent (usually subsequent) memory area. The results are unpredictable and often fatal!

## Memory Byte Pools

ThreadX SMP memory byte pools are similar to a standard C heap. Unlike the standard C heap, it is possible to have multiple memory byte pools. In addition, threads can suspend on a pool until the requested memory is available.

Allocations from memory byte pools are similar to traditional *malloc* calls, which include the amount of memory desired (in bytes). Memory is allocated from the pool in a *first-fit* manner; i.e., the first free memory block that satisfies the request is used. Excess memory from this block is converted into a new block and placed back in the free memory list. This process is called *fragmentation*.

Adjacent free memory blocks are *merged* together during a subsequent allocation search for a large enough free memory block. This process is called *de-fragmentation*.

Each memory byte pool is a public resource. ThreadX SMP places no constraints on how pools are used, except that memory byte services cannot be called from ISRs.

### Creating Memory Byte Pools

Memory byte pools are created either during initialization or during run-time by application threads. There is no limit on the number of memory byte pools in an application.

### Pool Capacity

The number of allocatable bytes in a memory byte pool is slightly less than what was specified during creation. This is because management of the free memory area introduces some overhead. Each free memory block in the pool requires the equivalent of two C pointers of overhead. In addition, the pool is created with two blocks, a large free block and a small permanently allocated block at the end of the memory area. This allocated block is used to improve performance of the allocation algorithm. It eliminates the need to continuously check for the end of the pool area during merging.

During run-time, the amount of overhead in the pool typically increases. Allocations of an odd number of bytes are padded to ensure proper alignment of the next memory block. In addition, overhead increases as the pool becomes more fragmented.

### Pool's Memory Area

The memory area for a memory byte pool is specified during creation. Like other memory areas in ThreadX SMP, it can be located anywhere in the target's address space.

This is an important feature because of the considerable flexibility it provides. For example, if the target

hardware has a high-speed memory area and a low-speed memory area, the user can manage memory allocation for both areas by creating a pool in each of them.

### Thread Suspension

Application threads can suspend while waiting for memory bytes from a pool. When sufficient contiguous memory becomes available, the suspended threads are given their requested memory and the threads are resumed.

If multiple threads are suspended on the same memory byte pool, they are given memory (resumed) in the order they were suspended (FIFO).

However, priority resumption is also possible if the application calls *tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize* prior to the byte release call that lifts thread suspension. The byte pool prioritize service places the highest priority thread at the front of the suspension list, while leaving all other suspended threads in the same FIFO order.

### Run-time Byte Pool Performance Information

ThreadX SMP provides optional run-time byte pool performance information. If the ThreadX SMP library and application is built with *TX\_BYTE\_POOL\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO* defined, ThreadX SMP accumulates the following information.

Total number for the overall system:

- allocations
- releases
- fragments searched
- fragments merged
- fragments created
- allocation suspensions
- allocation timeouts

Total number for each byte pool:

- allocations
- releases
- fragments searched
- fragments merged
- fragments created
- allocation suspensions
- allocation timeouts

This information is available at run-time through the services *tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_info\_get* and *tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get*. Byte pool performance information is useful in determining if the application is behaving properly. It is also useful in optimizing the application. For example, a relatively high number of "allocation suspensions" might suggest that the byte pool is too small.

### Memory Byte Pool Control Block TX\_BYTE\_POOL

The characteristics of each memory byte pool are found in its control block. It contains useful information such as the number of available bytes in the pool. This structure is defined in the *tx\_api.h* file.

Pool control blocks can also be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

### Nondeterministic Behavior

Although memory byte pools provide the most flexible memory allocation, they also suffer from somewhat nondeterministic behavior. For example, a memory byte pool may have 2,000 bytes of memory available but

may not be able to satisfy an allocation request of 1,000 bytes. This is because there are no guarantees on how many of the free bytes are contiguous. Even if a 1,000 byte free block exists, there are no guarantees on how long it might take to find the block. It is completely possible that the entire memory pool would need to be searched to find the 1,000 byte block.

#### IMPORTANT

Because of this, it is generally good practice to avoid using memory byte services in areas where deterministic, real-time behavior is required. Many applications pre-allocate their required memory during initialization or run-time configuration.

### Overwriting Memory Blocks

It is important to ensure that the user of allocated memory does not write outside its boundaries. If this happens, corruption occurs in an adjacent (usually subsequent) memory area. The results are unpredictable and often fatal!

## Application Timers

Fast response to asynchronous external events is the most important function of real-time, embedded applications. However, many of these applications must also perform certain activities at pre-determined intervals of time.

ThreadX SMP application timers provide applications with the ability to execute application C functions at specific intervals of time. It is also possible for an application timer to expire only once. This type of timer is called a *one-shot timer*, while repeating interval timers are called *periodic timers*.

Each application timer is a public resource. ThreadX SMP places no constraints on how application timers are used.

#### IMPORTANT

Application timers can be excluded from execution on any core via the `tx_timer_smp_core_exclude` API.

### Timer Intervals

In ThreadX SMP time intervals are measured by periodic timer interrupts. Each timer interrupt is called a timer *tick*. The actual time between timer ticks is specified by the application, but 10ms is the norm for most implementations. The periodic timer setup is typically found in the `tx_initialize_low_level` assembly file.

It is worth mentioning that the underlying hardware must have the ability to generate periodic interrupts for application timers to function. In some cases, the processor has a built-in periodic interrupt capability. If the processor doesn't have this ability, the user's board must have a peripheral device that can generate periodic interrupts.

#### IMPORTANT

ThreadX SMP can still function even without a periodic interrupt source. However, all timer-related processing is then disabled. This includes timeslicing, suspension time-outs, and timer services.

### Timer Accuracy

Timer expirations are specified in terms of ticks. The specified expiration value is decreased by one on each timer tick. Because an application timer could be enabled just prior to a timer interrupt (or timer tick), the actual expiration time could be up to one tick early.

If the timer tick rate is 10ms, application timers may expire up to 10ms early. This is more significant for 10ms

timers than 1 second timers. Of course, increasing the timer interrupt frequency decreases this margin of error.

### Timer Execution

Application timers execute in the order they become active. For example, if three timers are created with the same expiration value and activated, their corresponding expiration functions are guaranteed to execute in the order they were activated.

### Creating Application Timers

Application timers are created either during initialization or during run-time by application threads. There is no limit on the number of application timers in an application.

### Run-time Application Timer Performance Information

ThreadX SMP provides optional run-time application timer performance information. If the ThreadX SMP library and application are built with *TX\_TIMER\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO* defined, ThreadX SMP accumulates the following information.

Total number for the overall system:

- activations
- deactivations
- reactivations (periodic timers)
- expirations
- expiration adjustments

Total number for each application timer:

- activations
- deactivations
- reactivations (periodic timers)
- expirations
- expiration adjustments

This information is available at run-time through the services *tx\_timer\_performance\_info\_get* and *tx\_timer\_performance\_system\_info\_get*. Application Timer performance information is useful in determining if the application is behaving properly. It is also useful in optimizing the application.

### Application Timer Control Block TX\_TIMER

The characteristics of each application timer are found in its control block. It contains useful information such as the 32-bit expiration identification value. This structure is defined in the *tx\_api.h* file.

Application timer control blocks can be located anywhere in memory, but it is most common to make the control block a global structure by defining it outside the scope of any function.

### Excessive Timers

By default, application timers execute from within a hidden system thread that runs at priority zero, which is typically higher than any application thread. Because of this, processing inside application timers should be kept to a minimum.

It is also important to avoid, whenever possible, timers that expire every timer tick. Such a situation might induce excessive overhead in the application.

#### WARNING

As mentioned previously, application timers are executed from a hidden system thread. It is, therefore, important not to select suspension on any ThreadX SMP service calls made from within the application timer's expiration function.

# Relative Time

In addition to the application timers mentioned previously, ThreadX SMP provides a single continuously incrementing 32-bit tick counter. The tick counter or *time* is increased by one on each timer interrupt.

The application can read or set this 32-bit counter through calls to *tx\_time\_get* and *tx\_time\_set*, respectively. The use of this tick counter is determined completely by the application. It is not used internally by ThreadX SMP.

## Interrupts

Fast response to asynchronous events is the principal function of real-time, embedded applications. The application knows such an event is present through hardware interrupts.

An interrupt is an asynchronous change in processor execution. Typically, when an interrupt occurs, the processor saves a small portion of the current execution on the stack and transfers control to the appropriate interrupt vector. The interrupt vector is basically just the address of the routine responsible for handling the specific type interrupt. The exact interrupt handling procedure is processor specific.

## Interrupt Control

The *tx\_interrupt\_control* service allows applications to enable and disable interrupts. The previous interrupt enable/disable posture is returned by this service. It is important to mention that interrupt control only affects the currently executing program segment. For example, if a thread disables interrupts, they only remain disabled during execution of that thread.

### WARNING

A Non-Maskable Interrupt (NMI) is an interrupt that cannot be disabled by the hardware. Such an interrupt may be used by ThreadX SMP applications. However, the application's NMI handling routine is not allowed to use ThreadX SMP context management or any API services. ThreadX SMP Managed Interrupts

ThreadX SMP provides applications with complete interrupt management. This management includes saving and restoring the context of the interrupted execution. In addition, ThreadX SMP allows certain services to be called from within Interrupt Service Routines (ISRs). The following is a list of ThreadX SMP services allowed from application ISRs:

- *tx\_block\_allocate*
- *tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get*
- *tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize*
- *tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_info\_get*
- *tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get*
- *tx\_block\_release*
- *tx\_byte\_pool\_info\_get*
- *tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_info\_get*
- *tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get*
- *tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize*
- *tx\_event\_flags\_info\_get*
- *tx\_event\_flags\_get*
- *tx\_event\_flags\_set*
- *tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_info\_get*
- *tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_system\_info\_get*
- *tx\_event\_flags\_set\_notify*
- *tx\_interrupt\_control*
- *tx\_mutex\_performance\_info\_get*

- tx\_mutex\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_front\_send
- tx\_queue\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_prioritize
- tx\_queue\_receive
- tx\_queue\_send
- tx\_semaphore\_get
- tx\_queue\_send\_notify
- tx\_semaphore\_ceiling\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_prioritize
- tx\_semaphore\_put
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_semaphore\_put\_notify
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort
- tx\_time\_get
- tx\_time\_set
- tx\_timer\_activate
- tx\_timer\_change
- tx\_timer\_deactivate
- tx\_timer\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_system\_info\_get

#### **WARNING**

Suspension is not allowed from ISRs. Therefore, the **wait\_option** parameter for all ThreadX SMP service calls made from an ISR must be set to **TX\_NO\_WAIT**.

### **ISR Template**

To manage application interrupts, several ThreadX SMP utilities must be called in the beginning and end of application ISRs. The exact format for interrupt handling varies between ports. Review the *readme\_threadx.txt* file on the distribution disk for specific instructions on managing ISRs.

The following small code segment is typical of most ThreadX SMP managed ISRs. In most cases, this processing is in assembly language.

**\_application\_isr\_vector\_entry:**

; Save context and prepare for



```
; ThreadX SMP use by calling the ISR
; entry function.
CALL _tx_thread_context_save

; The ISR can now call ThreadX SMP
; services and its own C functions

; When the ISR is finished, context
; is restored (or thread preemption)
; by calling the context restore
; function. Control does not return!
JUMP _tx_thread_context_restore
```

### **High-frequency Interrupts**

Some interrupts occur at such a high frequency that saving and restoring full context upon each interrupt would consume excessive processing bandwidth. In such cases, it is common for the application to have a small assembly language ISR that does a limited amount of processing for a majority of these highfrequency interrupts.

After a certain point in time, the small ISR may need to interact with ThreadX SMP. This is accomplished by calling the entry and exit functions described in the above template.

### **Interrupt Latency**

ThreadX SMP locks out interrupts over brief periods of time. The maximum amount of time interrupts are disabled is on the order of the time required to save or restore a thread's context.

# Chapter 4 - Description of Azure RTOS ThreadX SMP Services

11/1/2022 • 94 minutes to read

This chapter contains a description of all Azure RTOS ThreadX SMP services in alphabetic order. Their names are designed so all similar services are grouped together. In the "Return Values" section in the following descriptions, values in **BOLD** are not affected by the `TX_DISABLE_ERROR_CHECKING` define used to disable API error checking; while values shown in nonbold are completely disabled. In addition, a "Yes" listed under the "Preemption Possible" heading indicates that calling the service may resume a higher-priority thread, thus preempting the calling thread.

- `tx_block_allocate`: *Allocate fixed-size block of memory*
- `tx_block_pool_create`: *Create pool of fixed-size memory blocks*
- `tx_block_pool_delete`: *Delete memory block pool*
- `tx_block_pool_info_get`: *Retrieve information about block pool*
- `tx_block_pool_performance_info_get`: *Get block pool performance information*
- `tx_block_pool_performance_system_info_get`: *Get block pool system performance information*
- `tx_block_pool_prioritize`: *Prioritize block pool suspension list*
- `tx_block_release`: *Release fixed-size block of memory*
- `tx_byte_allocate`: *Allocate bytes of memory*
- `tx_byte_pool_create`: *Create memory pool of bytes*
- `tx_byte_pool_delete`: *Delete memory byte pool*
- `tx_byte_pool_info_get`: *Retrieve information about byte pool*
- `tx_byte_pool_performance_info_get`: *Get byte pool performance information*
- `tx_byte_pool_performance_system_info_get`: *Get byte pool system performance information*
- `tx_byte_pool_prioritize`: *Prioritize byte pool suspension list*
- `tx_byte_release`: *Release bytes back to memory pool*
- `tx_event_flags_create`: *Create event flags group*
- `tx_event_flags_delete`: *Delete event flags group*
- `tx_event_flags_get`: *Get event flags from event flags group*
- `tx_event_flags_info_get`: *Retrieve information about event flags group*
- `tx_event_flags_performance_info_get`: *Get event flags group performance information*
- `tx_event_flags_performance_system_info_get`: *Retrieve performance system information*
- `tx_event_flags_set`: *Set event flags in an event flags group*
- `tx_event_flags_set_notify`: *Notify application when event flags are set*
- `tx_interrupt_control`: *Enable and disable interrupts*
- `tx_mutex_create`: *Create mutual exclusion mutex*
- `tx_mutex_delete`: *Delete mutual exclusion mutex*
- `tx_mutex_get`: *Obtain ownership of mutex*
- `tx_mutex_info_get`: *Retrieve information about mutex*
- `tx_mutex_performance_info_get`: *Get mutex performance information*
- `tx_mutex_performance_system_info_get`: *Get mutex system performance information*
- `tx_mutex_prioritize`: *Prioritize mutex suspension list*
- `tx_mutex_put`: *Release ownership of mutex*

- `tx_queue_create`: *Create message queue*
- `tx_queue_delete`: *Delete message queue*
- `tx_queue_flush`: *Empty messages in message queue*
- `tx_queue_front_send`: *Send message to the front of queue*
- `tx_queue_info_get`: *Retrieve information about queue*
- `tx_queue_performance_info_get`: *Get queue performance information*
- `tx_queue_performance_system_info_get`: *Get queue system performance information*
- `tx_queue_prioritize`: *Prioritize queue suspension list*
- `tx_queue_receive`: *Get message from message queue*
- `tx_queue_send`: *Send message to message queue*
- `tx_queue_send_notify`: *Notify application when message is sent to queue*
- `tx_semaphore_ceiling_put`: *Place an instance in counting semaphore with ceiling*
- `tx_semaphore_create`: *Create counting semaphore*
- `tx_semaphore_delete`: *Delete counting semaphore*
- `tx_semaphore_get`: *Get instance from counting semaphore*
- `tx_semaphore_info_get`: *Retrieve information about semaphore*
- `tx_semaphore_performance_info_get`: *Get semaphore performance information*
- `tx_semaphore_performance_system_info_get`: *Get semaphore system performance information*
- `tx_semaphore_prioritize`: *Prioritize semaphore suspension list*
- `tx_semaphore_put`: *Place an instance in counting semaphore*
- `tx_semaphore_put_notify`: *Notify application when semaphore is put*
- `tx_thread_create`: *Create application thread*
- `tx_thread_delete`: *Delete application thread*
- `tx_thread_entry_exit_notify`: *Notify application upon thread entry and exit*
- `tx_thread_identify`: *Retrieves pointer to currently executing thread*
- `tx_thread_info_get`: *Retrieve information about thread*
- `tx_thread_performance_info_get`: *Get thread performance information*
- `tx_thread_performance_system_info_get`: *Get thread system performance information*
- `tx_thread_preemption_change`: *Change preemption-threshold of application thread*
- `tx_thread_priority_change`: *Change priority of application thread*
- `tx_thread_relinquish`: *Relinquish control to other application threads*
- `tx_thread_reset`: *Reset thread*
- `tx_thread_resume`: *Resume suspended application thread*
- `tx_thread_sleep`: *Suspend current thread for specified time*
- `tx_thread_smp_core_exclude`: *Exclude thread execution on a set of cores*
- `tx_thread_smp_core_exclude_get`: *Gets the thread's current core exclusion*
- `tx_thread_smp_core_get`: *Retrieve currently executing core of caller*
- `tx_thread_stack_error_notify`: *Register thread stack error notification callback*
- `tx_thread_suspend`: *Suspend application thread*
- `tx_thread_terminate`: *Terminates application thread*
- `tx_thread_time_slice_change`: *Changes time-slice of application thread*
- `tx_thread_wait_abort`: *Abort suspension of specified thread*
- `tx_time_get`: *Retrieves the current time*
- `tx_time_set`: *Sets the current time*
- `tx_timer_activate`: *Activate application timer*
- `tx_timer_change`: *Change application timer*

- **tx\_timer\_create**: *Create application timer*
- **tx\_timer\_deactivate**: *Deactivate application timer*
- **tx\_timer\_delete**: *Delete application timer*
- **tx\_timer\_info\_get**: *Retrieve information about an application timer*
- **tx\_timer\_performance\_info\_get**: *Get timer performance information*
- **tx\_timer\_performance\_system\_info\_get**: *Get timer system performance information*
- **tx\_timer\_smp\_core\_exclude**: *Exclude timer execution on a set of cores*
- **tx\_timer\_smp\_core\_exclude\_get**: *Gets the timer's current core exclusion*

## tx\_block\_allocate

Allocate fixed-size block of memory

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_block_allocate(TX_BLOCK_POOL *pool_ptr, VOID **block_ptr,
                      ULONG wait_option);
```

### Description

This service allocates a fixed-size memory block from the specified memory pool. The actual size of the memory block is determined during memory pool creation.

#### WARNING

It is important to ensure application code does not write outside the allocated memory block. If this happens, corruption occurs in an adjacent (usually subsequent) memory block. The results are unpredictable and are often fatal!

### Parameters

- **pool\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created memory block pool.
- **block\_ptr**: Pointer to a destination block pointer. On successful allocation, the address of the allocated memory block is placed where this parameter points.
- **wait\_option**: Defines how the service behaves if there are no memory blocks available. The wait options are defined as follows:
  - **TX\_NO\_WAIT**: (0x00000000)
  - **TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER**: (0xFFFFFFFF)
  - timeout value: (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)

Selecting TX\_NO\_WAIT results in an immediate return from this service regardless if it was successful or not. This is the only valid option if the service is called from a non-thread; e.g., Initialization, timer, or ISR.

Selecting TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until a memory block is available.

Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFFE) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay suspended while waiting for a memory block.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful memory block allocation.
- **TX\_DELETED**: (0x01) Memory block pool was deleted while thread was suspended.
- **TX\_NO\_MEMORY**: (0x10) Service was unable to allocate a block of memory within the specified time to wait.

- **TX\_WAIT\_ABORTED:** (0x1A) Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer or ISR.
- **TX\_POOL\_ERROR:** (0x02) Invalid memory block pool pointer.
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR:** (0x03) Invalid pointer to destination pointer.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ERROR:** (0x04) A wait option other than TX\_NO\_WAIT was specified on a call from a nonthread.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_BLOCK_POOL    my_pool;
unsigned char*memory_ptr;
UINT             status;

/* Allocate a memory block from my_pool. Assume that the
   pool has already been created with a call to
   tx_block_pool_create. */
status = tx_block_allocate(&my_pool, (VOID **) &memory_ptr,
                           TX_NO_WAIT);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, memory_ptr contains the
   address of the allocated block of memory. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_block\_pool\_create
- tx\_block\_pool\_delete
- tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize
- tx\_block\_release

## tx\_block\_pool\_create

Create pool of fixed-size memory blocks

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_block_pool_create(TX_BLOCK_POOL *pool_ptr,
                           CHAR *name_ptr, ULONG block_size,
                           VOID *pool_start, ULONG pool_size);
```

### Description

This service creates a pool of fixed-size memory blocks. The memory area specified is divided into as many fixed-size memory blocks as possible using the formula:

**total blocks = (total bytes) / (block size + sizeof(void \*))**

#### IMPORTANT

Each memory block contains one pointer of overhead that is invisible to the user and is represented by the "sizeof(void \*)" in the preceding formula.

## Parameters

- **pool\_ptr**: Pointer to a memory block pool control block.
- **name\_ptr**: Pointer to the name of the memory block pool.
- **block\_size**: Number of bytes in each memory block.
- **pool\_start**: Starting address of the memory block pool. The starting address must be aligned to the size of the ULONG data type..
- **pool\_size**: Total number of bytes available for the memory block pool.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful memory block pool creation.
- **TX\_POOL\_ERROR**: (0x02) Invalid memory block pool pointer. Either the pointer is NULL or the pool is already created.
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR**: (0x03) Invalid starting address of the pool.
- **TX\_SIZE\_ERROR**: (0x05) Size of pool is invalid.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR**: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Initialization and threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_BLOCK_POOL  my_pool;
UINT           status;

/* Create a memory pool whose total size is 1000 bytes
   starting at address 0x100000. Each block in this
   pool is defined to be 50 bytes long. */
status = tx_block_pool_create(&my_pool, "my_pool_name",
                             50, (VOID *) 0x100000, 1000);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_pool contains 18
   memory blocks of 50 bytes each. The reason
   there are not 20 blocks in the pool is
   because of the one overhead pointer associated with each
   block. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_block\_allocate
- tx\_block\_pool\_delete
- tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize
- tx\_block\_release

# tx\_block\_pool\_delete

Delete memory block pool

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_block_pool_delete(TX_BLOCK_POOL *pool_ptr);
```

## Description

This service deletes the specified block-memory pool. All threads suspended waiting for a memory block from this pool are resumed and given a TX\_DELETED return status.

### IMPORTANT

It is the application's responsibility to manage the memory area associated with the pool, which is available after this service completes. In addition, the application must prevent use of a deleted pool or its former memory blocks.

## Parameters

- **pool\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created memory block pool.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful memory block pool deletion.
- **TX\_POOL\_ERROR**: (0x02) Invalid memory block pool pointer.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR**: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_BLOCK_POOL my_pool;
UINT          status;

/* Delete entire memory block pool. Assume that the pool
   has already been created with a call to
   tx_block_pool_create. */
status = tx_block_pool_delete(&my_pool);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the memory block pool is
   deleted. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_block\_allocate
- tx\_block\_pool\_create
- tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize
- tx\_block\_release

# tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get

Retrieve information about block pool

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_block_pool_info_get(TX_BLOCK_POOL *pool_ptr, CHAR **name,
                           ULONG *available, ULONG *total_blocks,
                           TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
                           ULONG *suspended_count,
                           TX_BLOCK_POOL **next_pool);
```

## Description

This service retrieves information about the specified block memory pool.

## Parameters

- **pool\_ptr**: Pointer to previously created memory block pool.
- **name**: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the block pool's name.
- **available**: Pointer to destination for the number of available blocks in the block pool.
- **total\_blocks**: Pointer to destination for the total number of blocks in the block pool.
- **first\_suspended**: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the thread that is first on the suspension list of this block pool.
- **suspended\_count**: Pointer to destination for the number of threads currently suspended on this block pool.
- **next\_pool**: Pointer to destination for the pointer of the next created block pool.

### IMPORTANT

Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates the parameter is not required.

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS: (0x00) Successful block pool information retrieve.
- TX\_POOL\_ERROR: (0x02) Invalid memory block pool pointer.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Example

```
TX_BLOCK_POOL    my_pool;
CHAR             *name;
ULONG            available;
ULONG            total_blocks;
TX_THREAD        *first_suspended;
ULONG            suspended_count;
TX_BLOCK_POOL    *next_pool;
UINT             status;

/* Retrieve information about the previously created
   block pool "my_pool." */
status = tx_block_pool_info_get(&my_pool, &name,
                                &available,&total_blocks,
                                &first_suspended, &suspended_count,
                                &next_pool);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is
   valid. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_block\_allocate
- tx\_block\_pool\_create
- tx\_block\_pool\_delete



- tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize
- tx\_block\_release

## tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_info\_get

Get block pool performance information

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_block_pool_performance_info_get(TX_BLOCK_POOL *pool_ptr,
    ULONG *allocates, ULONG *releases,
    ULONG *suspensions, ULONG *timeouts);
```

### Description

This service retrieves performance information about the specified memory block pool.

#### IMPORTANT

The ThreadX SMP library and application must be built with **TX\_BLOCK\_POOL\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO** defined for this service to return performance information.

### Parameters

- **pool\_ptr**: Pointer to previously created memory block pool.
- **allocates**: Pointer to destination for the number of allocate requests performed on this pool.
- **releases**: Pointer to destination for the number of release requests performed on this pool.
- **suspensions**: Pointer to destination for the number of thread allocation suspensions on this pool.
- **timeouts**: Pointer to destination for the number of allocate suspension timeouts on this pool.

#### IMPORTANT

Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful block pool performance get.
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR**: (0x03) Invalid block pool pointer.
- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED**: (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Example

```

TX_BLOCK_POOL    my_pool;
ULONG            allocates;
ULONG            releases;
ULONG            suspensions;
ULONG            timeouts;

/* Retrieve performance information on the previously created block
   pool. */
status = tx_block_pool_performance_info_get(&my_pool, &allocates,
                                             &releases,
                                             &suspensions,
                                             &timeouts);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
   successfully retrieved. */

```

## See Also

- tx\_block\_allocate
- tx\_block\_pool\_create
- tx\_block\_pool\_delete
- tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_release

# tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get

Get block pool system performance information

## Prototype

```

UINT tx_block_pool_performance_system_info_get(ULONG *allocates,
        ULONG *releases, ULONG *suspensions, ULONG *timeouts);

```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about all memory block pools in the application.

### IMPORTANT

The ThreadX SMP library and application must be built with **TX\_BLOCK\_POOL\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO** defined for this service to return performance information.

## Parameters

- **allocates**: Pointer to destination for the total number of allocate requests performed on all block pools.
- **releases**: Pointer to destination for the total number of release requests performed on all block pools.
- **suspensions**: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread allocation suspensions on all block pools.
- **timeouts**: Pointer to destination for the total number of allocate suspension timeouts on all block pools.

### IMPORTANT

Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS:** (0x00) Successful block pool system performance get.
- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED:** (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Example

```

ULONG      allocates;
ULONG      releases;
ULONG      suspensions;
ULONG      timeouts;

/* Retrieve performance information on all the block pools in
   the system. */
status = tx_block_pool_performance_system_info_get(&allocates,
                                                    &releases,&suspensions, &timeouts);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
   successfully retrieved. */

```

### See Also

- tx\_block\_allocate
- tx\_block\_pool\_create
- tx\_block\_pool\_delete
- tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize
- tx\_block\_release

## tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize

Prioritize block pool suspension list

### Prototype

```

UINT tx_block_pool_prioritize(TX_BLOCK_POOL *pool_ptr);

```

### Description

This service places the highest priority thread suspended for a block of memory on this pool at the front of the suspension list. All other threads remain in the same FIFO order they were suspended in.

### Parameters

- **pool\_ptr:** Pointer to a memory block pool control block.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS:** (0x00) Successful block pool prioritize.
- **TX\_POOL\_ERROR:** (0x02) Invalid memory block pool pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_BLOCK_POOL my_pool;
UINT          status;

/* Ensure that the highest priority thread will receive
   the next free block in this pool. */
status = tx_block_pool_prioritize(&my_pool);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the highest priority
   suspended thread is at the front of the list. The
   next tx_block_release call will wake up this thread. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_block\_allocate
- tx\_block\_pool\_create
- tx\_block\_pool\_delete
- tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_release

# tx\_block\_release

Release fixed-size block of memory

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_block_release(VOID *block_ptr);
```

## Description

This service releases a previously allocated block back to its associated memory pool. If there are one or more threads suspended waiting for memory blocks from this pool, the first thread suspended is given this memory block and resumed.

### IMPORTANT

The application must prevent using a memory block area after it has been released back to the pool.

## Parameters

- **block\_ptr**: Pointer to the previously allocated memory block.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful memory block release.
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR**: (0x03) Invalid pointer to memory block.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```

TX_BLOCK_POOL my_pool;
unsigned char* memory_ptr;
UINT          status;

/* Release a memory block back to my_pool. Assume that the
   pool has been created and the memory block has been
   allocated. */
status = tx_block_release((VOID *) memory_ptr);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the block of memory pointed
   to by memory_ptr has been returned to the pool. */

```

## See Also

- tx\_block\_allocate
- tx\_block\_pool\_create
- tx\_block\_pool\_delete
- tx\_block\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_block\_pool\_prioritize

## tx\_byte\_allocate

Allocate bytes of memory

### Prototype

```

UINT tx_byte_allocate(TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr,
                     VOID **memory_ptr, ULONG memory_size,
                     ULONG wait_option);

```

### Description

This service allocates the specified number of bytes from the specified memory byte pool.

#### WARNING

It is important to ensure application code does not write outside the allocated memory block. If this happens, corruption occurs in an adjacent (usually subsequent) memory block. The results are unpredictable and are often fatal!

#### IMPORTANT

The performance of this service is a function of the block size and the amount of fragmentation in the pool. Hence, this service should not be used during time-critical threads of execution.

### Parameters

- **pool\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created memory pool.
- **memory\_ptr**: Pointer to a destination memory pointer. On successful allocation, the address of the allocated memory area is placed where this parameter points to.
- **memory\_size**: Number of bytes requested.
- **wait\_option**: Defines how the service behaves if there is not enough memory available. The wait options are defined as follows:

- **TX\_NO\_WAIT**: (0x00000000)
- **TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER**: (0xFFFFFFFF)
- timeout value: (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)

Selecting **TX\_NO\_WAIT** results in an immediate return from this service regardless of whether or not it was successful. *This is the only valid option if the service is called from initialization.*

Selecting **TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER** causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until enough memory is available.

Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFFE) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay suspended while waiting for the memory.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful memory allocation.
- **TX\_DELETED**: (0x01) Memory pool was deleted while thread was suspended.
- **TX\_NO\_MEMORY**: (0x10) Service was unable to allocate the memory within the specified time to wait.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ABORTED**: (0x1A) Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.
- **TX\_POOL\_ERROR**: (0x02) Invalid memory pool pointer.
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR**: (0x03) Invalid pointer to destination pointer.
- **TX\_SIZE\_ERROR**: (0x05) Requested size is zero or larger than the pool.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ERROR**: (0x04) A wait option other than **TX\_NO\_WAIT** was specified on a call from a nonthread.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR**: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Initialization and threads

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_BYTE_POOL my_pool;
unsigned char*memory_ptr;
UINT          status;

/* Allocate a 112 byte memory area from my_pool. Assume
   that the pool has already been created with a call to
   tx_byte_pool_create. */
status = tx_byte_allocate(&my_pool, (VOID **) &memory_ptr,
                        112, TX_NO_WAIT);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, memory_ptr contains the
   address of the allocated memory area. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_byte\_pool\_create
- tx\_byte\_pool\_delete
- tx\_byte\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize
- tx\_byte\_release

## tx\_byte\_pool\_create

Create memory pool of bytes

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_byte_pool_create(TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr,  
                        CHAR *name_ptr, VOID *pool_start,  
                        ULONG pool_size);
```

## Description

This service creates a memory byte pool in the area specified. Initially the pool consists of basically one very large free block. However, the pool is broken into smaller blocks as allocations are made.

## Parameters

- **pool\_ptr**: Pointer to a memory pool control block.
- **name\_ptr**: Pointer to the name of the memory pool.
- **pool\_start**: Starting address of the memory pool. The starting address must be aligned to the size of the ULONG data type.
- **pool\_size**: Total number of bytes available for the memory pool.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful memory pool creation.
- **TX\_POOL\_ERROR**: (0x02) Invalid memory pool pointer. Either the pointer is NULL or the pool is already created.
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR**: (0x03) Invalid starting address of the pool.
- **TX\_SIZE\_ERROR**: (0x05) Size of pool is invalid.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR**: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Initialization and threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_BYTE_POOL my_pool;  
UINT          status;  
  
/* Create a memory pool whose total size is 2000 bytes  
   starting at address 0x500000. */  
status = tx_byte_pool_create(&my_pool, "my_pool_name",  
                             (VOID *) 0x500000, 2000);  
  
/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_pool is available for  
   allocating memory. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_byte\_allocate
- tx\_byte\_pool\_delete
- tx\_byte\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize
- tx\_byte\_release

# tx\_byte\_pool\_delete

Delete memory byte pool

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_byte_pool_delete(TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr);
```

## Description

This service deletes the specified memory byte pool. All threads suspended waiting for memory from this pool are resumed and given a TX\_DELETED return status.

### IMPORTANT

It is the application's responsibility to manage the memory area associated with the pool, which is available after this service completes. In addition, the application must prevent use of a deleted pool or memory previously allocated from it.

## Parameters

- **pool\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created memory pool.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful memory pool deletion.
- **TX\_POOL\_ERROR**: (0x02) Invalid memory pool pointer.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR**: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_BYTE_POOL my_pool;
UINT          status;

/* Delete entire memory pool. Assume that the pool has already
   been created with a call to tx_byte_pool_create. */
status = tx_byte_pool_delete(&my_pool);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, memory pool is deleted. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_byte\_allocate
- tx\_byte\_pool\_create
- tx\_byte\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize
- tx\_byte\_release

# tx\_byte\_pool\_info\_get



Retrieve information about byte pool

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_byte_pool_info_get(TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr, CHAR **name,  
                           ULONG *available, ULONG *fragments,  
                           TX_THREAD **first_suspended,  
                           ULONG *suspended_count,  
                           TX_BYTE_POOL **next_pool);
```

## Description

This service retrieves information about the specified memory byte pool.

## Parameters

- **pool\_ptr**: Pointer to previously created memory pool.
- **name**: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the byte pool's name.
- **available**: Pointer to destination for the number of available bytes in the pool.
- **fragments**: Pointer to destination for the total number of memory fragments in the byte pool.
- **first\_suspended**: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the thread that is first on the suspension list of this byte pool.
- **suspended\_count**: Pointer to destination for the number of threads currently suspended on this byte pool.
- **next\_pool**: Pointer to destination for the pointer of the next created byte pool.

### IMPORTANT

Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful pool information retrieve.
- **TX\_POOL\_ERROR**: (0x02) Invalid memory pool pointer.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```

TX_BYTE_POOL my_pool;
CHAR          *name;
ULONG         available;
ULONG         fragments;
TX_THREAD     *first_suspended;
ULONG         suspended_count;
TX_BYTE_POOL *next_pool;
UINT          status;

/* Retrieve information about the previously created
   block pool "my_pool." */
status = tx_byte_pool_info_get(&my_pool, &name,
                               &available, &fragments,
                               &first_suspended, &suspended_count,
                               &next_pool);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is
   valid. */

```

## See Also

- tx\_byte\_allocate
- tx\_byte\_pool\_create
- tx\_byte\_pool\_delete
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize
- tx\_byte\_release

# tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_info\_get

Get byte pool performance information

## Prototype

```

UINT tx_byte_pool_performance_info_get(TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr,
                                       ULONG *allocates, ULONG *releases,
                                       ULONG *fragments_searched, ULONG *merges, ULONG *splits,
                                       ULONG *suspensions, ULONG *timeouts);

```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about the specified memory byte pool.

### IMPORTANT

The ThreadX SMP library and application must be built with **TX\_BYTE\_POOL\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO** defined for this service to return performance information.

## Parameters

- **pool\_ptr**: Pointer to previously created memory byte pool.
- **allocates**: Pointer to destination for the number of allocate requests performed on this pool.
- **releases**: Pointer to destination for the number of release requests performed on this pool.
- **fragments\_searched**: Pointer to destination for the number of internal memory fragments searched during allocation requests on this pool.
- **merges**: Pointer to destination for the number of internal memory blocks merged during allocation requests

on this pool.

- **splits**: Pointer to destination for the number of internal memory blocks split (fragments) created during allocation requests on this pool.
- **suspensions**: Pointer to destination for the number of thread allocation suspensions on this pool.
- **timeouts**: Pointer to destination for the number of allocate suspension timeouts on this pool.

#### IMPORTANT

Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates the parameter is not required.

#### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS: (0x00) Successful byte pool performance get.
- TX\_PTR\_ERROR: (0x03) Invalid byte pool pointer.
- TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED: (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

#### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

#### Example

```
TX_BYTE_POOL    my_pool;
ULONG           fragments_searched;
ULONG           merges;
ULONG           splits;
ULONG           allocates;
ULONG           releases;
ULONG           suspensions;
ULONG           timeouts;

/* Retrieve performance information on the previously created byte
   pool. */
status = tx_byte_pool_performance_info_get(&my_pool,
                                           &fragments_searched,
                                           &merges, &splits,
                                           &allocates, &releases,
                                           &suspensions,&timeouts);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
   successfully retrieved. */
```

#### See Also

- tx\_byte\_allocate
- tx\_byte\_pool\_create
- tx\_byte\_pool\_delete
- tx\_byte\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize
- tx\_byte\_release

## tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get

Get byte pool system performance information

#### Prototype

```
UINT tx_byte_pool_performance_system_info_get(ULONG *allocates,
        ULONG *releases, ULONG *fragments_searched, ULONG *merges,
        ULONG *splits, ULONG *suspensions, ULONG *timeouts);;
```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about all memory byte pools in the system.

### IMPORTANT

The ThreadX SMP library and application must be built with `TX_BYTE_POOL_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO` defined for this service to return performance information.

## Parameters

- **allocates**: Pointer to destination for the number of allocate requests performed on this pool.
- **releases**: Pointer to destination for the number of release requests performed on this pool.
- **fragments\_searched**: Pointer to destination for the total number of internal memory fragments searched during allocation requests on all byte pools.
- **merges**: Pointer to destination for the total number of internal memory blocks merged during allocation requests on all byte pools.
- **splits**: Pointer to destination for the total number of internal memory blocks split (fragments) created during allocation requests on all byte pools.
- **suspensions**: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread allocation suspensions on all byte pools.
- **timeouts**: Pointer to destination for the total number of allocate suspension timeouts on all byte pools.

### IMPORTANT

Supplying a `TX_NULL` for any parameter indicates the parameter is not required.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful byte pool performance get.
- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED**: (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Example

```
ULONG      fragments_searched;
ULONG      merges;
ULONG      splits;
ULONG      allocates;
ULONG      releases;
ULONG      suspensions;
ULONG      timeouts;

/* Retrieve performance information on all byte pools in the
   system. */
status =
tx_byte_pool_performance_system_info_get(&fragments_searched,
        &merges, &splits, &allocates, &releases,
        &suspensions, &timeouts);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
   successfully retrieved. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_byte\_allocate
- tx\_byte\_pool\_create
- tx\_byte\_pool\_delete
- tx\_byte\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize
- tx\_byte\_release

## tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize

Prioritize byte pool suspension list

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_byte_pool_prioritize(TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr);
```

### Description

This service places the highest priority thread suspended for memory on this pool at the front of the suspension list. All other threads remain in the same FIFO order they were suspended in.

### Parameters

- **pool\_ptr**: Pointer to a memory pool control block.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful memory pool prioritize.
- **TX\_POOL\_ERROR**: (0x02) Invalid memory pool pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
TX_BYTE_POOL my_pool;
UINT          status;

/* Ensure that the highest priority thread will receive
   the next free memory from this pool. */
status = tx_byte_pool_prioritize(&my_pool);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the highest priority
   suspended thread is at the front of the list. The
   next tx_byte_release call will wake up this thread,
   if there is enough memory to satisfy its request. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_byte\_allocate
- tx\_byte\_pool\_create
- tx\_byte\_pool\_delete
- tx\_byte\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_info\_get

- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_release

## tx\_byte\_release

Release bytes back to memory pool

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_byte_release(VOID *memory_ptr);
```

### Description

This service releases a previously allocated memory area back to its associated pool. If there are one or more threads suspended waiting for memory from this pool, each suspended thread is given memory and resumed until the memory is exhausted or until there are no more suspended threads. This process of allocating memory to suspended threads always begins with the first thread suspended.

#### IMPORTANT

The application must prevent using the memory area after it is released.

### Parameters

- **memory\_ptr**: Pointer to the previously allocated memory area.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful memory release.
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR**: (0x03) Invalid memory area pointer.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR**: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Initialization and threads

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
unsigned char    *memory_ptr;
UINT             status;

/* Release a memory back to my_pool. Assume that the memory
   area was previously allocated from my_pool. */
status = tx_byte_release((VOID *) memory_ptr);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the memory pointed to by
   memory_ptr has been returned to the pool. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_byte\_allocate
- tx\_byte\_pool\_create
- tx\_byte\_pool\_delete
- tx\_byte\_pool\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_info\_get

- tx\_byte\_pool\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_byte\_pool\_prioritize

## tx\_event\_flags\_create

Create event flags group

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_event_flags_create(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,
                           CHAR *name_ptr);
```

### Description

This service creates a group of 32 event flags. All 32 event flags in the group are initialized to zero. Each event flag is represented by a single bit.

### Parameters

- **group\_ptr**: Pointer to an event flags group control block.
- **name\_ptr**: Pointer to the name of the event flags group.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful event group creation.
- **TX\_GROUP\_ERROR**: (0x06) Invalid event group pointer. Either the pointer is NULL or the event group is already created.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR**: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Initialization and threads

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP my_event_group;
UINT                  status;

/* Create an event flags group. */
status = tx_event_flags_create(&my_event_group,
                               "my_event_group_name");

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_event_group is ready
   for get and set services. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_event\_flags\_delete
- tx\_event\_flags\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_set
- tx\_event\_flags\_set\_notify

# tx\_event\_flags\_delete

Delete event flags group

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_event_flags_delete(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr);
```

## Description

This service deletes the specified event flags group. All threads suspended waiting for events from this group are resumed and given a TX\_DELETED return status.

### IMPORTANT

The application must ensure that a set notify callback for this event flags group is completed (or disabled) before deleting the event flags group. In addition, the application must prevent all future use of a deleted event flags group.

## Parameters

- **group\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created event flags group.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful event flags group deletion.
- **TX\_GROUP\_ERROR**: (0x06) Invalid event flags group pointer.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR**: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP my_event_flags_group;
UINT                  status;

/* Delete event flags group. Assume that the group has
   already been created with a call to
   tx_event_flags_create. */
status = tx_event_flags_delete(&my_event_flags_group);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the event flags group is
   deleted. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_event\_flags\_create
- tx\_event\_flags\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_set
- tx\_event\_flags\_set\_notify



# tx\_event\_flags\_get

Get event flags from event flags group

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_event_flags_get(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,
                        ULONG requested_flags, UINT get_option,
                        ULONG *actual_flags_ptr, ULONG wait_option);
```

## Description

This service retrieves event flags from the specified event flags group. Each event flags group contains 32 event flags. Each flag is represented by a single bit. This service can retrieve a variety of event flag combinations, as selected by the input parameters.

## Parameters

- **group\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created event flags group.
- **requested\_flags**: 32-bit unsigned variable that represents the requested event flags.
- **get\_option**: Specifies whether all or any of the requested event flags are required. The following are valid selections:
  - **TX\_AND**: (0x02)
  - **TX\_AND\_CLEAR**: (0x03)
  - **TX\_OR**: (0x00)
  - **TX\_OR\_CLEAR**: (0x01)Selecting TX\_AND or TX\_AND\_CLEAR specifies that all event flags must be present in the group. Selecting TX\_OR or TX\_OR\_CLEAR specifies that any event flag is satisfactory. Event flags that satisfy the request are cleared (set to zero) if TX\_AND\_CLEAR or TX\_OR\_CLEAR are specified.
- **actual\_flags\_ptr**: Pointer to destination of where the retrieved event flags are placed. Note that the actual flags obtained may contain flags that were not requested.
- **wait\_option**: Defines how the service behaves if the selected event flags are not set. The wait options are defined as follows:
  - **TX\_NO\_WAIT**: (0x00000000)
  - **TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER**: (0xFFFFFFFF)
  - **timeout value**: (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)

Selecting TX\_NO\_WAIT results in an immediate return from this service regardless of whether or not it was successful. This is the only valid option if the service is called from a non-thread; e.g., Initialization, timer, or ISR.

Selecting TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until the event flags are available.

Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFFE) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay suspended while waiting for the event flags.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful event flags get.
- **TX\_DELETED**: (0x01) Event flags group was deleted while thread was suspended.
- **TX\_NO\_EVENTS**: (0x07) Service was unable to get the specified events within the specified time to wait.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ABORTED**: (0x1A) Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.

- TX\_GROUP\_ERROR: (0x06) Invalid event flags group pointer.
- TX\_PTR\_ERROR: (0x03) Invalid pointer for actual event flags.
- TX\_WAIT\_ERROR: (0x04) A wait option other than TX\_NO\_WAIT was specified on a call from a nonthread.
- TX\_OPTION\_ERROR: (0x08) Invalid get-option was specified.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP my_event_flags_group;
ULONG                actual_events;
UINT                 status;

/* Request that event flags 0, 4, and 8 are all set. Also,
   if they are set they should be cleared. If the event
   flags are not set, this service suspends for a maximum of
   20 timer-ticks. */
status = tx_event_flags_get(&my_event_flags_group, 0x111,
                           TX_AND_CLEAR, &actual_events, 20);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, actual_events contains the
   actual events obtained. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_event\_flags\_create
- tx\_event\_flags\_delete
- tx\_event\_flags\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_set
- tx\_event\_flags\_set\_notify

## tx\_event\_flags\_info\_get

Retrieve information about event flags group

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_event_flags_info_get(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,
                             CHAR **name, ULONG *current_flags,
                             TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
                             ULONG *suspended_count,
                             TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP **next_group);
```

### Description

This service retrieves information about the specified event flags group.

### Parameters

- **group\_ptr**: Pointer to an event flags group control block.
- **name**: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the event flags group's name.
- **current\_flags**: Pointer to destination for the current set flags in the event flags group.

- **first\_suspended**: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the thread that is first on the suspension list of this event flags group.
- **suspended\_count**: Pointer to destination for the number of threads currently suspended on this event flags group.
- **next\_group**: Pointer to destination for the pointer of the next created event flags group.

#### IMPORTANT

Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.

#### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful event group information retrieval.
- **TX\_GROUP\_ERROR**: (0x06) Invalid event group pointer.

#### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

#### Preemption Possible

No

#### Example

```
TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP my_event_group;
CHAR                *name;
ULONG               current_flags;
TX_THREAD           *first_suspended;
ULONG               suspended_count;
TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *next_group;
UINT                status;

/* Retrieve information about the previously created
   event flags group "my_event_group." */
status = tx_event_flags_info_get(&my_event_group, &name,
                                &current_flags,
                                &first_suspended, &suspended_count,
                                &next_group);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is
   valid. */
```

#### See Also

- tx\_event\_flags\_create
- tx\_event\_flags\_delete
- tx\_event\_flags\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_set
- tx\_event\_flags\_set\_notify

## tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_info\_get

Get event flags group performance information

#### Prototype

```
UINT tx_event_flags_performance_info_get(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP
                                         *group_ptr, ULONG *sets, ULONG *gets,
                                         ULONG *suspensions, ULONG *timeouts);
```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about the specified event flags group.

### IMPORTANT

ThreadX SMP library and application must be built with **TX\_EVENT\_FLAGS\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO** defined for this service to return performance information.

## Parameters

- **group\_ptr**: Pointer to previously created event flags group.
- **sets**: Pointer to destination for the number of event flags set requests performed on this group.
- **gets**: Pointer to destination for the number of event flags get requests performed on this group.
- **suspensions**: Pointer to destination for the number of thread event flags get suspensions on this group.
- **timeouts**: Pointer to destination for the number of event flags get suspension timeouts on this group.

### IMPORTANT

Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful event flags group performance get.
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR**: (0x03) Invalid event flags group pointer.
- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED**: (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Example

```
TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP my_event_flag_group;
ULONG                 sets;
ULONG                 gets;
ULONG                 suspensions;
ULONG                 timeouts;

/* Retrieve performance information on the previously created event
   flag group. */
status = tx_event_flags_performance_info_get(&my_event_flag_group,
                                             &sets, &gets, &suspensions,
                                             &timeouts);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was successfully
   retrieved. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_event\_flags\_create
- tx\_event\_flags\_delete
- tx\_event\_flags\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_info\_get

- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_set
- tx\_event\_flags\_set\_notify

## tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_system\_info\_get

Retrieve performance system information

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_event_flags_performance_system_info_get(ULONG *sets,
        ULONG *gets, ULONG *suspensions, ULONG *timeouts);
```

### Description

This service retrieves performance information about all event flags groups in the system.

#### IMPORTANT

ThreadX SMP library and application must be built with **TX\_EVENT\_FLAGS\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO** defined for this service to return performance information.

### Parameters

- **sets**: Pointer to destination for the total number of event flags set requests performed on all groups.
- **gets**: Pointer to destination for the total number of event flags get requests performed on all groups.
- **suspensions**: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread event flags get suspensions on all groups.
- **timeouts**: Pointer to destination for the total number of event flags get suspension timeouts on all groups.

#### IMPORTANT

Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful event flags system performance get.
- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED**: (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Example

```
ULONG      sets;
ULONG      gets;
ULONG      suspensions;
ULONG      timeouts;

/* Retrieve performance information on all previously created event
   flag groups. */
status = tx_event_flags_performance_system_info_get(&sets, &gets,
        &suspensions, &timeouts);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
   successfully retrieved. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_event\_flags\_create
- tx\_event\_flags\_delete
- tx\_event\_flags\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_set
- tx\_event\_flags\_set\_notify

## tx\_event\_flags\_set

Set event flags in an event flags group

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_event_flags_set(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,
                        ULONG flags_to_set,UINT set_option);
```

### Description

This service sets or clears event flags in an event flags group, depending upon the specified set-option. All suspended threads whose event flags request is now satisfied are resumed.

### Parameters

- **group\_ptr**: Pointer to the previously created event flags group control block.
- **flags\_to\_set**: Specifies the event flags to set or clear based upon the set option selected.
- **set\_option**: Specifies whether the event flags specified are ANDed or ORed into the current event flags of the group. The following are valid selections:
  - **TX\_AND**: (0x02)
  - **TX\_OR**: (0x00) Selecting TX\_AND specifies that the specified event flags are **ANDed** into the current event flags in the group. This option is often used to clear event flags in a group. Otherwise, if TX\_OR is specified, the specified event flags are **ORed** with the current event in the group.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful event flags set.
- **TX\_GROUP\_ERROR**: (0x06) Invalid pointer to event flags group.
- **TX\_OPTION\_ERROR**: (0x08) Invalid set-option specified.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```

TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP my_event_flags_group;
UINT                 status;

/* Set event flags 0, 4, and 8. */
status = tx_event_flags_set(&my_event_flags_group,
                           0x111, TX_OR);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the event flags have been
   set and any suspended thread whose request was satisfied
   has been resumed. */

```

## See Also

- [tx\\_event\\_flags\\_create](#)
- [tx\\_event\\_flags\\_delete](#)
- [tx\\_event\\_flags\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_event\\_flags\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_event\\_flags\\_performance\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_event\\_flags\\_performance\\_system\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_event\\_flags\\_set\\_notify](#)

# tx\_event\_flags\_set\_notify

Notify application when event flags are set

## Prototype

```

UINT tx_event_flags_set_notify(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr,
                               VOID (*events_set_notify)(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *));

```

## Description

This service registers a notification callback function that is called whenever one or more event flags are set in the specified event flags group. The processing of the notification callback is defined by the application.

### NOTE

The application's event flags set notification callback is not allowed to call any ThreadX SMP API with a suspension option.

## Parameters

- **group\_ptr**: Pointer to previously created event flags group.
- **events\_set\_notify**: Pointer to application's event flags set notification function. If this value is TX\_NULL, notification is disabled.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful registration of event flags set notification.
- **TX\_GROUP\_ERROR**: (0x06) Invalid event flags group pointer.
- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED**: (0xFF) The system was compiled with notification capabilities disabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Example

```

TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP my_group;

/* Register the "my_event_flags_set_notify" function for monitoring
   event flags set in the event flags group "my_group." */
status = tx_event_flags_set_notify(&my_group,
                                   my_event_flags_set_notify);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the event flags set notification function
   was successfully registered. */

void my_event_flags_set_notify(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr)
    /* One or more event flags was set in this group! */

```

## See Also

- tx\_event\_flags\_create
- tx\_event\_flags\_delete
- tx\_event\_flags\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_event\_flags\_set

# tx\_interrupt\_control

Enable and disable interrupts

## Prototype

```

UINT tx_interrupt_control(UINT new_posture);

```

## Description

This service enables or disables interrupts as specified by the input parameter **new\_posture**.

### IMPORTANT

If this service is called from an application thread, the interrupt posture remains part of that thread's context. For example, if the thread calls this routine to disable interrupts and then suspends, when it is resumed, interrupts are disabled again.

### WARNING

This service should not be used to enable interrupts during initialization! Doing so could cause unpredictable results.

## Parameters

- **new\_posture**: This parameter specifies whether interrupts are disabled or enabled. Legal values include TX\_INT\_DISABLE and TX\_INT\_ENABLE. The actual values for these parameters are port specific. In addition, some processing architectures might support additional interrupt disable postures. Please see the *readme\_threadx.txt* information supplied on the distribution disk for more details.

## Return Values

- **previous posture**: This service returns the previous interrupt posture to the caller. This allows users of the service to restore the previous posture after interrupts are disabled.

## Allowed From



Threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
UINT my_old_posture;

/* Lockout interrupts */
my_old_posture = tx_interrupt_control(TX_INT_DISABLE);

/* Perform critical operations that need interrupts
   locked-out.... */

/* Restore previous interrupt lockout posture. */
tx_interrupt_control(my_old_posture);
```

### See Also

None

## tx\_mutex\_create

Create mutual exclusion mutex

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_mutex_create(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr,
                     CHAR *name_ptr, UINT priority_inherit);
```

### Description

This service creates a mutex for inter-thread mutual exclusion for resource protection.

### Parameters

- **mutex\_ptr**: Pointer to a mutex control block.
- **name\_ptr**: Pointer to the name of the mutex.
- **priority\_inherit**: Specifies whether or not this mutex supports priority inheritance. If this value is TX\_INHERIT, then priority inheritance is supported. However, if TX\_NO\_INHERIT is specified, priority inheritance is not supported by this mutex.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful mutex creation.
- **TX\_MUTEX\_ERROR**: (0x1C) Invalid mutex pointer. Either the pointer is NULL or the mutex is already created.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR**: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.
- **TX\_INHERIT\_ERROR**: (0x1F) Invalid priority inherit parameter.

### Allowed From

Initialization and threads

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
TX_MUTEX    my_mutex;
UINT        status;

/* Create a mutex to provide protection over a
   common resource. */
status = tx_mutex_create(&my_mutex, "my_mutex_name",
                        TX_NO_INHERIT);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_mutex is ready for
   use. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_mutex\_delete
- tx\_mutex\_get
- tx\_mutex\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_prioritize
- tx\_mutex\_put

# tx\_mutex\_delete

Delete mutual exclusion mutex

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_mutex_delete(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr);
```

## Description

This service deletes the specified mutex. All threads suspended waiting for the mutex are resumed and given a TX\_DELETED return status.

### IMPORTANT

It is the application's responsibility to prevent use of a deleted mutex.

## Parameters

- **mutex\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created mutex.

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS: (0x00) Successful mutex deletion.
- TX\_MUTEX\_ERROR: (0x1C) Invalid mutex pointer.
- TX\_CALLER\_ERROR: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```

TX_MUTEX    my_mutex;
UINT        status;

/* Delete a mutex. Assume that the mutex
   has already been created. */
status = tx_mutex_delete(&my_mutex);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the mutex is
   deleted. */

```

## See Also

- tx\_mutex\_create
- tx\_mutex\_get
- tx\_mutex\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_prioritize
- tx\_mutex\_put

## tx\_mutex\_get

Obtain ownership of mutex

### Prototype

```

UINT tx_mutex_get(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr, ULONG wait_option);

```

### Description

This service attempts to obtain exclusive ownership of the specified mutex. If the calling thread already owns the mutex, an internal counter is incremented and a successful status is returned.

If the mutex is owned by another thread and this thread is higher priority and priority inheritance was specified at mutex create, the lower priority thread's priority will be temporarily raised to that of the calling thread.

#### IMPORTANT

The priority of the lower priority thread owning a mutex with priority inheritance should never be modified by an external thread during mutex ownership.

### Parameters

- **mutex\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created mutex.
- **wait\_option**: Defines how the service behaves if the mutex is already owned by another thread. The wait options are defined as follows:
  - TX\_NO\_WAIT: (0x00000000)
  - TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER: (0xFFFFFFFF)
  - timeout value: (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFF)

Selecting TX\_NO\_WAIT results in an immediate return from this service regardless of whether or not it was successful. *This is the only valid option if the service is called from Initialization.*

Selecting TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until the mutex is available.

Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFF) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay

suspended while waiting for the mutex.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS:** (0x00) Successful mutex get operation.
- **TX\_DELETED:** (0x01) Mutex was deleted while thread was suspended.
- **TX\_NOT\_AVAILABLE:** (0x1D) Service was unable to get ownership of the mutex within the specified time to wait.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ABORTED:** (0x1A) Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.
- **TX\_MUTEX\_ERROR:** (0x1C) Invalid mutex pointer.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ERROR:** (0x04) A wait option other than TX\_NO\_WAIT was specified on a call from a nonthread.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR:** (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Initialization and threads and timers

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_MUTEX    my_mutex;
UINT        status;

/* Obtain exclusive ownership of the mutex "my_mutex".
   If the mutex "my_mutex" is not available, suspend until it
   becomes available. */
status = tx_mutex_get(&my_mutex, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);
```

### See Also

- tx\_mutex\_create
- tx\_mutex\_delete
- tx\_mutex\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_prioritize
- tx\_mutex\_put

## tx\_mutex\_info\_get

Retrieve information about mutex

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_mutex_info_get(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr, CHAR **name,
                      ULONG *count, TX_THREAD **owner,
                      TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
                      ULONG *suspended_count, TX_MUTEX **next_mutex);
```

### Description

This service retrieves information from the specified mutex.

### Parameters

- **mutex\_ptr:** Pointer to mutex control block.
- **name:** Pointer to destination for the pointer to the mutex's name.

- **count**: Pointer to destination for the ownership count of the mutex.
- **owner**: Pointer to destination for the owning thread's pointer.
- **first\_suspended**: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the thread that is first on the suspension list of this mutex.
- **suspended\_count**: Pointer to destination for the number of threads currently suspended on this mutex.
- **next\_mutex**: Pointer to destination for the pointer of the next created mutex.

#### IMPORTANT

Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.

#### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful mutex information retrieval.
- **TX\_MUTEX\_ERROR**: (0x1C) Invalid mutex pointer.

#### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

#### Preemption Possible

No

#### Example

```
TX_MUTEX    my_mutex;
CHAR        *name;
ULONG       count;
TX_THREAD   *owner;
TX_THREAD   *first_suspended;
ULONG       suspended_count;
TX_MUTEX    *next_mutex;
UINT        status;

/* Retrieve information about the previously created
   mutex "my_mutex." */
status = tx_mutex_info_get(&my_mutex, &name,
                          &count, &owner,
                          &first_suspended, &suspended_count,
                          &next_mutex);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is
   valid. */
```

#### See Also

- tx\_mutex\_create
- tx\_mutex\_delete
- tx\_mutex\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_prioritize
- tx\_mutex\_put

## tx\_mutex\_performance\_info\_get

Get mutex performance information

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_mutex_performance_info_get(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr, ULONG *puts,  
    ULONG *gets, ULONG *suspensions, ULONG *timeouts,  
    ULONG *inversions, ULONG *inheritances);
```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about the specified mutex.

### IMPORTANT

The ThreadX SMP library and application must be built with **TX\_MUTEX\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO** defined for this service to return performance information.

## Parameters

- **mutex\_ptr**: Pointer to previously created mutex.
- **puts**: Pointer to destination for the number of put requests performed on this mutex.
- **gets**: Pointer to destination for the number of get requests performed on this mutex.
- **suspensions**: Pointer to destination for the number of thread mutex get suspensions on this mutex.
- **timeouts**: Pointer to destination for the number of mutex get suspension timeouts on this mutex.
- **inversions**: Pointer to destination for the number of thread priority inversions on this mutex.
- **inheritances**: Pointer to destination for the number of thread priority inheritance operations on this mutex.

### IMPORTANT

Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful mutex performance get.
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR**: (0x03) Invalid mutex pointer.
- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED**: (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Example

```
TX_MUTEX    my_mutex;  
ULONG       puts;  
ULONG       gets;  
ULONG       suspensions;  
ULONG       timeouts;  
ULONG       inversions;  
ULONG       inheritances;  
  
/* Retrieve performance information on the previously created  
   mutex. */  
status = tx_mutex_performance_info_get(&my_mutex_ptr, &puts, &gets,  
    &suspensions, &timeouts, &inversions,  
    &inheritances);  
  
/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was  
   successfully retrieved. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_mutex\_create
- tx\_mutex\_delete
- tx\_mutex\_get
- tx\_mutex\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_prioritize
- tx\_mutex\_put

## tx\_mutex\_performance\_system\_info\_get

Get mutex system performance information

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_mutex_performance_system_info_get(ULONG *puts, ULONG *gets,  
                                           ULONG *suspensions, ULONG *timeouts,  
                                           ULONG *inversions, ULONG *inheritances);
```

### Description

This service retrieves performance information about all the mutexes in the system.

#### IMPORTANT

The ThreadX SMP library and application must be built with **TX\_MUTEX\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO** defined for this service to return performance information.

### Parameters

- **puts**: Pointer to destination for the total number of put requests performed on all mutexes.
- **gets**: Pointer to destination for the total number of get requests performed on all mutexes.
- **suspensions**: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread mutex get suspensions on all mutexes.
- **timeouts**: Pointer to destination for the total number of mutex get suspension timeouts on all mutexes.
- **inversions**: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread priority inversions on all mutexes.
- **inheritances**: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread priority inheritance operations on all mutexes.

#### IMPORTANT

Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful mutex system performance get.
- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED**: (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Example

```

ULONG      puts;
ULONG      gets;
ULONG      suspensions;
ULONG      timeouts;
ULONG      inversions;
ULONG      inheritances;

/* Retrieve performance information on all previously created
   mutexes. */
status = tx_mutex_performance_system_info_get(&puts, &gets,
                                              &suspensions, &timeouts,
                                              &inversions, &inheritances);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
   successfully retrieved. */

```

## See Also

- tx\_mutex\_create
- tx\_mutex\_delete
- tx\_mutex\_get
- tx\_mutex\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_prioritize
- tx\_mutex\_put

## tx\_mutex\_prioritize

Prioritize mutex suspension list

### Prototype

```

UINT tx_mutex_prioritize(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr);

```

### Description

This service places the highest priority thread suspended for ownership of the mutex at the front of the suspension list. All other threads remain in the same FIFO order they were suspended in.

### Parameters

- **mutex\_ptr**: Pointer to the previously created mutex.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful mutex prioritize.
- **TX\_MUTEX\_ERROR**: (0x1C) Invalid mutex pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example



```
TX_MUTEX    my_mutex;
UINT        status;

/* Ensure that the highest priority thread will receive
ownership of the mutex when it becomes available. */
status = tx_mutex_prioritize(&my_mutex);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the highest priority
suspended thread is at the front of the list. The
next tx_mutex_put call that releases ownership of the
mutex will give ownership to this thread and wake it
up. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_mutex\_create
- tx\_mutex\_delete
- tx\_mutex\_get
- tx\_mutex\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_put

## tx\_mutex\_put

Release ownership of mutex

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_mutex_put(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr);
```

## Description

This service decrements the ownership count of the specified mutex. If the ownership count is zero, the mutex is made available.

### IMPORTANT

If priority inheritance was selected during mutex creation, the priority of the releasing thread will be restored to the priority it had when it originally obtained ownership of the mutex. Any other priority changes made to the releasing thread during ownership of the mutex may be undone.

## Parameters

- **mutex\_ptr**: Pointer to the previously created mutex.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful mutex release.
- **TX\_NOT\_OWNED**: (0x1E) Mutex is not owned by caller.
- **TX\_MUTEX\_ERROR**: (0x1C) Invalid pointer to mutex.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR**: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Initialization and threads and timers

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_MUTEX      my_mutex;
UINT          status;
/* Release ownership of "my_mutex." */
status = tx_mutex_put(&my_mutex);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the mutex ownership
   count has been decremented and if zero, released. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_mutex\_create
- tx\_mutex\_delete
- tx\_mutex\_get
- tx\_mutex\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_mutex\_prioritize

# tx\_queue\_create

Create message queue

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_create(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr, CHAR *name_ptr,
                    UINT message_size,
                    VOID *queue_start, ULONG queue_size);
```

## Description

This service creates a message queue that is typically used for interthread communication. The total number of messages is calculated from the specified message size and the total number of bytes in the queue.

### IMPORTANT

If the total number of bytes specified in the queue's memory area is not evenly divisible by the specified message size, the remaining bytes in the memory area are not used.

## Parameters

- **queue\_ptr**: Pointer to a message queue control block.
- **name\_ptr**: Pointer to the name of the message queue.
- **message\_size**: Specifies the size of each message in the queue. Message sizes range from 1 32-bit word to 16 32-bit words. Valid message size options are numerical values from 1 through 16, inclusive.
- **queue\_start**: Starting address of the message queue. The starting address must be aligned to the size of the ULONG data type.
- **queue\_size**: Total number of bytes available for the message queue.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful message queue creation.
- **TX\_QUEUE\_ERROR**: (0x09) Invalid message queue pointer. Either the pointer is NULL or the queue is already created.

- TX\_PTR\_ERROR: (0x03) Invalid starting address of the message queue.
- TX\_SIZE\_ERROR: (0x05) Size of message queue is invalid.
- TX\_CALLER\_ERROR: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Initialization and threads

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
TX_QUEUE    my_queue;
UINT        status;

/* Create a message queue whose total size is 2000 bytes
   starting at address 0x300000. Each message in this
   queue is defined to be 4 32-bit words long. */
status = tx_queue_create(&my_queue, "my_queue_name",
                        4, (VOID *) 0x300000, 2000);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_queue contains room
   for storing 125 messages (2000 bytes/ 16 bytes per
   message). */
```

### See Also

- tx\_queue\_delete
- tx\_queue\_flush
- tx\_queue\_front\_send
- tx\_queue\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_prioritize
- tx\_queue\_receive
- tx\_queue\_send
- tx\_queue\_send\_notify

## tx\_queue\_delete

Delete message queue

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_delete(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr);
```

### Description

This service deletes the specified message queue. All threads suspended waiting for a message from this queue are resumed and given a TX\_DELETED return status.

#### IMPORTANT

The application must ensure that any send notify callback for this queue is completed (or disabled) before deleting the queue. In addition, the application must prevent any future use of a deleted queue.

*It is also the application's responsibility to manage the memory area associated with the queue, which is available after this service completes.*

### Parameters

- **queue\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created message queue.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful message queue deletion.
- **TX\_QUEUE\_ERROR**: (0x09) Invalid message queue pointer.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR**: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_QUEUE    my_queue;
UINT        status;

/* Delete entire message queue. Assume that the queue
   has already been created with a call to
   tx_queue_create. */
status = tx_queue_delete(&my_queue);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the message queue is
   deleted. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_queue\_create
- tx\_queue\_flush
- tx\_queue\_front\_send
- tx\_queue\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_prioritize
- tx\_queue\_receive
- tx\_queue\_send
- tx\_queue\_send\_notify

## tx\_queue\_flush

Empty messages in message queue

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_flush(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr);
```

### Description

This service deletes all messages stored in the specified message queue. If the queue is full, messages of all suspended threads are discarded. Each suspended thread is then resumed with a return status that indicates the message send was successful. If the queue is empty, this service does nothing.

### Parameters

- **queue\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created message queue.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful message queue flush.
- **TX\_QUEUE\_ERROR**: (0x09) Invalid message queue pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_QUEUE    my_queue;
UINT        status;

/* Flush out all pending messages in the specified message
   queue. Assume that the queue has already been created
   with a call to tx_queue_create. */
status = tx_queue_flush(&my_queue);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the message queue is
   empty. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_queue\_create
- tx\_queue\_delete
- tx\_queue\_front\_send
- tx\_queue\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_prioritize
- tx\_queue\_receive
- tx\_queue\_send
- tx\_queue\_send\_notify

## tx\_queue\_front\_send

Send message to the front of queue

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_front_send(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr,
                        VOID *source_ptr, ULONG wait_option);
```

### Description

This service sends a message to the front location of the specified message queue. The message is **copied** to the front of the queue from the memory area specified by the source pointer.

### Parameters

- **queue\_ptr**: Pointer to a message queue control block.
- **source\_ptr**: Pointer to the message.

- **wait\_option**: Defines how the service behaves if the message queue is full. The wait options are defined as follows:

- **TX\_NO\_WAIT**: (0x00000000)
- **TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER**: (0xFFFFFFFF)
- timeout value: (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)

Selecting TX\_NO\_WAIT results in an immediate return from this service regardless of whether or not it was successful. *This is the only valid option if the service is called from a non-thread; e.g., Initialization, timer, or ISR.*

Selecting TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until there is room in the queue.

Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFFE) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay suspended while waiting for room in the queue.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful sending of message.
- **TX\_DELETED**: (0x01) Message queue was deleted while thread was suspended.
- **TX\_QUEUE\_FULL**: (0x0B) Service was unable to send message because the queue was full for the duration of the specified time to wait.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ABORTED**: (0x1A) Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.
- **TX\_QUEUE\_ERROR**: (0x09) Invalid message queue pointer.
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR**: (0x03) Invalid source pointer for message.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ERROR**: (0x04) A wait option other than TX\_NO\_WAIT was specified on a call from a nonthread.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_QUEUE    my_queue;
UINT        status;
ULONG       my_message[4];

/* Send a message to the front of "my_queue." Return
   immediately, regardless of success. This wait
   option is used for calls from initialization, timers,
   and ISRs. */
status = tx_queue_front_send(&my_queue, my_message,
                             TX_NO_WAIT);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the message is at the front
   of the specified queue. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_queue\_create
- tx\_queue\_delete
- tx\_queue\_flush
- tx\_queue\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_info\_get

- tx\_queue\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_prioritize
- tx\_queue\_receive
- tx\_queue\_send
- tx\_queue\_send\_notify

## tx\_queue\_info\_get

Retrieve information about queue

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_info_get(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr, CHAR **name,
    ULONG *enqueued, ULONG *available_storage
    TX_THREAD **first_suspended, ULONG *suspended_count,
    TX_QUEUE **next_queue);
```

### Description

This service retrieves information about the specified message queue.

### Parameters

- **queue\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created message queue.
- **name**: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the queue's name.
- **enqueued**: Pointer to destination for the number of messages currently in the queue.
- **available\_storage**: Pointer to destination for the number of messages the queue currently has space for.
- **first\_suspended**: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the thread that is first on the suspension list of this queue.
- **suspended\_count**: Pointer to destination for the number of threads currently suspended on this queue.
- **next\_queue**: Pointer to destination for the pointer of the next created queue.

#### IMPORTANT

Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.

### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS: (0x00) Successful queue information get.
- TX\_QUEUE\_ERROR: (0x09) Invalid message queue pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```

TX_QUEUE    my_queue;
CHAR        *name;
ULONG       enqueued;
ULONG       available_storage;
TX_THREAD   *first_suspended;
ULONG       suspended_count;
TX_QUEUE    *next_queue;
UINT        status;

/* Retrieve information about the previously created
   message queue "my_queue." */
status = tx_queue_info_get(&my_queue, &name,
                          &enqueued, &available_storage,
                          &first_suspended, &suspended_count,
                          &next_queue);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is
   valid. */

```

## See Also

- [tx\\_queue\\_create](#)
- [tx\\_queue\\_delete](#)
- [tx\\_queue\\_flush](#)
- [tx\\_queue\\_front\\_send](#)
- [tx\\_queue\\_performance\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_queue\\_performance\\_system\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_queue\\_prioritize](#)
- [tx\\_queue\\_receive](#)
- [tx\\_queue\\_send](#)
- [tx\\_queue\\_send\\_notify](#)

# tx\_queue\_performance\_info\_get

Get queue performance information

## Prototype

```

UINT tx_queue_performance_info_get(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr,
                                   ULONG *messages_sent, ULONG *messages_received,
                                   ULONG *empty_suspensions, ULONG *full_suspensions,
                                   ULONG *full_errors, ULONG *timeouts);

```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about the specified queue.

### IMPORTANT

The ThreadX SMP library and application must be built with **TX\_QUEUE\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO** defined for this service to return performance information.

## Parameters

- **queue\_ptr**: Pointer to previously created queue.
- **messages\_sent**: Pointer to destination for the number of send requests performed on this queue.
- **messages\_received**: Pointer to destination for the number of receive requests performed on this queue.



- **empty\_suspensions**: Pointer to destination for the number of queue empty suspensions on this queue.
- **full\_suspensions**: Pointer to destination for the number of queue full suspensions on this queue.
- **full\_errors**: Pointer to destination for the number of queue full errors on this queue.
- **timeouts**: Pointer to destination for the number of thread suspension timeouts on this queue.

#### IMPORTANT

Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.

#### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful queue performance get.
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR**: (0x03) Invalid queue pointer.
- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED**: (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

#### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

#### Example

```
TX_QUEUE    my_queue;
ULONG       messages_sent;
ULONG       messages_received;
ULONG       empty_suspensions;
ULONG       full_suspensions;
ULONG       full_errors;
ULONG       timeouts;

/* Retrieve performance information on the previously created
   queue. */
status = tx_queue_performance_info_get(&my_queue, &messages_sent,
                                       &messages_received, &empty_suspensions,
                                       &full_suspensions, &full_errors, &timeouts);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
   successfully retrieved. */
```

#### See Also

- tx\_queue\_create
- tx\_queue\_delete
- tx\_queue\_flush
- tx\_queue\_front\_send
- tx\_queue\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_prioritize
- tx\_queue\_receive
- tx\_queue\_send
- tx\_queue\_send\_notify

## tx\_queue\_performance\_system\_info\_get

Get queue system performance information

#### Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_performance_system_info_get(ULONG *messages_sent,
    ULONG *messages_received, ULONG *empty_suspensions,
    ULONG *full_suspensions, ULONG *full_errors,
    ULONG *timeouts);
```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about all the queues in the system.

### IMPORTANT

The ThreadX SMP library and application must be built with **TX\_QUEUE\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO** defined for this service to return performance information.

## Parameters

- **messages\_sent**: Pointer to destination for the total number of send requests performed on all queues.
- **messages\_received**: Pointer to destination for the total number of receive requests performed on all queues.
- **empty\_suspensions**: Pointer to destination for the total number of queue empty suspensions on all queues.
- **full\_suspensions**: Pointer to destination for the total number of queue full suspensions on all queues.
- **full\_errors**: Pointer to destination for the total number of queue full errors on all queues.
- **timeouts**: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread suspension timeouts on all queues.

### IMPORTANT

Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful queue system performance get.
- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED**: (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Example

```
ULONG      messages_sent;
ULONG      messages_received;
ULONG      empty_suspensions;
ULONG      full_suspensions;
ULONG      full_errors;
ULONG      timeouts;

/* Retrieve performance information on all previously created
   queues. */
status = tx_queue_performance_system_info_get(&messages_sent,
    &messages_received, &empty_suspensions,
    &full_suspensions, &full_errors, &timeouts);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
   successfully retrieved. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_queue\_create
- tx\_queue\_delete

- tx\_queue\_flush
- tx\_queue\_front\_send
- tx\_queue\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_prioritize
- tx\_queue\_receive
- tx\_queue\_send
- tx\_queue\_send\_notify

## tx\_queue\_prioritize

Prioritize queue suspension list

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_prioritize(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr);
```

### Description

This service places the highest priority thread suspended for a message (or to place a message) on this queue at the front of the suspension list. All other threads remain in the same FIFO order they were suspended in.

### Parameters

- **queue\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created message queue.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful queue prioritize.
- **TX\_QUEUE\_ERROR**: (0x09) Invalid message queue pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
TX_QUEUE    my_queue;
UINT        status;

/* Ensure that the highest priority thread will receive
   the next message placed on this queue. */
status = tx_queue_prioritize(&my_queue);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the highest priority
   suspended thread is at the front of the list. The
   next tx_queue_send or tx_queue_front_send call made
   to this queue will wake up this thread. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_queue\_create
- tx\_queue\_delete
- tx\_queue\_flush
- tx\_queue\_front\_send
- tx\_queue\_info\_get

- tx\_queue\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_receive
- tx\_queue\_send
- tx\_queue\_send\_notify

## tx\_queue\_receive

Get message from message queue

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_receive(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr,
                     VOID *destination_ptr, ULONG wait_option);
```

### Description

This service retrieves a message from the specified message queue. The retrieved message is **copied** from the queue into the memory area specified by the destination pointer. That message is then removed from the queue.

#### WARNING

The specified destination memory area must be large enough to hold the message; i.e., the message destination pointed to by **destination\_ptr** must be at least as large as the message size for this queue. Otherwise, if the destination is not large enough, memory corruption occurs in the following memory area.

### Parameters

- **queue\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created message queue.
- **destination\_ptr**: Location of where to copy the message.
- **wait\_option**: Defines how the service behaves if the message queue is empty. The wait options are defined as follows:
  - **TX\_NO\_WAIT**: (0x00000000)
  - **TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER**: (0xFFFFFFFF)
  - timeout value: (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)

Selecting TX\_NO\_WAIT results in an immediate return from this service regardless of whether or not it was successful. This is the only valid option if the service is called from a non-thread; e.g., Initialization, timer, or ISR.

Selecting TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until a message is available.

Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFFE) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay suspended while waiting for a message.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful retrieval of message.
- **TX\_DELETED**: (0x01) Message queue was deleted while thread was suspended.
- **TX\_QUEUE\_EMPTY**: (0x0A) Service was unable to retrieve a message because the queue was empty for the duration of the specified time to wait.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ABORTED**: (0x1A) Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.
- **TX\_QUEUE\_ERROR**: (0x09) Invalid message queue pointer.

- TX\_PTR\_ERROR: (0x03) Invalid destination pointer for message.
- TX\_WAIT\_ERROR: (0x04) A wait option other than TX\_NO\_WAIT was specified on a call from a nonthread.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_QUEUE    my_queue;
UINT        status;
ULONG my_message[4];

/* Retrieve a message from "my_queue." If the queue is
   empty, suspend until a message is present. Note that
   this suspension is only possible from application
   threads. */
status = tx_queue_receive(&my_queue, my_message,
                        TX_WAIT_FOREVER);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the message is in
   "my_message." */
```

### See Also

- tx\_queue\_create
- tx\_queue\_delete
- tx\_queue\_flush
- tx\_queue\_front\_send
- tx\_queue\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_prioritize
- tx\_queue\_send
- tx\_queue\_send\_notify

## tx\_queue\_send

Send message to message queue

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_send(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr,
                  VOID *source_ptr, ULONG wait_option);
```

### Description

This service sends a message to the specified message queue. The sent message is **copied** to the queue from the memory area specified by the source pointer.

### Parameters

- **queue\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created message queue.
- **source\_ptr**: Pointer to the message.
- **wait\_option**: Defines how the service behaves if the message queue is full. The wait options are defined

as follows:

- **TX\_NO\_WAIT**: (0x00000000)
- **TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER**: (0xFFFFFFFF)
- timeout value: (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)

Selecting TX\_NO\_WAIT results in an immediate return from this service regardless of whether or not it was successful. *This is the only valid option if the service is called from a non-thread; e.g., Initialization, timer, or ISR.*

Selecting TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until there is room in the queue.

Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFFE) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay suspended while waiting for room in the queue.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful sending of message.
- **TX\_DELETED**: (0x01) Message queue was deleted while thread was suspended.
- **TX\_QUEUE\_FULL**: (0x0B) Service was unable to send message because the queue was full for the duration of the specified time to wait.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ABORTED**: (0x1A) Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.
- **TX\_QUEUE\_ERROR**: (0x09) Invalid message queue pointer.
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR**: (0x03) Invalid source pointer for message.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ERROR**: (0x04) A wait option other than TX\_NO\_WAIT was specified on a call from a nonthread.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_QUEUE my_queue;
UINT status;
ULONG my_message[4];

/* Send a message to "my_queue." Return immediately,
   regardless of success. This wait option is used for
   calls from initialization, timers, and ISRs. */
status = tx_queue_send(&my_queue, my_message, TX_NO_WAIT);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the message is in the
   queue. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_queue\_create
- tx\_queue\_delete
- tx\_queue\_flush
- tx\_queue\_front\_send
- tx\_queue\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_prioritize

- tx\_queue\_receive
- tx\_queue\_send\_notify

## tx\_queue\_send\_notify

Notify application when message is sent to queue

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_queue_send_notify(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr,  
                          VOID (*queue_send_notify)(TX_QUEUE *));
```

### Description

This service registers a notification callback function that is called whenever a message is sent to the specified queue. The processing of the notification callback is defined by the application.

#### NOTE

The application's queue send notification callback is not allowed to call any ThreadX SMP API with a suspension option.

### Parameters

- **queue\_ptr**: Pointer to previously created queue.
- **queue\_send\_notify**: Pointer to application's queue send notification function. If this value is TX\_NULL, notification is disabled.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful registration of queue send notification.
- **TX\_QUEUE\_ERROR**: (0x09) Invalid queue pointer.
- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED**: (0xFF) The system was compiled with notification capabilities disabled.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Example

```
TX_QUEUE      my_queue;  
  
/* Register the "my_queue_send_notify" function for monitoring  
   messages sent to the queue "my_queue." */  
status = tx_queue_send_notify(&my_queue, my_queue_send_notify);  
  
/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the queue send notification function was  
   successfully registered. */  
void my_queue_send_notify(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr)  
{  
    /* A message was just sent to this queue! */  
}
```

### See Also

- tx\_queue\_create
- tx\_queue\_delete
- tx\_queue\_flush
- tx\_queue\_front\_send
- tx\_queue\_info\_get

- tx\_queue\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_queue\_prioritize
- tx\_queue\_receive
- tx\_queue\_send

## tx\_semaphore\_ceiling\_put

Place an instance in counting semaphore with ceiling

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_ceiling_put(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr,
                              ULONG ceiling);
```

### Description

This service puts an instance into the specified counting semaphore, which in reality increments the counting semaphore by one. If the counting semaphore's current value is greater than or equal to the specified ceiling, the instance will not be put and a TX\_CEILING\_EXCEEDED error will be returned.

### Parameters

- **semaphore\_ptr**: Pointer to previously created semaphore.
- **ceiling**: Maximum limit allowed for the semaphore (valid values range from 1 through 0xFFFFFFFF).

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful semaphore ceiling put.
- **TX\_CEILING\_EXCEEDED**: (0x21) Put request exceeds ceiling.
- **TX\_INVALID\_CEILING**: (0x22) An invalid value of zero was supplied for ceiling.
- **TX\_SEMAPHORE\_ERROR**: (0x0C) Invalid semaphore pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Example

```
TX_SEMAPHORE    my_semaphore;

/* Increment the counting semaphore "my_semaphore" but make sure
   that it never exceeds 7 as specified in the call. */
status = tx_semaphore_ceiling_put(&my_semaphore, 7);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the semaphore count has been
```

### See Also

- tx\_semaphore\_create
- tx\_semaphore\_delete
- tx\_semaphore\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_prioritize
- tx\_semaphore\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_put\_notify



# tx\_semaphore\_create

Create counting semaphore

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_create(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr,  
                        CHAR *name_ptr, ULONG initial_count);
```

## Description

This service creates a counting semaphore for inter-thread synchronization. The initial semaphore count is specified as an input parameter.

## Parameters

- **semaphore\_ptr**: Pointer to a semaphore control block.
- **name\_ptr**: Pointer to the name of the semaphore.
- **initial\_count**: Specifies the initial count for this semaphore. Legal values range from 0x00000000 through 0xFFFFFFFF.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful semaphore creation.
- **TX\_SEMAPHORE\_ERROR**: (0x0C) Invalid semaphore pointer. Either the pointer is NULL or the semaphore is already created.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR**: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Initialization and threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_SEMAPHORE my_semaphore;  
UINT          status;  
  
/* Create a counting semaphore whose initial value is 1.  
   This is typically the technique used to make a binary  
   semaphore. Binary semaphores are used to provide  
   protection over a common resource. */  
status = tx_semaphore_create(&my_semaphore,  
                            "my_semaphore_name", 1);  
  
/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_semaphore is ready for  
   use. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_semaphore\_ceiling\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_delete
- tx\_semaphore\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_prioritize

- tx\_semaphore\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_put\_notify

## tx\_semaphore\_delete

Delete counting semaphore

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_delete(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr);
```

### Description

This service deletes the specified counting semaphore. All threads suspended waiting for a semaphore instance are resumed and given a TX\_DELETED return status.

#### IMPORTANT

The application must ensure that a put notify callback for this semaphore is completed (or disabled) before deleting the semaphore. In addition, the application must prevent all future use of a deleted semaphore.

### Parameters

- **semaphore\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created semaphore.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful counting semaphore deletion.
- **TX\_SEMAPHORE\_ERROR**: (0x0C) Invalid counting semaphore pointer.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR**: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_SEMAPHORE my_semaphore;
UINT          status;

/* Delete counting semaphore. Assume that the counting
   semaphore has already been created. */
status = tx_semaphore_delete(&my_semaphore);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the counting semaphore is
   deleted. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_semaphore\_ceiling\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_create
- tx\_semaphore\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_system\_info\_get

- tx\_semaphore\_prioritize
- tx\_semaphore\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_put\_notify

## tx\_semaphore\_get

Get instance from counting semaphore

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_get(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr,
                     ULONG wait_option)
```

### Description

This service retrieves an instance (a single count) from the specified counting semaphore. As a result, the specified semaphore's count is decreased by one.

### Parameters

- **semaphore\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created counting semaphore.
- **wait\_option**: Defines how the service behaves if there are no instances of the semaphore available; i.e., the semaphore count is zero. The wait options are defined as follows:
  - **TX\_NO\_WAIT**: (0x00000000)
  - **TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER**: (0xFFFFFFFF)
  - timeout value: (0x00000001 through 0xFFFFFFFFE)

Selecting TX\_NO\_WAIT results in an immediate return from this service regardless of whether or not it was successful. *This is the only valid option if the service is called from a non-thread; e.g., initialization, timer, or ISR.*

Selecting TX\_WAIT\_FOREVER causes the calling thread to suspend indefinitely until a semaphore instance is available.

Selecting a numeric value (1-0xFFFFFFFFE) specifies the maximum number of timer-ticks to stay suspended while waiting for a semaphore instance.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful retrieval of a semaphore instance.
- **TX\_DELETED**: (0x01) Counting semaphore was deleted while thread was suspended.
- **TX\_NO\_INSTANCE**: (0x0D) Service was unable to retrieve an instance of the counting semaphore (semaphore count is zero within the specified time to wait).
- **TX\_WAIT\_ABORTED**: (0x1A) Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.
- **TX\_SEMAPHORE\_ERROR**: (0x0C) Invalid counting semaphore pointer.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ERROR**: (0x04) A wait option other than TX\_NO\_WAIT was specified on a call from a non-thread.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```

TX_SEMAPHORE my_semaphore;
UINT          status;

/* Get a semaphore instance from the semaphore
   "my_semaphore." If the semaphore count is zero,
   suspend until an instance becomes available.
   Note that this suspension is only possible from
   application threads. */
status = tx_semaphore_get(&my_semaphore, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the thread has obtained
   an instance of the semaphore. */

```

## See Also

- tx\_semaphore\_ceiling\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_create
- tx\_semaphore\_delete
- tx\_semaphore\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_prioritize
- tx\_semaphore\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_put\_notify

## tx\_semaphore\_info\_get

Retrieve information about semaphore

### Prototype

```

UINT tx_semaphore_info_get(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr,
                           CHAR **name, ULONG *current_value,
                           TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
                           ULONG *suspended_count,
                           TX_SEMAPHORE **next_semaphore)

```

### Description

This service retrieves information about the specified semaphore.

### Parameters

- **semaphore\_ptr**: Pointer to semaphore control block.
- **name**: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the semaphore's name.
- **current\_value**: Pointer to destination for the current semaphore's count.
- **first\_suspended**: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the thread that is first on the suspension list of this semaphore.
- **suspended\_count**: Pointer to destination for the number of threads currently suspended on this semaphore.
- **next\_semaphore**: Pointer to destination for the pointer of the next created semaphore.

### IMPORTANT

Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS:** (0x00) Successful semaphore information retrieval.
- **TX\_SEMAPHORE\_ERROR:** (0x0C) Invalid semaphore pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
TX_SEMAPHORE my_semaphore;
CHAR          *name;
ULONG         current_value;
TX_THREAD     *first_suspended;
ULONG         suspended_count;
TX_SEMAPHORE *next_semaphore;
UINT          status;

/* Retrieve information about the previously created
   semaphore "my_semaphore." */
status = tx_semaphore_info_get(&my_semaphore, &name,
                              &current_value,
                              &first_suspended, &suspended_count,
                              &next_semaphore);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is
   valid. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_semaphore\_ceiling\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_create
- tx\_semaphore\_delete
- tx\_semaphore\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_prioritize
- tx\_semaphore\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_put\_notify

## tx\_semaphore\_performance\_info\_get

Get semaphore performance information

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_performance_info_get(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr,
                                       ULONG *puts, ULONG *gets,
                                       ULONG *suspensions, ULONG *timeouts);
```

### Description

This service retrieves performance information about the specified semaphore.

#### NOTE

The ThreadX SMP library and application must be built with `TX_SEMAPHORE_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO` defined for this service to return performance information.

#### Parameters

- **semaphore\_ptr**: Pointer to previously created semaphore.
- **puts**: Pointer to destination for the number of put requests performed on this semaphore.
- **gets**: Pointer to destination for the number of get requests performed on this semaphore.
- **suspensions**: Pointer to destination for the number of thread suspensions on this semaphore.
- **timeouts**: Pointer to destination for the number of thread suspension timeouts on this semaphore.

#### IMPORTANT

Supplying a `TX_NULL` for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.

#### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful semaphore performance get.
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR**: (0x03) Invalid semaphore pointer.
- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED**: (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

#### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

#### Example

```
TX_SEMAPHORE    my_semaphore;
ULONG           puts;
ULONG           gets;
ULONG           suspensions;
ULONG           timeouts;

/* Retrieve performance information on the previously created
   semaphore. */
status = tx_semaphore_performance_info_get(&my_semaphore, &puts,
                                           &gets, &suspensions, &timeouts);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
   successfully retrieved. */
```

#### See Also

- `tx_semaphore_ceiling_put`
- `tx_semaphore_create`
- `tx_semaphore_delete`
- `tx_semaphore_get`
- `tx_semaphore_info_get`
- `tx_semaphore_performance_system_info_get`
- `tx_semaphore_prioritize`
- `tx_semaphore_put`
- `tx_semaphore_put_notify`

## tx\_semaphore\_performance\_system\_info\_get

Get semaphore system performance information

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_performance_system_info_get(ULONG *puts,  
                                              ULONG *gets, ULONG *suspensions, ULONG *timeouts);
```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about all the semaphores in the system.

### IMPORTANT

The ThreadX SMP library and application must be built with **TX\_SEMAPHORE\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO** defined for this service to return performance information.

## Parameters

- **puts**: Pointer to destination for the total number of put requests performed on all semaphores.
- **gets**: Pointer to destination for the total number of get requests performed on all semaphores.
- **suspensions**: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread suspensions on all semaphores.
- **timeouts**: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread suspension timeouts on all semaphores.

### IMPORTANT

Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful semaphore system performance get.
- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED**: (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Example

```
ULONG      puts;  
ULONG      gets;  
ULONG      suspensions;  
ULONG      timeouts;  
  
/* Retrieve performance information on all previously created  
   semaphores. */  
status = tx_semaphore_performance_system_info_get(&puts, &gets,  
                                                  &suspensions, &timeouts);  
  
/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was  
   successfully retrieved. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_semaphore\_ceiling\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_create
- tx\_semaphore\_delete
- tx\_semaphore\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_info\_get

- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_prioritize
- tx\_semaphore\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_put\_notify

## tx\_semaphore\_prioritize

Prioritize semaphore suspension list

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_prioritize(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr);
```

### Description

This service places the highest priority thread suspended for an instance of the semaphore at the front of the suspension list. All other threads remain in the same FIFO order they were suspended in.

### Parameters

- **semaphore\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created semaphore.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful semaphore prioritize.
- **TX\_SEMAPHORE\_ERROR**: (0x0C) Invalid counting semaphore pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
TX_SEMAPHORE my_semaphore;
UINT          status;

/* Ensure that the highest priority thread will receive
   the next instance of this semaphore. */
status = tx_semaphore_prioritize(&my_semaphore);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the highest priority
   suspended thread is at the front of the list. The
   next tx_semaphore_put call made to this semaphore will
   wake up this thread. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_semaphore\_create
- tx\_semaphore\_delete
- tx\_semaphore\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_put

## tx\_semaphore\_put

Place an instance in counting semaphore



## Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_put(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr);
```

## Description

This service puts an instance into the specified counting semaphore, which in reality increments the counting semaphore by one.

### IMPORTANT

If this service is called when the semaphore is all ones (0xFFFFFFFF), the new put operation will cause the semaphore to be reset to zero.

## Parameters

- **semaphore\_ptr**: Pointer to the previously created counting semaphore control block.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful semaphore put.
- **TX\_SEMAPHORE\_ERROR**: (0x0C) Invalid pointer to counting semaphore.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_SEMAPHORE    my_semaphore;  
UINT            status;  
  
/* Increment the counting semaphore "my_semaphore." */  
status = tx_semaphore_put(&my_semaphore);  
  
/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the semaphore count has  
   been incremented. Of course, if a thread was waiting,  
   it was given the semaphore instance and resumed. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_semaphore\_ceiling\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_create
- tx\_semaphore\_delete
- tx\_semaphore\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_prioritize
- tx\_semaphore\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_put\_notify

## tx\_semaphore\_put\_notify

Notify application when semaphore is put

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_semaphore_put_notify(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr,  
                             VOID (*semaphore_put_notify)(TX_SEMAPHORE *));
```

## Description

This service registers a notification callback function that is called whenever the specified semaphore is put. The processing of the notification callback is defined by the application.

### NOTE

The application's semaphore notification callback is not allowed to call any ThreadX SMP API with a suspension option.

## Parameters

- **semaphore\_ptr**: Pointer to previously created semaphore.
- **semaphore\_put\_notify**: Pointer to application's semaphore put notification function. If this value is TX\_NULL, notification is disabled.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful registration of semaphore put notification.
- **TX\_SEMAPHORE\_ERROR**: (0x0C) Invalid semaphore pointer.
- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED**: (0xFF) The system was compiled with notification capabilities disabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Example

```
TX_SEMAPHORE    my_semaphore;  
  
/* Register the "my_semaphore_put_notify" function for monitoring  
   the put operations on the semaphore "my_semaphore." */  
status = tx_semaphore_put_notify(&my_semaphore,  
                                 my_semaphore_put_notify);  
  
/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the semaphore put notification function  
   was successfully registered. */  
  
void my_semaphore_put_notify(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr)  
{  
    /* The semaphore was just put! */  
}
```

## See Also

- tx\_semaphore\_ceiling\_put
- tx\_semaphore\_create
- tx\_semaphore\_delete
- tx\_semaphore\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_semaphore\_prioritize
- tx\_semaphore\_put

# tx\_thread\_create

Create application thread

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_create(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
                     CHAR *name_ptr, VOID (*entry_function)(ULONG),
                     ULONG entry_input, VOID *stack_start,
                     ULONG stack_size, UINT priority,
                     UINT preempt_threshold, ULONG time_slice,
                     UINT auto_start);
```

## Description

This service creates an application thread that starts execution at the specified task entry function. The stack, priority, preemption-threshold, and time-slice are among the attributes specified by the input parameters. In addition, the initial execution state of the thread is also specified.

## Parameters

- **thread\_ptr**: Pointer to a thread control block.
- **name\_ptr**: Pointer to the name of the thread.
- **entry\_function**: Specifies the initial C function for thread execution. When a thread returns from this entry function, it is placed in a completed state and suspended indefinitely.
- **entry\_input**: A 32-bit value that is passed to the thread's entry function when it first executes. The use for this input is determined exclusively by the application.
- **stack\_start**: Starting address of the stack's memory area.
- **stack\_size**: Number bytes in the stack memory area. The thread's stack area must be large enough to handle its worst-case function call nesting and local variable usage.
- **priority**: Numerical priority of thread. Legal values range from 0 through (TX\_MAX\_PRIORITIES-1), where a value of 0 represents the highest priority.
- **preempt\_threshold**: Highest priority level (0 through (TX\_MAX\_PRIORITIES-1)) of disabled preemption. Only priorities higher than this level are allowed to preempt this thread. This value must be less than or equal to the specified priority. A value equal to the thread priority disables preemption-threshold.
- **time\_slice**: Number of timer-ticks this thread is allowed to run before other ready threads of the same priority are given a chance to run. Note that using preemption-threshold disables time-slicing. Legal time-slice values range from 1 to 0xFFFFFFFF (inclusive). A value of **TX\_NO\_TIME\_SLICE** (a value of 0) disables time-slicing of this thread.

### IMPORTANT

Using time-slicing results in a slight amount of system overhead. Since time-slicing is only useful in cases where multiple threads share the same priority, threads having a unique priority should not be assigned a time-slice.

- **auto\_start**: Specifies whether the thread starts immediately or is placed in a suspended state. Legal options are **TX\_AUTO\_START** (0x01) and **TX\_DONT\_START** (0x00). If **TX\_DONT\_START** is specified, the application must later call **tx\_thread\_resume** in order for the thread to run.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful thread creation.

- TX\_THREAD\_ERROR: (0x0E) Invalid thread control pointer. Either the pointer is NULL or the thread is already created.
- TX\_PTR\_ERROR: (0x03) Invalid starting address of the entry point or the stack area is invalid, usually NULL.
- TX\_SIZE\_ERROR: (0x05) Size of stack area is invalid. Threads must have at least **TX\_MINIMUM\_STACK** bytes to execute.
- TX\_PRIORITY\_ERROR: (0x0F) Invalid thread priority, which is a value outside the range of (0 through (TX\_MAX\_PRIORITIES-1)).
- TX\_THRESH\_ERROR: (0x18) Invalid preemptionthreshold specified. This value must be a valid priority less than or equal to the initial priority of the thread.
- TX\_START\_ERROR: (0x10) Invalid auto-start selection.
- TX\_CALLER\_ERROR: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Initialization and threads

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_THREAD    my_thread;
UINT         status;

/* Create a thread of priority 15 whose entry point is
"my_thread_entry". This thread's stack area is 1000
bytes in size, starting at address 0x400000. The
preemption-threshold is setup to allow preemption of threads
with priorities ranging from 0 through 14. Time-slicing is
disabled. This thread is automatically put into a ready
condition. */
status = tx_thread_create(&my_thread, "my_thread_name",
                        my_thread_entry, 0x1234,
                        (VOID *) 0x400000, 1000,
                        15, 15, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE,
                        TX_AUTO_START);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_thread is ready
for execution! */
...

/* Thread's entry function. When "my_thread" actually
begins execution, control is transferred to this
function. */
VOID my_thread_entry (ULONG initial_input)
{
    /* When we get here, the value of initial_input is
    0x1234. See how this was specified during
    creation. */

    /* The real work of the thread, including calls to
    other function should be called from here! */

    /* When this function returns, the corresponding
    thread is placed into a "completed" state. */
}
```

## See Also

- tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify

- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_delete

Delete application thread

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_delete(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);
```

### Description

This service deletes the specified application thread. Since the specified thread must be in a terminated or completed state, this service cannot be called from a thread attempting to delete itself.

#### IMPORTANT

It is the application's responsibility to manage the memory area associated with the thread's stack, which is available after this service completes. In addition, the application must prevent use of a deleted thread.

### Parameters

- **thread\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created application thread.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful thread deletion.
- **TX\_THREAD\_ERROR**: (0x0E) Invalid application thread pointer.
- **TX\_DELETE\_ERROR**: (0x11) Specified thread is not in a terminated or completed state.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR**: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads and timers

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```

TX_THREAD    my_thread;
UINT         status;

/* Delete an application thread whose control block is
   "my_thread". Assume that the thread has already been
   created with a call to tx_thread_create. */
status = tx_thread_delete(&my_thread);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application thread is
   deleted. */

```

## See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify

Notify application upon thread entry and exit

### Prototype

```

UINT tx_thread_entry_exit_notify(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
                                VOID (*entry_exit_notify)(TX_THREAD *, UINT));

```

### Description

This service registers a notification callback function that is called whenever the specified thread is entered or exits. The processing of the notification callback is defined by the application.

#### NOTE

The application's thread entry/exit notification callback is not allowed to call any ThreadX SMP API with a suspension option.

### Parameters

- **thread\_ptr**: Pointer to previously created thread.
- **entry\_exit\_notify**: Pointer to application's thread entry/exit notification function. The second parameter to

the entry/exit notification function designates if an entry or exit is present. The value TX\_THREAD\_ENTRY (0x00) indicates the thread was entered, while the value TX\_THREAD\_EXIT (0x01) indicates the thread was exited. If this value is TX\_NULL, notification is disabled.

### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS: (0x00) Successful registration of the thread entry/exit notification function.
- TX\_THREAD\_ERROR: (0x0E) Invalid thread pointer.
- TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED(0xFF) The system was compiled with notification capabilities disabled.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Example

```
TX_THREAD      my_thread;

/* Register the "my_entry_exit_notify" function for monitoring
   the entry/exit of the thread "my_thread." */
status = tx_thread_entry_exit_notify(&my_thread,
                                     my_entry_exit_notify);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the entry/exit notification function was
   successfully registered. */
void my_entry_exit_notify(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr, UINT condition)
{
    /* Determine if the thread was entered or exited. */
    if (condition == TX_THREAD_ENTRY)
        /* Thread entry! */
    else if (condition == TX_THREAD_EXIT)
        /* Thread exit! */
}
```

### See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_identify

Retrieves pointer to currently executing thread

## Prototype

```
TX_THREAD* tx_thread_identify(VOID);
```

## Description

This service returns a pointer to the currently executing thread. If no thread is executing, this service returns a null pointer.

### IMPORTANT

If this service is called from an ISR, the return value represents the thread running prior to the executing interrupt handler.

## Parameters

None

## Return Values

- thread pointer: Pointer to the currently executing thread. If no thread is executing, the return value is TX\_NULL.

## Allowed From

Threads and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_THREAD    *my_thread_ptr;

/* Find out who we are! */
my_thread_ptr = tx_thread_identify();

/* If my_thread_ptr is non-null, we are currently executing
   from that thread or an ISR that interrupted that thread.
   Otherwise, this service was called
   from an ISR when no thread was running when the
   interrupt occurred. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep



- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_info\_get

Retrieve information about thread

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_info_get(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr, CHAR **name,
                        UINT *state, ULONG *run_count,
                        UINT *priority,
                        UINT *preemption_threshold,
                        ULONG *time_slice,
                        TX_THREAD **next_thread,
                        TX_THREAD **suspended_thread);
```

### Description

This service retrieves information about the specified thread.

### Parameters

- **thread\_ptr**: Pointer to thread control block.
- **name**: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the thread's name.
- **state**: Pointer to destination for the thread's current execution state. Possible values are as follows:
  - TX\_READY: (0x00)
  - TX\_COMPLETED: (0x01)
  - TX\_TERMINATED: (0x02)
  - TX\_SUSPENDED: (0x03)
  - TX\_SLEEP: (0x04)
  - TX\_QUEUE\_SUSP: (0x05)
  - TX\_SEMAPHORE\_SUSP: (0x06)
  - TX\_EVENT\_FLAG: (0x07)
  - TX\_BLOCK\_MEMORY: (0x08)
  - TX\_BYTE\_MEMORY: (0x09)
  - TX\_MUTEX\_SUSP: (0x0D)
- **run\_count**: Pointer to destination for the thread's run count.
- **priority**: Pointer to destination for the thread's priority.
- **preemption\_threshold**: Pointer to destination for the thread's preemption-threshold.
- **time\_slice**: Pointer to destination for the thread's time-slice.
- **next\_thread**: Pointer to destination for next created thread pointer.
- **suspended\_thread**: Pointer to destination for pointer to next thread in suspension list.

## IMPORTANT

Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.

### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS: (0x00) Successful thread information retrieval.
- TX\_THREAD\_ERROR: (0x0E) Invalid thread control pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
TX_THREAD my_thread;
CHAR *name;
UINT state;
ULONG run_count;
UINT priority;
UINT preemption_threshold;
UINT time_slice;
TX_THREAD *next_thread;
TX_THREAD *suspended_thread;
UINT status;

/* Retrieve information about the previously created
   thread "my_thread." */
status = tx_thread_info_get(&my_thread, &name,
                           &state, &run_count,
                           &priority, &preemption_threshold,
                           &time_slice, &next_thread,&suspended_thread);
/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is
   valid. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

# tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get

Get thread performance information

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_performance_info_get(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,  
    ULONG *resumptions, ULONG *suspensions,  
    ULONG *solicited_preemptions, ULONG *interrupt_preemptions,  
    ULONG *priority_inversions, ULONG *time_slices,  
    ULONG *relinquishes, ULONG *timeouts, ULONG *wait_aborts,  
    TX_THREAD **last_preempted_by);
```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about the specified thread.

### IMPORTANT

The ThreadX SMP library and application must be built with **TX\_THREAD\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO** defined in order for this service to return performance information.

## Parameters

- **thread\_ptr**: Pointer to previously created thread.
- **resumptions**: Pointer to destination for the number of resumptions of this thread.
- **suspensions**: Pointer to destination for the number of suspensions of this thread.
- **solicited\_preemptions**: Pointer to destination for the number of preemptions as a result of a ThreadX API service call made by this thread.
- **interrupt\_preemptions**: Pointer to destination for the number of preemptions of this thread as a result of interrupt processing.
- **priority\_inversions**: Pointer to destination for the number of priority inversions of this thread.
- **time\_slices**: Pointer to destination for the number of timeslices of this thread.
- **relinquishes**: Pointer to destination for the number of thread relinquishes performed by this thread.
- **timeouts**: Pointer to destination for the number of suspension timeouts on this thread.
- **wait\_aborts**: Pointer to destination for the number of wait aborts performed on this thread.
- **last\_preempted\_by**: Pointer to destination for the thread pointer that last preempted this thread.

### IMPORTANT

Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful thread performance get.
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR**: (0x03) Invalid thread pointer.
- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED**: (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Example

```
TX_THREAD      my_thread;
ULONG          resumptions;
ULONG          suspensions;
ULONG          solicited_preemptions;
ULONG          interrupt_preemptions;
ULONG          priority_inversions;
ULONG          time_slices;
ULONG          relinquishes;
ULONG          timeouts;
ULONG          wait_aborts;
TX_THREAD      *last_preempted_by;

/* Retrieve performance information on the previously created
   thread. */
status = tx_thread_performance_info_get(&my_thread, &resumptions,
                                         &suspensions,
                                         &solicited_preemptions, &interrupt_preemptions,
                                         &priority_inversions, &time_slices,
                                         &relinquishes, &timeouts,
                                         &wait_aborts, &last_preempted_by);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
   successfully retrieved. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get

## Get thread system performance information

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_performance_system_info_get(ULONG *resumptions,
    ULONG *suspensions, ULONG *solicited_preemptions,
    ULONG *interrupt_preemptions, ULONG *priority_inversions,
    ULONG *time_slices, ULONG *relinquishes, ULONG *timeouts,
    ULONG *wait_aborts, ULONG *non_idle_returns,
    ULONG *idle_returns);
```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about all the threads in the system.

### IMPORTANT

The ThreadX SMP library and application must be built with `TX_THREAD_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO` defined in order for this service to return performance information.

## Parameters

- **resumptions**: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread resumptions.
- **suspensions**: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread suspensions.
- **solicited\_preemptions**: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread preemptions as a result of a thread calling a ThreadX API service.
- **interrupt\_preemptions**: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread preemptions as a result of interrupt processing.
- **priority\_inversions**: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread priority inversions.
- **time\_slices**: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread time-slices.
- **relinquishes**: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread relinquishes.
- **timeouts**: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread suspension timeouts.
- **wait\_aborts**: Pointer to destination for the total number of thread wait aborts.
- **non\_idle\_returns**: Pointer to destination for the number of times a thread returns to the system when another thread is ready to execute.
- **idle\_returns**: Pointer to destination for the number of times a thread returns to the system when no other thread is ready to execute (idle system).

### IMPORTANT

Supplying a `TX_NULL` for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful thread system performance get.
- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED**: (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Example

```

ULONG        resumptions;
ULONG        suspensions;
ULONG        solicited_preemptions;
ULONG        interrupt_preemptions;
ULONG        priority_inversions;
ULONG        time_slices;
ULONG        relinquishes;
ULONG        timeouts;
ULONG        wait_aborts;
ULONG        non_idle_returns;
ULONG        idle_returns;

/* Retrieve performance information on all previously created
   thread. */
status = tx_thread_performance_system_info_get(&resumptions,
        &suspensions,
        &solicited_preemptions, &interrupt_preemptions,
        &priority_inversions, &time_slices, &relinquishes,
        &timeouts, &wait_aborts, &non_idle_returns,
        &idle_returns);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
   successfully retrieved. */

```

## See Also

- [tx\\_thread\\_create](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_delete](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_entry\\_exit\\_notify](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_identify](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_performance\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_preemption\\_change](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_priority\\_change](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_relinquish](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_reset](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_resume](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_sleep](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_stack\\_error\\_notify](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_suspend](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_terminate](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_time\\_slice\\_change](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_wait\\_abort](#)

## tx\_thread\_preemption\_change

Change preemption-threshold of application thread

### Prototype

```

UINT tx_thread_preemption_change(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
                                UINT new_threshold, UINT *old_threshold);

```

### Description

This service changes the preemption-threshold of the specified thread. The preemption-threshold prevents preemption of the specified thread by threads equal to or less than the preemption-threshold value.

## IMPORTANT

Using `preemption-threshold` disables time-slicing for the specified thread.

### Parameters

- **thread\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created application thread.
- **new\_threshold**: New preemption-threshold priority level (0 through (TX\_MAX\_PRIORITIES-1)).
- **old\_threshold**: Pointer to a location to return the previous preemption-threshold.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful preemption-threshold change.
- **TX\_THREAD\_ERROR**: (0x0E) Invalid application thread pointer.
- **TX\_THRESH\_ERROR**: (0x18) Specified new preemption-threshold is not a valid thread priority (a value other than (0 through (TX\_MAX\_PRIORITIES-1)) or is greater than (lower priority) than the current thread priority.
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR**: (0x03) Invalid pointer to previous preemptionthreshold storage location.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR**: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads and timers

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_THREAD    my_thread;
UINT         my_old_threshold;
UINT         status;

/* Disable all preemption of the specified thread. The
   current preemption-threshold is returned in
   "my_old_threshold". Assume that "my_thread" has
   already been created. */
status = tx_thread_preemption_change(&my_thread,
                                     0, &my_old_threshold);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application thread is
   non-preemptable by another thread. Note that ISRs are
   not prevented by preemption disabling. */
```

### See Also

- `tx_thread_create`
- `tx_thread_delete`
- `tx_thread_entry_exit_notify`
- `tx_thread_identify`
- `tx_thread_info_get`
- `tx_thread_performance_info_get`
- `tx_thread_performance_system_info_get`
- `tx_thread_priority_change`
- `tx_thread_relinquish`
- `tx_thread_reset`

- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_priority\_change

Change priority of application thread

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_priority_change(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
                              UINT new_priority, UINT *old_priority);
```

### Description

This service changes the priority of the specified thread. Valid priorities range from 0 through (TX\_MAX\_PRIORITIES-1), where 0 represents the highest priority level.

#### IMPORTANT

The preemption-threshold of the specified thread is automatically set to the new priority. If a new threshold is desired, the **tx\_thread\_preemption\_change** service must be used after this call.

### Parameters

- **thread\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created application thread.
- **new\_priority**: New thread priority level (0 through (TX\_MAX\_PRIORITIES-1)).
- **old\_priority**: Pointer to a location to return the thread's previous priority.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful priority change.
- **TX\_THREAD\_ERROR**: (0x0E) Invalid application thread pointer.
- **TX\_PRIORITY\_ERROR**: (0x0F) Specified new priority is not valid (a value other than (0 through (TX\_MAX\_PRIORITIES-1))).
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR**: (0x03) Invalid pointer to previous priority storage location.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR**: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads and timers

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example



```

TX_THREAD    my_thread;
UINT         my_old_priority;
UINT         status;

/* Change the thread represented by "my_thread" to priority
   0. */
status = tx_thread_priority_change(&my_thread,
                                   0, &my_old_priority);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application thread is
   now at the highest priority level in the system. */

```

## See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

# tx\_thread\_relinquish

Relinquish control to other application threads

## Prototype

```
VOID tx_thread_relinquish(VOID);
```

## Description

This service relinquishes processor control to other ready-to-run threads at the same or higher priority.

### IMPORTANT

In addition to relinquishing control to threads of the same priority, this service also relinquishes control to the highest-priority thread prevented from execution because of the current thread's preemption-threshold setting.

## Parameters

None

## Return Values

None

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
ULONG run_counter_1 = 0;
ULONG run_counter_2 = 0;

/* Example of two threads relinquishing control to
each other in an infinite loop. Assume that
both of these threads are ready and have the same
priority. The run counters will always stay within one
of each other. */

VOID my_first_thread(ULONG thread_input)
{
    /* Endless loop of relinquish. */
    while(1)
    {

        /* Increment the run counter. */
        run_counter_1++;

        /* Relinquish control to other thread. */
        tx_thread_relinquish();
    }
}

VOID my_second_thread(ULONG thread_input)
{
    /* Endless loop of relinquish. */
    while(1)
    {
        /* Increment the run counter. */
        run_counter_2++;

        /* Relinquish control to other thread. */
        tx_thread_relinquish();
    }
}
```

## See Also

- [tx\\_thread\\_create](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_delete](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_entry\\_exit\\_notify](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_identify](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_performance\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_performance\\_system\\_info\\_get](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_preemption\\_change](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_priority\\_change](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_reset](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_resume](#)
- [tx\\_thread\\_sleep](#)

- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_reset

Reset thread

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_reset(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);
```

### Description

This service resets the specified thread to execute at the entry point defined at thread creation. The thread must be in either a **TX\_COMPLETED** or **TX\_TERMINATED** state for it to be reset

#### IMPORTANT

The thread must be resumed for it to execute again.

### Parameters

- **thread\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created thread.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful thread reset.
- **TX\_NOT\_DONE**: (0x20) Specified thread is not in a **TX\_COMPLETED** or **TX\_TERMINATED** state.
- **TX\_THREAD\_ERROR**: (0x0E) Invalid thread pointer.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR**: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads

### Example

```
TX_THREAD    my_thread;

/* Reset the previously created thread "my_thread." */
status = tx_thread_reset(&my_thread);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the thread is reset. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change

- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_resume

Resume suspended application thread

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_resume(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);
```

### Description

This service resumes or prepares for execution a thread that was previously suspended by a *tx\_thread\_suspend* call. In addition, this service resumes threads that were created without an automatic start.

### Parameters

- **thread\_ptr**: Pointer to a suspended application thread.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful thread resume.
- **TX\_SUSPEND\_LIFTED**: (0x19) Previously set delayed suspension was lifted.
- **TX\_THREAD\_ERROR**: (0x0E) Invalid application thread pointer.
- **TX\_RESUME\_ERROR**: (0x12) Specified thread is not suspended or was previously suspended by a service other than *tx\_thread\_suspend*.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_THREAD    my_thread;
UINT         status;

/* Resume the thread represented by "my_thread". */
status = tx_thread_resume(&my_thread);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application thread is
   now ready to execute. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify

- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_sleep

Suspend current thread for specified time

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_sleep(ULONG timer_ticks);
```

### Description

This service causes the calling thread to suspend for the specified number of timer ticks. The amount of physical time associated with a timer tick is application specific. This service can be called only from an application thread.

### Parameters

- **timer\_ticks**: The number of timer ticks to suspend the calling application thread, ranging from 0 through 0xFFFFFFFF. If 0 is specified, the service returns immediately.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful thread sleep.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ABORTED**: (0x1A) Suspension was aborted by another thread, timer, or ISR.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR**: (0x13) Service called from a non-thread.

### Allowed From

Threads

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```

UINT status;

/* Make the calling thread sleep for 100
   timer-ticks. */
status = tx_thread_sleep(100);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the currently running
   application thread slept for the specified number of
   timer-ticks. */

```

## See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_smp\_core\_exclude

Exclude thread execution on a set of cores

### Prototype

```

UINT tx_thread_smp_core_exclude(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
                                ULONG exclusion_map);

```

### Description

This function excludes the specified thread from executing on the core(s) specified in the bit map called "*exclusion\_map*." Each bit in "*exclusion\_map*" represents a core (bit 0 represents core 0, etc.). If the bit is set, the corresponding core is excluded from executing the specified thread.

#### IMPORTANT

Use of processor exclusion may cause additional processing in the thread to core mapping logic in order to find the optimal match. This processing is bounded by the number of ready threads.

### Parameters

- **thread\_ptr**: Pointer to thread to change the core exclusion.
- **exclusion\_map**: Bit map where a set bit indicates that that core is excluded. Supplying a 0 value enables the

thread to execute on any core (default).

### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS: (0x00) Successful core exclusion.
- TX\_THREAD\_ERROR: (0x0E) Invalid thread pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, ISRs, threads, and timers

### Example

```
/* Exclude core 0 for "Thread 0". */  
tx_thread_smp_core_exclude(&thread_0, 0x01);
```

### See Also

- tx\_thread\_smp\_core\_exclude\_get
- tx\_thread\_smp\_core\_get

## tx\_thread\_smp\_core\_exclude\_get

Gets the thread's current core exclusion

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_smp_core_exclude_get(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,  
                                     ULONG *exclusion_map_ptr);
```

### Description

This function returns the current core exclusion list.

### Parameters

- thread\_ptr: Pointer to thread from which to retrieve the core exclusion.
- exclusion\_map\_ptr: Destination for current core exclusion bit map.

### Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS: (0x00) Successful retrieval of thread's core exclusion.
- TX\_THREAD\_ERROR: (0x0E) Invalid thread pointer.
- TX\_PTR\_ERROR: (0x03) Invalid exclusion destination pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, ISRs, threads, and timers

### Example

```
ULONGexcluded_cores;  
/* Retrieve the core exclusion for "Thread 0". */  
tx_thread_smp_core_exclude_get(&thread_0, &excluded_cores);
```

### See Also

- tx\_thread\_smp\_core\_exclude
- tx\_thread\_smp\_core\_get

## tx\_thread\_smp\_core\_get

Retrieve currently executing core of caller

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_smp_core_get(void);
```

### Description

This function returns the core ID of the core executing this service.

### Parameters

None

### Return Values

- **core\_id**: ID of currently executing core, (0 through TX\_THREAD\_SMP\_MAX\_CORES-1)

### Allowed From

Initialization, ISRs, threads, and timers

### Example

```
UINT core;
/* Pickup the currently executing core. */
core = tx_thread_smp_core_get();

/* At this point, "core" contains the executing core ID. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_thread\_smp\_core\_exclude
- tx\_thread\_smp\_core\_exclude\_get

## tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify

Register thread stack error notification callback

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_stack_error_notify(VOID (*error_handler)(TX_THREAD *));
```

### Description

This service registers a notification callback function for handling thread stack errors. When ThreadX SMP detects a thread stack error during execution, it will call this notification function to process the error. Processing of the error is completely defined by the application. Anything from suspending the violating thread to resetting the entire system may be done.

#### IMPORTANT

The ThreadX SMP library must be built with **TX\_ENABLE\_STACK\_CHECKING** defined in order for this service to return performance information.

### Parameters

- **error\_handler**: Pointer to application's stack error handling function. If this value is TX\_NULL, the notification is disabled.

### Return Values



- **TX\_SUCCESS:** (0x00) Successful thread reset.
- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED:** (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Example

```
void my_stack_error_handler(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);

/* Register the "my_stack_error_handler" function with ThreadX SMP
   so that thread stack errors can be handled by the application. */
status = tx_thread_stack_error_notify(my_stack_error_handler);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the stack error handler is registered.*/
```

### See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_suspend

Suspend application thread

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_suspend(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);
```

### Description

This service suspends the specified application thread. A thread may call this service to suspend itself.

#### IMPORTANT

If the specified thread is already suspended for another reason, this suspension is held internally until the prior suspension is lifted. When that happens, this unconditional suspension of the specified thread is performed. Further unconditional suspension requests have no effect.

After being suspended, the thread must be resumed by *tx\_thread\_resume* to execute again.

## Parameters

- **thread\_ptr**: Pointer to an application thread.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful thread suspend.
- **TX\_THREAD\_ERROR**: (0x0E) Invalid application thread pointer.
- **TX\_SUSPEND\_ERROR**: (0x14) Specified thread is in a terminated or completed state.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR**: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_THREAD    my_thread;
UINT         status;

/* Suspend the thread represented by "my_thread". */
status = tx_thread_suspend(&my_thread);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application thread is
   unconditionally suspended. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_terminate

Terminates application thread

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_terminate(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);
```

## Description

This service terminates the specified application thread regardless of whether the thread is suspended or not. A thread may call this service to terminate itself.

### IMPORTANT

After being terminated, the thread must be reset for it to execute again.

### WARNING

It is the application's responsibility to ensure the thread is in a state suitable for termination. For example, a thread should not be terminated during critical application processing or inside of other middleware components where it could leave such processing in an unknown state.

## Parameters

- **thread\_ptr**: Pointer to application thread.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful thread terminate.
- **TX\_THREAD\_ERROR**: (0x0E) Invalid application thread pointer.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR**: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Threads and timers

## Preemption Possible

Yes

## Example

```
TX_THREAD    my_thread;
UINT         status;

/* Terminate the thread represented by "my_thread". */
status = tx_thread_terminate(&my_thread);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the thread is terminated
   and cannot execute again until it is reset. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change

- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change

Changes time-slice of application thread

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_thread_time_slice_change(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
                                ULONG new_time_slice, ULONG *old_time_slice);
```

### Description

This service changes the time-slice of the specified application thread. Selecting a time-slice for a thread insures that it won't execute more than the specified number of timer ticks before other threads of the same or higher priorities have a chance to execute.

#### IMPORTANT

Using preemption-threshold disables time-slicing for the specified thread.

### Parameters

- **thread\_ptr**: Pointer to application thread.
- **new\_time\_slice**: New time slice value. Legal values include TX\_NO\_TIME\_SLICE and numeric values from 1 through 0xFFFFFFFF.
- **old\_time\_slice**: Pointer to location for storing the previous timeslice value of the specified thread.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful time-slice change.
- **TX\_THREAD\_ERROR**: (0x0E) Invalid application thread pointer.
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR**: (0x03) Invalid pointer to previous time-slice storage location.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR**: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads and timers

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```

TX_THREAD      my_thread;
ULONG          my_old_time_slice;
UINT           status;

/* Change the time-slice of the thread associated with
   "my_thread" to 20. This will mean that "my_thread"
   can only run for 20 timer-ticks consecutively before
   other threads of equal or higher priority get a chance
   to run. */
status = tx_thread_time_slice_change(&my_thread, 20,
                                     &my_old_time_slice);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the thread's time-slice
   has been changed to 20 and the previous time-slice is
   in "my_old_time_slice." */

```

## See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

## tx\_thread\_wait\_abort

Abort suspension of specified thread

### Prototype

```

UINT tx_thread_wait_abort(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);

```

### Description

This service aborts sleep or any other object suspension of the specified thread. If the wait is aborted, a TX\_WAIT\_ABORTED value is returned from the service that the thread was waiting on.

#### IMPORTANT

This service does not release explicit suspension that is made by the tx\_thread\_suspend service.

### Parameters

- **thread\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created application thread.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful thread wait abort.
- **TX\_THREAD\_ERROR**: (0x0E) Invalid application thread pointer.
- **TX\_WAIT\_ABORT\_ERROR**: (0x1B) Specified thread is not in a waiting state.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

Yes

### Example

```
TX_THREAD    my_thread;
UINT         status;

/* Abort the suspension condition of "my_thread." */
status = tx_thread_wait_abort(&my_thread);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the thread is now ready
   again, with a return value showing its suspension
   was aborted (TX_WAIT_ABORTED). */
```

### See Also

- tx\_thread\_create
- tx\_thread\_delete
- tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify
- tx\_thread\_identify
- tx\_thread\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_performance\_system\_info\_get
- tx\_thread\_preemption\_change
- tx\_thread\_priority\_change
- tx\_thread\_relinquish
- tx\_thread\_reset
- tx\_thread\_resume
- tx\_thread\_sleep
- tx\_thread\_stack\_error\_notify
- tx\_thread\_suspend
- tx\_thread\_terminate
- tx\_thread\_time\_slice\_change

## tx\_time\_get

Retrieves the current time

### Prototype

```
ULONG tx_time_get(VOID);
```

### Description

This service returns the contents of the internal system clock. Each timertick increases the internal system clock by one. The system clock is set to zero during initialization and can be changed to a specific value by the service *tx\_time\_set*.

#### IMPORTANT

The actual time each timer-tick represents is application specific.

#### Parameters

None

#### Return Values

- system clock ticks: Value of the internal, free running, system clock.

#### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

#### Preemption Possible

No

#### Example

```
ULONG current_time;

/* Pickup the current system time, in timer-ticks. */
current_time = tx_time_get();

/* Current time now contains a copy of the internal system
   clock. */
```

#### See Also

- tx\_time\_set

## tx\_time\_set

Sets the current time

#### Prototype

```
VOID tx_time_set(ULONG new_time);
```

#### Description

This service sets the internal system clock to the specified value. Each timer-tick increases the internal system clock by one.

#### IMPORTANT

The actual time each timer-tick represents is application specific.

#### Parameters

- **new\_time**: New time to put in the system clock, legal values range from 0 through 0xFFFFFFFF.

#### Return Values

None

### Allowed From

Threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
/* Set the internal system time to 0x1234. */
tx_time_set(0x1234);

/* Current time now contains 0x1234 until the next timer
interrupt. */
```

### See Also

- `tx_time_get`

## tx\_timer\_activate

Activate application timer

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_timer_activate(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr);
```

### Description

This service activates the specified application timer. The expiration routines of timers that expire at the same time are executed in the order they were activated.

#### NOTE

That an expired one-shot timer must be reset via `tx_timer_change` before it can be activated again.

### Parameters

- `timer_ptr`: Pointer to a previously created application timer.

### Return Values

- `TX_SUCCESS`: (0x00) Successful application timer activation.
- `TX_TIMER_ERROR`: (0x15) Invalid application timer pointer.
- `TX_ACTIVATE_ERROR`: (0x17) Timer was already active or is a one-shot timer that has already expired.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example



```

TX_TIMER    my_timer;
UINT        status;

/* Activate an application timer. Assume that the
   application timer has already been created. */
status = tx_timer_activate(&my_timer);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application timer is
   now active. */

```

## See Also

- tx\_timer\_change
- tx\_timer\_create
- tx\_timer\_deactivate
- tx\_timer\_delete
- tx\_timer\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_system\_info\_get

# tx\_timer\_change

Change application timer

## Prototype

```

UINT tx_timer_change(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr,
                     ULONG initial_ticks, ULONG reschedule_ticks);

```

## Description

This service changes the expiration characteristics of the specified application timer. The timer must be deactivated prior to calling this service.

### IMPORTANT

A call to the **tx\_timer\_activate** service is required after this service in order to start the timer again.

## Parameters

- **timer\_ptr**: Pointer to a timer control block.
- **initial\_ticks**: Specifies the initial number of ticks for timer expiration. Legal values range from 1 through 0xFFFFFFFF.
- **reschedule\_ticks**: Specifies the number of ticks for all timer expirations after the first. A zero for this parameter makes the timer a one-shot timer. Otherwise, for periodic timers, legal values range from 1 through 0xFFFFFFFF.

### NOTE

That an expired one-shot timer must be reset via **tx\_timer\_change** before it can be activated again.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful application timer change.
- **TX\_TIMER\_ERROR**: (0x15) Invalid application timer pointer.

- TX\_TICK\_ERROR: (0x16) Invalid value (a zero) supplied for initial ticks.
- TX\_CALLER\_ERROR: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
TX_TIMER      my_timer;
UINT          status;

/* Change a previously created and now deactivated timer
   to expire every 50 timer ticks, including the initial
   expiration. */
status = tx_timer_change(&my_timer, 50, 50);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the specified timer is
   changed to expire every 50 ticks. */

/* Activate the specified timer to get it started again. */
status = tx_timer_activate(&my_timer);
```

### See Also

- tx\_timer\_activate
- tx\_timer\_create
- tx\_timer\_deactivate
- tx\_timer\_delete
- tx\_timer\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_system\_info\_get

## tx\_timer\_create

Create application timer

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_timer_create(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr, CHAR *name_ptr,
                    VOID (*expiration_function)(ULONG),
                    ULONG expiration_input, ULONG initial_ticks,
                    ULONG reschedule_ticks, UINT auto_activate)
```

### Description

This service creates an application timer with the specified expiration function and periodic.

### Parameters

- **timer\_ptr**: Pointer to a timer control block
- **name\_ptr**: Pointer to the name of the timer.
- **expiration\_function**: Application function to call when the timer expires.
- **expiration\_input**: Input to pass to expiration function when timer expires.

- **initial\_ticks:** Specifies the initial number of ticks for timer expiration. Legal values range from 1 through 0xFFFFFFFF.
- **reschedule\_ticks:** Specifies the number of ticks for all timer expirations after the first. A zero for this parameter makes the timer a one-shot timer. Otherwise, for periodic timers, legal values range from 1 through 0xFFFFFFFF.

#### NOTE

After a one-shot timer expires, it must be reset via `tx_timer_change` before it can be activated again.

- **auto\_activate:** Determines if the timer is automatically activated during creation. If this value is `TX_AUTO_ACTIVATE` (0x01) the timer is made active. Otherwise, if the value `TX_NO_ACTIVATE` (0x00) is selected, the timer is created in a non-active state. In this case, a subsequent *tx\_timer\_activate* service call is necessary to get the timer actually started.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS:** (0x00) Successful application timer creation.
- **TX\_TIMER\_ERROR:** (0x15) Invalid application timer pointer. Either the pointer is NULL or the timer is already created.
- **TX\_TICK\_ERROR:** (0x16) Invalid value (a zero) supplied for initial ticks.
- **TX\_ACTIVATE\_ERROR:** (0x17) Invalid activation selected.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR:** (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

### Allowed From

Initialization and threads

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
TX_TIMER    my_timer;
UINT        status;

/* Create an application timer that executes
   "my_timer_function" after 100 ticks initially and then
   after every 25 ticks. This timer is specified to start
   immediately! */
status = tx_timer_create(&my_timer, "my_timer_name",
                        my_timer_function, 0x1234, 100, 25,
                        TX_AUTO_ACTIVATE);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, my_timer_function will
   be called 100 timer ticks later and then called every
   25 timer ticks. Note that the value 0x1234 is passed to
   my_timer_function every time it is called. */
```

### See Also

- `tx_timer_activate`
- `tx_timer_change`
- `tx_timer_deactivate`
- `tx_timer_delete`
- `tx_timer_info_get`
- `tx_timer_performance_info_get`

- tx\_timer\_performance\_system\_info\_get

## tx\_timer\_deactivate

Deactivate application timer

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_timer_deactivate(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr);
```

### Description

This service deactivates the specified application timer. If the timer is already deactivated, this service has no effect.

### Parameters

- **timer\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created application timer.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful application timer deactivation.
- **TX\_TIMER\_ERROR**: (0x15) Invalid application timer pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Preemption Possible

No

### Example

```
TX_TIMER    my_timer;
UINT        status;

/* Deactivate an application timer. Assume that the
   application timer has already been created. */
status = tx_timer_deactivate(&my_timer);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application timer is
   now deactivated. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_timer\_activate
- tx\_timer\_change
- tx\_timer\_create
- tx\_timer\_delete
- tx\_timer\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_system\_info\_get

## tx\_timer\_delete

Delete application timer

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_timer_delete(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr);
```

## Description

This service deletes the specified application timer.

### IMPORTANT

It is the application's responsibility to prevent use of a deleted timer.

## Parameters

- **timer\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created application timer.

## Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful application timer deletion.
- **TX\_TIMER\_ERROR**: (0x15) Invalid application timer pointer.
- **TX\_CALLER\_ERROR**: (0x13) Invalid caller of this service.

## Allowed From

Threads

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_TIMER    my_timer;
UINT        status;

/* Delete application timer. Assume that the application
   timer has already been created. */
status = tx_timer_delete(&my_timer);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the application timer is
   deleted. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_timer\_activate
- tx\_timer\_change
- tx\_timer\_create
- tx\_timer\_deactivate
- tx\_timer\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_system\_info\_get

# tx\_timer\_info\_get

Retrieve information about an application timer

## Prototype

```
UINT tx_timer_info_get(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr, CHAR **name,
                      UINT *active, ULONG *remaining_ticks,
                      ULONG *reschedule_ticks,
                      TX_TIMER **next_timer)
```

## Description

This service retrieves information about the specified application timer.

## Parameters

- **timer\_ptr**: Pointer to a previously created application timer.
- **name**: Pointer to destination for the pointer to the timer's name.
- **active**: Pointer to destination for the timer active indication. If the timer is inactive or this service is called from the timer itself, a TX\_FALSE value is returned. Otherwise, if the timer is active, a TX\_TRUE value is returned.
- **remaining\_ticks**: Pointer to destination for the number of timer ticks left before the timer expires.
- **reschedule\_ticks**: Pointer to destination for the number of timer ticks that will be used to automatically reschedule this timer. If the value is zero, then the timer is a one-shot and won't be rescheduled.
- **next\_timer**: Pointer to destination for the pointer of the next created application timer.

### NOTE

Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.

## Return Values

- TX\_SUCCESS: (0x00) Successful timer information retrieval.
- TX\_TIMER\_ERROR: (0x15) Invalid application timer pointer.

## Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

## Preemption Possible

No

## Example

```
TX_TIMER    my_timer;
CHAR        *name;
UINT        active;
ULONG       remaining_ticks;
ULONG       reschedule_ticks;
TX_TIMER    *next_timer;
UINT        status;

/* Retrieve information about the previously created
   application timer "my_timer." */
status = tx_timer_info_get(&my_timer, &name,
                          &active,&remaining_ticks,
                          &reschedule_ticks,
                          &next_timer);

/* If status equals TX_SUCCESS, the information requested is
   valid. */
```

## See Also

- tx\_timer\_activate

- tx\_timer\_change
- tx\_timer\_create
- tx\_timer\_deactivate
- tx\_timer\_delete
- tx\_timer\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_system\_info\_get

## tx\_timer\_performance\_info\_get

Get timer performance information

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_timer_performance_info_get(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr,
    ULONG *activates, ULONG *reactivates,
    ULONG *deactivates, ULONG *expirations,
    ULONG *expiration_adjusts);
```

### Description

This service retrieves performance information about the specified application timer.

#### IMPORTANT

The ThreadX SMP library and application must be built with `TX_TIMER_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO` defined for this service to return performance information.

### Parameters

- **timer\_ptr**: Pointer to previously created timer.
- **activates**: Pointer to destination for the number of activation requests performed on this timer.
- **reactivates**: Pointer to destination for the number of automatic reactivations performed on this periodic timer.
- **deactivates**: Pointer to destination for the number of deactivation requests performed on this timer.
- **expirations**: Pointer to destination for the number of expirations of this timer.
- **expiration\_adjusts**: Pointer to destination for the number of internal expiration adjustments performed on this timer. These adjustments are done in the timer interrupt processing for timers that are larger than the default timer list size (by default timers with expirations greater than 32 ticks).

#### IMPORTANT

Supplying a `TX_NULL` for any parameter indicates the parameter is not required.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful timer performance get.
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR**: (0x03) Invalid timer pointer.
- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED**: (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Example

```

TX_TIMER    my_timer;
ULONG       activates;
ULONG       reactivates;
ULONG       deactivates;
ULONG       expirations;
ULONG       expiration_adjusts;

/* Retrieve performance information on the previously created
   timer. */
status = tx_timer_performance_info_get(&my_timer, &activates,
                                       &reactivates,&deactivates, &expirations,
                                       &expiration_adjusts);

/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
   successfully retrieved. */

```

## See Also

- tx\_timer\_activate
- tx\_timer\_change
- tx\_timer\_create
- tx\_timer\_deactivate
- tx\_timer\_delete
- tx\_timer\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_system\_info\_get

# tx\_timer\_performance\_system\_info\_get

Get timer system performance information

## Prototype

```

UINT tx_timer_performance_system_info_get(ULONG *activates,
                                          ULONG *reactivates, ULONG *deactivates,
                                          ULONG *expirations, ULONG *expiration_adjusts);

```

## Description

This service retrieves performance information about all the application timers in the system.

### IMPORTANT

The ThreadX SMP library and application must be built with **TX\_TIMER\_ENABLE\_PERFORMANCE\_INFO** defined for this service to return performance information.

## Parameters

- **activates**: Pointer to destination for the total number of activation requests performed on all timers.
- **reactivates**: Pointer to destination for the total number of automatic reactivation performed on all periodic timers.
- **deactivates**: Pointer to destination for the total number of deactivation requests performed on all timers.
- **expirations**: Pointer to destination for the total number of expirations on all timers.
- **expiration\_adjusts**: Pointer to destination for the total number of internal expiration adjustments performed on all timers. These adjustments are done in the timer interrupt processing for timers that are larger than the default timer list size (by default timers with expirations greater than 32 ticks).



### IMPORTANT

Supplying a TX\_NULL for any parameter indicates that the parameter is not required.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS:** (0x00) Successful timer system performance get.
- **TX\_FEATURE\_NOT\_ENABLED:** (0xFF) The system was not compiled with performance information enabled.

### Allowed From

Initialization, threads, timers, and ISRs

### Example

```
ULONG    activates;
ULONG    reactivates;
ULONG    deactivates;
ULONG    expirations;
ULONG    expiration_adjusts;

/* Retrieve performance information on all previously created
   timers. */
status = tx_timer_performance_system_info_get(&activates,
                                              &reactivates, &deactivates, &expirations,
                                              &expiration_adjusts);
/* If status is TX_SUCCESS the performance information was
   successfully retrieved. */
```

### See Also

- tx\_timer\_activate
- tx\_timer\_change
- tx\_timer\_create
- tx\_timer\_deactivate
- tx\_timer\_delete
- tx\_timer\_info\_get
- tx\_timer\_performance\_info\_get

## tx\_timer\_smp\_core\_exclude

Exclude timer execution on a set of cores

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_timer_smp_core_exclude(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr, ULONG exclusion_map);
```

### Description

This function excludes the specified timer from executing on the core(s) specified in the bit map called "*exclusion\_map*." Each bit in "*exclusion\_map*" represents a core (bit 0 represents core 0, etc.). If the bit is set, the corresponding core is excluded from executing the specified timer.

### IMPORTANT

Use of processor exclusion may cause additional processing in the thread to core mapping logic in order to find the optimal match. This processing is bounded by the number of ready threads.

### Parameters

- **timer\_ptr**: Pointer to timer to change the core exclusion.
- **exclusion\_map**: Bit map where a set bit indicates that that core is excluded. Supplying a 0 value enables the timer to execute on any core (default).

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS** (0x00) Successful core exclusion.
- **TX\_TIMER\_ERROR** (0x0E) Invalid timer pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, ISRs, threads, and timers

### Example

```
/* Exclude core 0 for "Timer 0". */
tx_timer_smp_core_exclude(&timer_0, 0x01);
```

### See Also

- tx\_timer\_smp\_core\_exclude\_get

## tx\_timer\_smp\_core\_exclude\_get

Gets the timer's current core exclusion

### Prototype

```
UINT tx_timer_smp_core_exclude_get(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr,
                                   ULONG *exclusion_map_ptr);
```

### Description

This function returns the current core exclusion list.

### Parameters

- **timer\_ptr**: Pointer to timer from which to retrieve the core exclusion.
- **exclusion\_map\_ptr**: Destination for current core exclusion bit map.

### Return Values

- **TX\_SUCCESS**: (0x00) Successful retrieval of timer's core exclusion.
- **TX\_TIMER\_ERROR**: (0x0E) Invalid timer pointer.
- **TX\_PTR\_ERROR**: (0x03) Invalid exclusion destination pointer.

### Allowed From

Initialization, ISRs, threads, and timers

### Example

```
ULONG excluded_cores;

/* Retrieve the core exclusion for "Timer 0". */
tx_timer_smp_core_exclude_get(&timer_0, &excluded_cores);
```

### See Also

- tx\_timer\_smp\_core\_exclude

# Chapter 5 - Device Drivers for Azure RTOS ThreadX SMP

11/1/2022 • 13 minutes to read

This chapter contains a description of device drivers for Azure RTOS ThreadX SMP. The information presented in this chapter is designed to help developers write application specific drivers.

## Device Driver Introduction

Communication with the external environment is an important component of most embedded applications. This communication is accomplished through hardware devices that are accessible to the embedded application software. The software components responsible for managing such devices are commonly called *Device Drivers*.

Device drivers in embedded, real-time systems are inherently application dependent. This is true for two principal reasons: the vast diversity of target hardware and the equally vast performance requirements imposed on real-time applications. Because of this, it is virtually impossible to provide a common set of drivers that will meet the requirements of every application. For these reasons, the information in this chapter is designed to help users customize *off-the-shelf* ThreadX SMP device drivers and write their own specific drivers.

## Driver Functions

ThreadX SMP device drivers are composed of eight basic functional areas, as follows:

- Driver Initialization
- Driver Control
- Driver Access
- Driver Input
- Driver Output
- Driver Interrupts
- Driver Status
- Driver Termination

With the exception of initialization, each driver functional area is optional. Furthermore, the exact processing in each area is specific to the device driver.

### Driver Initialization

This functional area is responsible for initialization of the actual hardware device and the internal data structures of the driver. Calling other driver services is not allowed until initialization is complete.

#### IMPORTANT

The driver's initialization function component is typically called from the `tx_application_define` function or from an initialization thread.

### Driver Control

After the driver is initialized and ready for operation, this functional area is responsible for run-time control. Typically, run-time control consists of making changes to the underlying hardware device. Examples include changing the baud rate of a serial device or seeking a new sector on a disk.

## Driver Access

Some device drivers are called only from a single application thread. In such cases, this functional area is not needed. However, in applications where multiple threads need simultaneous driver access, their interaction must be controlled by adding assign/ release facilities in the device driver. Alternatively, the application may use a semaphore to control driver access and avoid extra overhead and complication inside the driver.

## Driver Input

This functional area is responsible for all device input. The principal issues associated with driver input usually involve how the input is buffered and how threads wait for such input.

## Driver Output

This functional area is responsible for all device output. The principal issues associated with driver output usually involve how the output is buffered and how threads wait to perform output.

## Driver Interrupts

Most real-time systems rely on hardware interrupts to notify the driver of device input, output, control, and error events. Interrupts provide a guaranteed response time to such external events. Instead of interrupts, the driver software may periodically check the external hardware for such events. This technique is called *polling*. It is less real-time than interrupts, but polling may make sense for some less real-time applications.

## Driver Status

This function area is responsible for providing runtime status and statistics associated with the driver operation. Information managed by this function area typically includes the following:

- Current device status
- Input bytes
- Output bytes
- Device error counts

## Driver Termination

This functional area is optional. It is only required if the driver and/or the physical hardware device need to be shut down. After being terminated, the driver must not be called again until it is re-initialized.

# Simple Driver Example

An example is the best way to describe a device driver. In this example, the driver assumes a simple serial hardware device with a configuration register, an input register, and an output register. This simple driver example illustrates the initialization, input, output, and interrupt functional areas.

## Simple Driver Initialization

The `tx_sdriver_initialize` function of the simple driver creates two counting semaphores that are used to manage the driver's input and output operation. The input semaphore is set by the input ISR when a character is received by the serial hardware device. Because of this, the input semaphore is created with an initial count of zero.

Conversely, the output semaphore indicates the availability of the serial hardware transmit register. It is created with a value of one to indicate the transmit register is initially available.

The initialization function is also responsible for installing the low-level interrupt vector handlers for input and output notifications. Like other ThreadX SMP interrupt service routines, the low-level handler must call `_tx_thread_context_save` before calling the simple driver ISR. After the driver ISR returns, the low-level handler must call `_tx_thread_context_restore`.

### IMPORTANT

It is important that initialization is called before any of the other driver functions. Typically, driver initialization is called from **tx\_application\_define**.

See Figure 9 on page 306 for the initialization source code of the simple driver.

```
VOID    tx_sdriver_initialize(VOID)
{
    /* Initialize the two counting semaphores used to control
       the simple driver I/O. */
    tx_semaphore_create(&tx_sdriver_input_semaphore,
                       "simple driver input semaphore", 0);
    tx_semaphore_create(&tx_sdriver_output_semaphore,
                       "simple driver output semaphore", 1);

    /* Setup interrupt vectors for input and output ISRs.
       The initial vector handling should call the ISRs
       defined in this file. */

    /* Configure serial device hardware for RX/TX interrupt
       generation, baud rate, stop bits, etc. */
}
```

FIGURE 9. Simple Driver Initialization

### Simple Driver Input

Input for the simple driver centers around the input semaphore. When a serial device input interrupt is received, the input semaphore is set. If one or more threads are waiting for a character from the driver, the thread waiting the longest is resumed. If no threads are waiting, the semaphore simply remains set until a thread calls the drive input function.

There are several limitations to the simple driver input handling. The most significant is the potential for dropping input characters. This is possible because there is no ability to buffer input characters that arrive before the previous character is processed. This is easily handled by adding an input character buffer.

### IMPORTANT

Only threads are allowed to call the **tx\_sdriver\_input** function.

Figure 10 shows the source code associated with simple driver input.

```

UCHAR    tx_sdriver_input(VOID)
{
    /* Determine if there is a character waiting. If not,
       suspend. */
    tx_semaphore_get(&tx_sdriver_input_semaphore,
                     TX_WAIT_FOREVER;
    /* Return character from serial RX hardware register. */
    return(*serial_hardware_input_ptr);
}

VOID     tx_sdriver_input_ISR(VOID)
{
    /* See if an input character notification is pending. */
    if (!tx_sdriver_input_semaphore.tx_semaphore_count)
    {
        /* If not, notify thread of an input character. */
        tx_semaphore_put(&tx_sdriver_input_semaphore);
    }
}

```

FIGURE 10. Simple Driver Input

### Simple Driver Output

Output processing utilizes the output semaphore to signal when the serial device's transmit register is free. Before an output character is actually written to the device, the output semaphore is obtained. If it is not available, the previous transmit is not yet complete.

The output ISR is responsible for handling the transmit complete interrupt. Processing of the output ISR amounts to setting the output semaphore, thereby allowing output of another character.

#### IMPORTANT

Only threads are allowed to call the **tx\_sdriver\_output** function.

Figure 11 shows the source code associated with simple driver output.

```

VOID     tx_sdriver_output(UCHAR alpha)
{
    /* Determine if the hardware is ready to transmit a
       character. If not, suspend until the previous output
       completes. */
    tx_semaphore_get(&tx_sdriver_output_semaphore,
                     TX_WAIT_FOREVER);
    /* Send the character through the hardware. */
    *serial_hardware_output_ptr = alpha;
}

VOID     tx_sdriver_output_ISR(VOID)
{
    /* Notify thread last character transmit is
       complete. */
    tx_semaphore_put(&tx_sdriver_output_semaphore);
}

```

FIGURE 11. Simple Driver Output

### Simple Driver Shortcomings

This simple device driver example illustrates the basic idea of a ThreadX SMP device driver. However, because

the simple device driver does not address data buffering or any overhead issues, it does not fully represent real-world ThreadX SMP drivers. The following section describes some of the more advanced issues associated with device drivers.

## Advanced Driver Issues

As mentioned previously, device drivers have requirements as unique as their applications. Some applications may require an enormous amount of data buffering while another application may require optimized driver ISRs because of high-frequency device interrupts.

### **I/O Buffering**

Data buffering in real-time embedded applications requires considerable planning. Some of the design is dictated by the underlying hardware device. If the device provides basic byte I/O, a simple circular buffer is probably in order. However, if the device provides block, DMA, or packet I/O, a buffer management scheme is probably warranted.

### **Circular Byte Buffers**

Circular byte buffers are typically used in drivers that manage a simple serial hardware device like a UART. Two circular buffers are most often used in such situations—one for input and one for output.

Each circular byte buffer is comprised of a byte memory area (typically an array of UCHARs), a read pointer, and a write pointer. A buffer is considered empty when the read pointer and the write pointers reference the same memory location in the buffer. Driver initialization sets both the read and write buffer pointers to the beginning address of the buffer.

### **Circular Buffer Input**

The input buffer is used to hold characters that arrive before the application is ready for them. When an input character is received (usually in an interrupt service routine), the new character is retrieved from the hardware device and placed into the input buffer at the location pointed to by the write pointer. The write pointer is then advanced to the next position in the buffer. If the next position is past the end of the buffer, the write pointer is set to the beginning of the buffer. The queue full condition is handled by canceling the write pointer advancement if the new write pointer is the same as the read pointer.

Application input byte requests to the driver first examine the read and write pointers of the input buffer. If the read and write pointers are identical, the buffer is empty. Otherwise, if the read pointer is not the same, the byte pointed to by the read pointer is copied from the input buffer and the read pointer is advanced to the next buffer location. If the new read pointer is past the end of the buffer, it is reset to the beginning. Figure 12 shows the logic for the circular input buffer.

```

UCHAR    tx_input_buffer[MAX_SIZE];
UCHAR    tx_input_write_ptr;
UCHAR    tx_input_read_ptr;

/* Initialization. */
tx_input_write_ptr = &tx_input_buffer[0];
tx_input_read_ptr = &tx_input_buffer[0];

/* Input byte ISR... UCHAR alpha has character from device. */
save_ptr = tx_input_write_ptr;
*tx_input_write_ptr++ = alpha;
if (tx_input_write_ptr > &tx_input_buffer[MAX_SIZE-1])
    tx_input_write_ptr = &tx_input_buffer[0]; /* Wrap */
if (tx_input_write_ptr == tx_input_read_ptr)
    tx_input_write_ptr = save_ptr; /* Buffer full */

/* Retrieve input byte from buffer... */
if (tx_input_read_ptr != tx_input_write_ptr)
{
    alpha = *tx_input_read_ptr++;
    if (tx_input_read_ptr > &tx_input_buffer[MAX_SIZE-1])
        tx_input_read_ptr = &tx_input_buffer[0];
}

```

**FIGURE 12. Logic for Circular Input Buffer**

#### **IMPORTANT**

For reliable operation, it may be necessary to lockout interrupts when manipulating the read and write pointers of both the input and output circular buffers.

### **Circular Output Buffer**

The output buffer is used to hold characters that have arrived for output before the hardware device finished sending the previous byte. Output buffer processing is similar to input buffer processing, except the transmit complete interrupt processing manipulates the output read pointer, while the application output request utilizes the output write pointer. Otherwise, the output buffer processing is the same. Figure 13 shows the logic for the circular output buffer.



```

UCHAR    tx_output_buffer[MAX_SIZE];
UCHAR    tx_output_write_ptr;
UCHAR    tx_output_read_ptr;

/* Initialization. */
tx_output_write_ptr = &tx_output_buffer[0];
tx_output_read_ptr = &tx_output_buffer[0];

/* Transmit complete ISR... Device ready to send. */
if (tx_output_read_ptr != tx_output_write_ptr)
{
    *device_reg = *tx_output_read_ptr++;
    if (tx_output_read_ptr > &tx_output_buffer[MAX_SIZE-1])
        tx_output_read_ptr = &tx_output_buffer[0];
}

/* Output byte driver service. If device busy, buffer! */
save_ptr = tx_output_write_ptr;
*tx_output_write_ptr++ = alpha;
if (tx_output_write_ptr > &tx_output_buffer[MAX_SIZE-1])
    tx_output_write_ptr = &tx_output_buffer[0]; /* Wrap */
if (tx_output_write_ptr == tx_output_read_ptr)
    tx_output_write_ptr = save_ptr; /* Buffer full! */

```

FIGURE 13. Logic for Circular Output Buffer

### Buffer I/O Management

To improve the performance of embedded microprocessors, many peripheral device devices transmit and receive data with buffers supplied by software. In some implementations, multiple buffers may be used to transmit or receive individual packets of data.

The size and location of I/O buffers is determined by the application and/or driver software. Typically, buffers are fixed in size and managed within a ThreadX SMP block memory pool. Figure 14 describes a typical I/O buffer and a ThreadX SMP block memory pool that manages their allocation.

```

typedef struct TX_IO_BUFFER_STRUCT
{
    struct TX_IO_BUFFER_STRUCT *tx_next_packet;
    struct TX_IO_BUFFER_STRUCT *tx_next_buffer;
    UCHAR tx_buffer_area[TX_MAX_BUFFER_SIZE];
} TX_IO_BUFFER;

TX_BLOCK_POOL tx_io_block_pool;

/* Create a pool of I/O buffers. Assume that the pointer
"free_memory_ptr" points to an available memory area that
is 64 KBytes in size. */

tx_block_pool_create(&tx_io_block_pool,
    "Sample IO Driver Buffer Pool",
    free_memory_ptr, 0x10000,
    sizeof(TX_IO_BUFFER));

```

FIGURE 14. I/O Buffer

### TX\_IO\_BUFFER

The typedef TX\_IO\_BUFFER consists of two pointers. The *tx\_next\_packet* pointer is used to link multiple packets on either the input or output list. The *tx\_next\_buffer* pointer is used to link together buffers that make up an individual packet of data from the device. Both of these pointers are set to NULL when the buffer is allocated from the pool. In addition, some devices may require another field to indicate how much of the buffer area

actually contains data.

### Buffered I/O Advantage

What are the advantages of a buffer I/O scheme? The biggest advantage is that data is not copied between the device registers and the application's memory. Instead, the driver provides the device with a series of buffer pointers. Physical device I/O utilizes the supplied buffer memory directly.

Using the processor to copy input or output packets of information is extremely costly and should be avoided in any high throughput I/O situation.

Another advantage to the buffered I/O approach is that the input and output lists do not have full conditions. All of the available buffers can be on either list at any one time. This contrasts with the simple byte circular buffers presented earlier in the chapter. Each had a fixed size determined at compilation.

### Buffered Driver Responsibilities

Buffered device drivers are only concerned with managing linked lists of I/O buffers. An input buffer list is maintained for packets that are received before the application software is ready. Conversely, an output buffer list is maintained for packets being sent faster than the hardware device can handle them. Figure 15 on page 314 shows simple input and output linked lists of data packets and the buffer(s) that make up each packet.

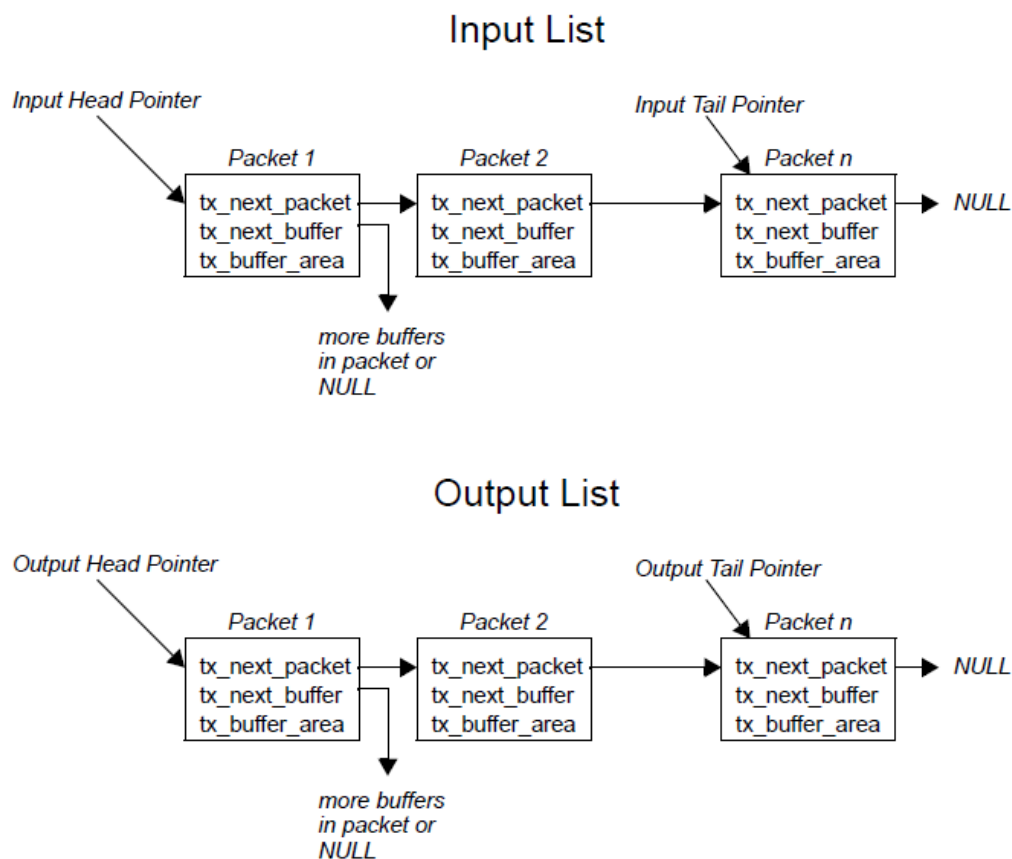


FIGURE 15. Input-Output Lists

Applications interface with buffered drivers with the same I/O buffers. On transmit, application software provides the driver with one or more buffers to transmit. When the application software requests input, the driver returns the input data in I/O buffers.

### **IMPORTANT**

In some applications, it may be useful to build a driver input interface that requires the application to exchange a free buffer for an input buffer from the driver. This might alleviate some buffer allocation processing inside of the driver.

### **Interrupt Management**

In some applications, the device interrupt frequency may prohibit writing the ISR in C or to interact with ThreadX SMP on each interrupt. For example, if it takes 25us to save and restore the interrupted context, it would not be advisable to perform a full context save if the interrupt frequency was 50us. In such cases, a small assembly language ISR is used to handle most of the device interrupts. This lowoverhead ISR would only interact with ThreadX SMP when necessary.

A similar discussion can be found in the interrupt management discussion at the end of Chapter 3.

### **NOTE**

If interrupt lockout is to be used to protect critical sections of driver code from driver ISR code, the thread level driver code must always execute on the same core that the ISR is processed on. Otherwise, internal ThreadX SMP primitives like TX\_DISABLE and TX\_RESTORE should be used that also have inter-core protection built-in.

### **Thread Suspension**

In the simple driver example presented earlier in this chapter, the caller of the input service suspends if a character is not available. In some applications, this might not be acceptable.

For example, if the thread responsible for processing input from a driver also has other duties, suspending on just the driver input is probably not going to work. Instead, the driver needs to be customized to request processing similar to the way other processing requests are made to the thread.

In most cases, the input buffer is placed on a linked list and an input event message is sent to the thread's input queue.

# Chapter 6 - Demonstration System for Azure RTOS ThreadX SMP

11/1/2022 • 12 minutes to read

This chapter contains a description of the demonstration system that is delivered with all Azure RTOS ThreadX SMP processor support packages.

## Overview

Each ThreadX SMP product distribution contains a demonstration system that runs on all supported microprocessors.

This example system is defined in the distribution file *demo\_threadx.c* and is designed to illustrate how ThreadX SMP is used in an embedded multithread environment. The demonstration consists of initialization, eight threads, one byte pool, one block pool, one queue, one semaphore, one mutex, and one event flags group.

### IMPORTANT

Except for the thread's stack size, the demonstration application is identical on all ThreadX SMP supported processors.

The complete listing of *demo\_threadx.c*, including the line numbers referenced throughout the remainder of this chapter, is displayed on page 324 and following.

## Application Define

The *tx\_application\_define* function executes after the basic ThreadX SMP initialization is complete. It is responsible for setting up all of the initial system resources, including threads, queues, semaphores, mutexes, event flags, and memory pools.

The demonstration system's *tx\_application\_define* (line numbers 60-164) creates the demonstration objects in the following order:

```
byte_pool_0
thread_0
thread_1
thread_2
thread_3
thread_4
thread_5
thread_6
thread_7
queue_0
semaphore_0
event_flags_0
mutex_0
block_pool_0
```

The demonstration system does not create any other additional ThreadX SMP objects. However, an actual application may create system objects during runtime inside of executing threads.

### Initial Execution

All threads are created with the `TX_AUTO_START` option. This makes them initially ready for execution. After

*tx\_application\_define* completes, control is transferred to the thread scheduler and from there to each individual thread.

The order in which the threads execute is determined by their priority and the order that they were created. In the demonstration system, *thread\_0* executes first because it has the highest priority (*it was created with a priority of 1*). After *thread\_0* suspends, *thread\_5* is executed, followed by the execution of *thread\_3*, *thread\_4*, *thread\_6*, *thread\_7*, *thread\_1*, and finally *thread\_2*.

#### IMPORTANT

Even though *thread\_3* and *thread\_4* have the same priority (both created with a priority of 8), *thread\_3* executes first. This is because *thread\_3* was created and became ready before *thread\_4*. Threads of equal priority execute in a FIFO fashion.

## Thread 0

The function *thread\_0\_entry* marks the entry point of the thread (*lines 167-190*). *Thread\_0* is the first thread in the demonstration system to execute. Its processing is simple: it increments its counter, sleeps for 10 timer ticks, sets an event flag to wake up *thread\_5*, then repeats the sequence.

*Thread\_0* is the highest priority thread in the system. When its requested sleep expires, it will preempt any other executing thread in the demonstration.

## Thread 1

The function *thread\_1\_entry* marks the entry point of the thread (*lines 193-216*). *Thread\_1* is the second-to-last thread in the demonstration system to execute. Its processing consists of incrementing its counter, sending a message to *thread\_2* (through *queue\_0*), and repeating the sequence. Notice that *thread\_1* suspends whenever *queue\_0* becomes full (*line 207*).

## Thread 2

The function *thread\_2\_entry* marks the entry point of the thread (*lines 219-243*). *Thread\_2* is the last thread in the demonstration system to execute. Its processing consists of incrementing its counter, getting a message from *thread\_1* (through *queue\_0*), and repeating the sequence. Notice that *thread\_2* suspends whenever *queue\_0* becomes empty (*line 233*).

Although *thread\_1* and *thread\_2* share the lowest priority in the demonstration system (*priority 16*), they are also the only threads that are ready for execution most of the time. They are also the only threads created with time-slicing (*lines 87 and 93*). Each thread is allowed to execute for a maximum of 4 timer ticks before the other thread is executed.

## Threads 3 and 4

The function *thread\_3\_and\_4\_entry* marks the entry point of both *thread\_3* and *thread\_4* (*lines 246-280*). Both threads have a priority of 8, which makes them the third and fourth threads in the demonstration system to execute. The processing for each thread is the same: incrementing its counter, getting *semaphore\_0*, sleeping for 2 timer ticks, releasing *semaphore\_0*, and repeating the sequence. Notice that each thread suspends whenever *semaphore\_0* is unavailable (*line 264*).

Also both threads use the same function for their main processing. This presents no problems because they both have their own unique stack, and C is naturally reentrant. Each thread determines which one it is by examination of the thread input parameter (*line 258*), which is setup when they are created (*lines 102 and 109*).

#### IMPORTANT

It is also reasonable to obtain the current thread point during thread execution and compare it with the control block's address to determine thread identity.

## Thread 5

The function *thread\_5\_entry* marks the entry point of the thread (*lines 283-305*). *Thread\_5* is the second thread in the demonstration system to execute. Its processing consists of incrementing its counter, getting an event flag from *thread\_0* (through *event\_flags\_0*), and repeating the sequence. Notice that *thread\_5* suspends whenever the event flag in *event\_flags\_0* is not available (*line 298*).

## Threads 6 and 7

The function *thread\_6\_and\_7\_entry* marks the entry point of both *thread\_6* and *thread\_7* (*lines 307-358*). Both threads have a priority of 8, which makes them the fifth and sixth threads in the demonstration system to execute. The processing for each thread is the same: incrementing its counter, getting *mutex\_0* twice, sleeping for 2 timer ticks, releasing *mutex\_0* twice, and repeating the sequence. Notice that each thread suspends whenever *mutex\_0* is unavailable (*line 325*).

Also both threads use the same function for their main processing. This presents no problems because they both have their own unique stack, and C is naturally reentrant. Each thread determines which one it is by examination of the thread input parameter (*line 319*), which is setup when they are created (*lines 126 and 133*).

## Observing the Demonstration

Each of the demonstration threads increments its own unique counter. The following counters may be examined to check on the demo's operation:

```
thread_0_counter
thread_1_counter
thread_2_counter
thread_3_counter
thread_4_counter
thread_5_counter
thread_6_counter
thread_7_counter
```

Each of these counters should continue to increase as the demonstration executes, with *thread\_1\_counter* and *thread\_2\_counter* increasing at the fastest rate.

## Distribution file: demo\_threadx.c

This section displays the complete listing of *demo\_threadx.c*, including the line numbers referenced throughout this chapter.

```
000 /* This is a small demo of the high-performance ThreadX SMP kernel. It includes examples of eight
001 threads of different priorities, using a message queue, semaphore, mutex, event flags group,
002 byte pool, and block pool. */
003
004 #include "tx_api.h"
005
006 #define DEMO_STACK_SIZE          1024
007 #define DEMO_BYTE_POOL_SIZE      9120
008 #define DEMO_BLOCK_POOL_SIZE     100
009 #define DEMO_QUEUE_SIZE          100
```

```

010
011 /* Define the ThreadX SMP object control blocks... */
012
013 TX_THREAD          thread_0;
014 TX_THREAD          thread_1;
015 TX_THREAD          thread_2;
016 TX_THREAD          thread_3;
017 TX_THREAD          thread_4;
018 TX_THREAD          thread_5;
019 TX_THREAD          thread_6;
020 TX_THREAD          thread_7;
021 TX_QUEUE           queue_0;
022 TX_SEMAPHORE        semaphore_0;
023 TX_MUTEX            mutex_0;
024 TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP event_flags_0;
025 TX_BYTE_POOL        byte_pool_0;
026 TX_BLOCK_POOL       block_pool_0;
027
028 /* Define the counters used in the demo application... */
029
030 ULONG              thread_0_counter;
031 ULONG              thread_1_counter;
032 ULONG              thread_1_messages_sent;
033 ULONG              thread_2_counter;
034 ULONG              thread_2_messages_received;
035 ULONG              thread_3_counter;
036 ULONG              thread_4_counter;
037 ULONG              thread_5_counter;
038 ULONG              thread_6_counter;
039 ULONG              thread_7_counter;
040
041 /* Define thread prototypes. */
042
043 void thread_0_entry(ULONG thread_input);
044 void thread_1_entry(ULONG thread_input);
045 void thread_2_entry(ULONG thread_input);
046 void thread_3_and_4_entry(ULONG thread_input);
047 void thread_5_entry(ULONG thread_input);
048 void thread_6_and_7_entry(ULONG thread_input);
049
050
051 /* Define main entry point. */
052
053 int main()
054 {
055
056     /* Enter the ThreadX SMP kernel. */
057     tx_kernel_enter();
058 }
059
060 /* Define what the initial system looks like. */
061 void tx_application_define(void *first_unused_memory)
062 {
063
064     CHAR *pointer;
065
066     /* Create a byte memory pool from which to allocate the thread stacks. */
067     tx_byte_pool_create(&byte_pool_0, "byte pool 0", first_unused_memory,
068                        DEMO_BYTE_POOL_SIZE);
069
070     /* Put system definition stuff in here, e.g., thread creates and other assorted
071        create information. */
072
073     /* Allocate the stack for thread 0. */
074     tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);
075
076     /* Create the main thread. */
077     tx_thread_create(&thread_0, "thread 0", thread_0_entry, 0,
078                    pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,

```

```

079             1, 1, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE, TX_AUTO_START);
080
081 /* Allocate the stack for thread 1. */
082 tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);
083
084 /* Create threads 1 and 2. These threads pass information through a ThreadX SMP
085    message queue. It is also interesting to note that these threads have a time
086    slice. */
087 tx_thread_create(&thread_1, "thread 1", thread_1_entry, 1,
088                 pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,
089                 16, 16, 4, TX_AUTO_START);
090
091 /* Allocate the stack for thread 2. */
092 tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);
093 tx_thread_create(&thread_2, "thread 2", thread_2_entry, 2,
094                 pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,
095                 16, 16, 4, TX_AUTO_START);
096
097 /* Allocate the stack for thread 3. */
098 tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);
099
100 /* Create threads 3 and 4. These threads compete for a ThreadX SMP counting semaphore.
101    An interesting thing here is that both threads share the same instruction area. */
102 tx_thread_create(&thread_3, "thread 3", thread_3_and_4_entry, 3,
103                 pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,
104                 8, 8, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE, TX_AUTO_START);
105
106 /* Allocate the stack for thread 4. */
107 tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);
108
109 tx_thread_create(&thread_4, "thread 4", thread_3_and_4_entry, 4,
110                 pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,
111                 8, 8, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE, TX_AUTO_START);
112
113 /* Allocate the stack for thread 5. */
114 tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);
115
116 /* Create thread 5. This thread simply pends on an event flag, which will be set
117    by thread_0. */
118 tx_thread_create(&thread_5, "thread 5", thread_5_entry, 5,
119                 pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,
120                 4, 4, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE, TX_AUTO_START);
121
122 /* Allocate the stack for thread 6. */
123 tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);
124
125 /* Create threads 6 and 7. These threads compete for a ThreadX SMP mutex. */
126 tx_thread_create(&thread_6, "thread 6", thread_6_and_7_entry, 6,
127                 pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,
128                 8, 8, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE, TX_AUTO_START);
129
130 /* Allocate the stack for thread 7. */
131 tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);
132
133 tx_thread_create(&thread_7, "thread 7", thread_6_and_7_entry, 7,
134                 pointer, DEMO_STACK_SIZE,
135                 8, 8, TX_NO_TIME_SLICE, TX_AUTO_START);
136
137 /* Allocate the message queue. */
138 tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_QUEUE_SIZE*sizeof(ULONG), TX_NO_WAIT);
139
140 /* Create the message queue shared by threads 1 and 2. */
141 tx_queue_create(&queue_0, "queue 0", TX_1_ULONG, pointer, DEMO_QUEUE_SIZE*sizeof(ULONG));
142
143 /* Create the semaphore used by threads 3 and 4. */
144 tx_semaphore_create(&semaphore_0, "semaphore 0", 1);
145
146 /* Create the event flags group used by threads 1 and 5. */
147 tx_event_flags_create(&event_flags_0, "event flags 0");

```



```

148
149  /* Create the mutex used by thread 6 and 7 without priority inheritance. */
150  tx_mutex_create(&mutex_0, "mutex 0", TX_NO_INHERIT);
151
152  /* Allocate the memory for a small block pool. */
153  tx_byte_allocate(&byte_pool_0, &pointer, DEMO_BLOCK_POOL_SIZE, TX_NO_WAIT);
154
155  /* Create a block memory pool to allocate a message buffer from. */
156  tx_block_pool_create(&block_pool_0, "block pool 0", sizeof(ULONG), pointer,
157                      DEMO_BLOCK_POOL_SIZE);
158
159  /* Allocate a block and release the block memory. */
160  tx_block_allocate(&block_pool_0, &pointer, TX_NO_WAIT);
161
162  /* Release the block back to the pool. */
163  tx_block_release(pointer);
164 }
165
166  /* Define the test threads. */
167  void thread_0_entry(ULONG thread_input)
168 {
169
170  UINT status;
171
172
173  /* This thread simply sits in while-forever-sleep loop. */
174  while(1)
175  {
176
177  /* Increment the thread counter. */
178  thread_0_counter++;
179
180  /* Sleep for 10 ticks. */
181  tx_thread_sleep(10);
182
183  /* Set event flag 0 to wakeup thread 5. */
184  status = tx_event_flags_set(&event_flags_0, 0x1, TX_OR);
185
186  /* Check status. */
187  if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
188      break;
189  }
190 }
191
192
193 void thread_1_entry(ULONG thread_input)
194 {
195
196  UINT status;
197
198
199  /* This thread simply sends messages to a queue shared by thread 2. */
200  while(1)
201  {
202
203  /* Increment the thread counter. */
204  thread_1_counter++;
205
206  /* Send message to queue 0. */
207  status = tx_queue_send(&queue_0, &thread_1_messages_sent, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);
208
209  /* Check completion status. */
210  if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
211      break;
212
213  /* Increment the message sent. */
214  thread_1_messages_sent++;
215  }
216 }

```

```

216 }
217
218
219 void    thread_2_entry(ULONG thread_input)
220 {
221
222     ULONG    received_message;
223     UINT     status;
224
225     /* This thread retrieves messages placed on the queue by thread 1. */
226     while(1)
227     {
228
229         /* Increment the thread counter. */
230         thread_2_counter++;
231
232         /* Retrieve a message from the queue. */
233         status = tx_queue_receive(&queue_0, &received_message, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);
234
235         /* Check completion status and make sure the message is what we
236            expected. */
237         if ((status != TX_SUCCESS) || (received_message != thread_2_messages_received))
238             break;
239
240         /* Otherwise, all is okay. Increment the received message count. */
241         thread_2_messages_received++;
242     }
243 }
244
245
246 void    thread_3_and_4_entry(ULONG thread_input)
247 {
248
249     UINT     status;
250
251
252     /* This function is executed from thread 3 and thread 4. As the loop
253        below shows, these function compete for ownership of semaphore_0. */
254     while(1)
255     {
256
257         /* Increment the thread counter. */
258         if (thread_input == 3)
259             thread_3_counter++;
260         else
261             thread_4_counter++;
262
263         /* Get the semaphore with suspension. */
264         status = tx_semaphore_get(&semaphore_0, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);
265
266         /* Check status. */
267         if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
268             break;
269
270         /* Sleep for 2 ticks to hold the semaphore. */
271         tx_thread_sleep(2);
272
273         /* Release the semaphore. */
274         status = tx_semaphore_put(&semaphore_0);
275
276         /* Check status. */
277         if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
278             break;
279     }
280 }
281
282
283 void    thread_5_entry(ULONG thread_input)
284 {
285

```

```

285
286 UINT      status;
287 ULONG      actual_flags;
288
289
290 /* This thread simply waits for an event in a forever loop. */
291 while(1)
292 {
293
294     /* Increment the thread counter. */
295     thread_5_counter++;
296
297     /* Wait for event flag 0. */
298     status = tx_event_flags_get(&event_flags_0, 0x1, TX_OR_CLEAR,
299                                &actual_flags, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);
300
301     /* Check status. */
302     if ((status != TX_SUCCESS) || (actual_flags != 0x1))
303         break;
304 }
305 }
306
307 void      thread_6_and_7_entry(ULONG thread_input)
308 {
309
310     UINT      status;
311
312
313     /* This function is executed from thread 6 and thread 7. As the loop
314        below shows, these function compete for ownership of mutex_0. */
315     while(1)
316     {
317
318         /* Increment the thread counter. */
319         if (thread_input == 6)
320             thread_6_counter++;
321         else
322             thread_7_counter++;
323
324         /* Get the mutex with suspension. */
325         status = tx_mutex_get(&mutex_0, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);
326
327         /* Check status. */
328         if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
329             break;
330
331         /* Get the mutex again with suspension. This shows
332            that an owning thread may retrieve the mutex it
333            owns multiple times. */
334         status = tx_mutex_get(&mutex_0, TX_WAIT_FOREVER);
335
336         /* Check status. */
337         if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
338             break;
339
340         /* Sleep for 2 ticks to hold the mutex. */
341         tx_thread_sleep(2);
342
343         /* Release the mutex. */
344         status = tx_mutex_put(&mutex_0);
345
346         /* Check status. */
347         if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
348             break;
349
350         /* Release the mutex again. This will actually
351            release ownership since it was obtained twice. */
352         status = tx_mutex_put(&mutex_0);
353

```

```
354      /* Check status. */
355      if (status != TX_SUCCESS)
356          break;
357  }
358 }
```

# Appendix A - Azure RTOS ThreadX SMP API Services

11/1/2022 • 3 minutes to read

## Entry Function

```
VOID    tx_kernel_enter(VOID);
```

## Block Memory Services

```
UINT    tx_block_allocate(TX_BLOCK_POOL *pool_ptr,
                          VOID **block_ptr, ULONG wait_option);

UINT    tx_block_pool_create(TX_BLOCK_POOL *pool_ptr,
                             CHAR *name_ptr, ULONG block_size,
                             VOID *pool_start, ULONG pool_size);

UINT    tx_block_pool_delete(TX_BLOCK_POOL *pool_ptr);

UINT    tx_block_pool_info_get(TX_BLOCK_POOL
                              *pool_ptr,
                              CHAR **name,
                              ULONG *available_blocks, ULONG
                              *total_blocks,
                              TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
                              ULONG *suspended_count,
                              TX_BLOCK_POOL **next_pool);

UINT    tx_block_pool_performance_info_get(TX_BLOCK_POOL
                                             *pool_ptr,
                                             ULONG *allocates, ULONG *releases, ULONG
                                             *suspensions,
                                             ULONG *timeouts);

UINT    tx_block_pool_performance_system_info_get(
                                             ULONG *allocates,
                                             ULONG *releases, ULONG *suspensions, ULONG
                                             *timeouts);

UINT    tx_block_pool_prioritize(TX_BLOCK_POOL
                                  *pool_ptr);

UINT    tx_block_release(VOID *block_ptr);
```

## Byte Memory Services

```

UINT    tx_byte_allocate(TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr,
                        VOID **memory_ptr,
                        ULONG memory_size, ULONG wait_option);

UINT    tx_byte_pool_create(TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr,
                        CHAR *name_ptr,
                        VOID *pool_start, ULONG pool_size);

UINT    tx_byte_pool_delete(TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr);

UINT    tx_byte_pool_info_get(TX_BYTE_POOL *pool_ptr,
                        CHAR **name, ULONG *available_bytes,
                        ULONG *fragments, TX_THREAD
                        **first_suspended,
                        ULONG *suspended_count,
                        TX_BYTE_POOL **next_pool);

UINT    tx_byte_pool_performance_info_get(TX_BYTE_POOL
                        *pool_ptr,
                        ULONG *allocates,
                        ULONG *releases, ULONG *fragments_searched,
                        ULONG *merges,
                        ULONG *splits, ULONG *suspensions, ULONG
                        *timeouts);

UINT    tx_byte_pool_performance_system_info_get(ULONG
                        *allocates,
                        ULONG *releases, ULONG *fragments_searched,
                        ULONG *merges, ULONG *splits, ULONG
                        *suspensions, ULONG *timeouts);

UINT    tx_byte_pool_prioritize(TX_BYTE_POOL
                        *pool_ptr);

UINT    tx_byte_release(VOID *memory_ptr);

```

## Event Flags Services

```

UINT      tx_event_flags_create(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP
                                *group_ptr,
                                CHAR *name_ptr);

UINT      tx_event_flags_delete(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP
                                *group_ptr);

UINT      tx_event_flags_get(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP
                                *group_ptr,
                                ULONG requested_flags, UINT get_option,
                                ULONG *actual_flags_ptr, ULONG
                                wait_option);

UINT      tx_event_flags_info_get(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP
                                *group_ptr,
                                CHAR **name, ULONG *current_flags,
                                TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
                                ULONG *suspended_count,
                                TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP **next_group);

UINT      tx_event_flags_performance_info_get(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP *group_ptr, ULONG *sets,
                                                ULONG *gets, ULONG *suspensions,
                                                ULONG *timeouts);

UINT      tx_event_flags_performance_system_info_get(ULONG *sets, ULONG *gets,
                                                ULONG *suspensions, ULONG *timeouts);

UINT      tx_event_flags_set(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP
                                *group_ptr,
                                ULONG flags_to_set, UINT set_option);

UINT      tx_event_flags_set_notify(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP
                                *group_ptr,
                                VOID
                                (*events_set_notify)(TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP
                                *));

```

## Interrupt Control

```

UINT      tx_interrupt_control(UINT new_posture);

```

## Mutex Services

```
UINT    tx_mutex_create(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr, CHAR
        *name_ptr,
        UINT inherit);

UINT    tx_mutex_delete(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr);

UINT    tx_mutex_get(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr, ULONG
        wait_option);

UINT    tx_mutex_info_get(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr, CHAR
        **name,
        ULONG *count, TX_THREAD **owner,
        TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
        ULONG *suspended_count,
        TX_MUTEX **next_mutex);

UINT    tx_mutex_performance_info_get(TX_MUTEX
        *mutex_ptr, ULONG *puts, ULONG *gets, ULONG
        *suspensions, ULONG *timeouts,
        ULONG *inversions, ULONG *inheritances);

UINT    tx_mutex_performance_system_info_get(ULONG
        *puts, ULONG *gets,
        ULONG *suspensions, ULONG *timeouts, ULONG
        *inversions,
        ULONG *inheritances);

UINT    tx_mutex_prioritize(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr);

UINT    tx_mutex_put(TX_MUTEX *mutex_ptr);
```

## Queue Services



```

UINT    tx_queue_create(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr, CHAR
        *name_ptr,
        UINT message_size, VOID *queue_start,
        ULONG queue_size);

UINT    tx_queue_delete(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr);

UINT    tx_queue_flush(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr);

UINT    tx_queue_front_send(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr, VOID
        *source_ptr,
        ULONG wait_option);

UINT    tx_queue_info_get(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr, CHAR
        **name,
        ULONG *enqueued, ULONG *available_storage,
        TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
        ULONG *suspended_count, TX_QUEUE
        **next_queue);

UINT    tx_queue_performance_info_get(TX_QUEUE
        *queue_ptr,
        ULONG *messages_sent, ULONG
        *messages_received,
        ULONG *empty_suspensions, ULONG
        *full_suspensions,
        ULONG *full_errors, ULONG *timeouts);

UINT    tx_queue_performance_system_info_get(ULONG
        *messages_sent,
        ULONG *messages_received, ULONG
        *empty_suspensions,
        ULONG *full_suspensions, ULONG
        *full_errors,
        ULONG *timeouts);

UINT    tx_queue_prioritize(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr);

UINT    tx_queue_receive(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr,
        VOID *destination_ptr, ULONG wait_option);

UINT    tx_queue_send(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr, VOID
        *source_ptr,
        ULONG wait_option);

UINT    tx_queue_send_notify(TX_QUEUE *queue_ptr, VOID
        (*queue_send_notify)(TX_QUEUE *));

```

## Semaphore Services

```

UINT    tx_semaphore_ceiling_put(TX_SEMAPHORE
        *semaphore_ptr,
        ULONG ceiling);

UINT    tx_semaphore_create(TX_SEMAPHORE
        *semaphore_ptr,
        CHAR *name_ptr, ULONG initial_count);

UINT    tx_semaphore_delete(TX_SEMAPHORE
        *semaphore_ptr);

UINT    tx_semaphore_get(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr,
        ULONG wait_option);

UINT    tx_semaphore_info_get(TX_SEMAPHORE
        *semaphore_ptr, CHAR **name,
        ULONG *current_value,
        TX_THREAD **first_suspended,
        ULONG *suspended_count,
        TX_SEMAPHORE **next_semaphore);

UINT    tx_semaphore_performance_info_get(TX_SEMAPHORE
        *semaphore_ptr,
        ULONG *puts, ULONG *gets, ULONG
        *suspensions,
        ULONG *timeouts);

UINT    tx_semaphore_performance_system_info_get(ULONG
        *puts,
        ULONG *gets, ULONG *suspensions, ULONG
        *timeouts);

UINT    tx_semaphore_prioritize(TX_SEMAPHORE
        *semaphore_ptr);

UINT    tx_semaphore_put(TX_SEMAPHORE *semaphore_ptr);

UINT    tx_semaphore_put_notify(TX_SEMAPHORE
        *semaphore_ptr,
        VOID (*semaphore_put_notify)(TX_SEMAPHORE
        *));

```

## Thread Control Services

```

UINT    tx_thread_create(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr,
        CHAR *name_ptr,
        VOID (*entry_function)(ULONG), ULONG
        entry_input,
        VOID *stack_start, ULONG stack_size,
        UINT priority, UINT preempt_threshold,
        ULONG time_slice, UINT auto_start);

UINT    tx_thread_delete(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);

UINT    tx_thread_entry_exit_notify(TX_THREAD
        *thread_ptr,
        VOID (*thread_entry_exit_notify)(TX_THREAD
        *, UINT));

TX_THREAD *tx_thread_identify(VOID);

UINT    tx_thread_info_get(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr, CHAR
        **name,
        UINT *state, ULONG *run_count, UINT
        *priority,

```

```

        UINT *preemption_threshold, ULONG
        *time_slice,
        TX_THREAD **next_thread,
        TX_THREAD **next_suspended_thread);

UINT tx_thread_performance_info_get(TX_THREAD
    *thread_ptr,
    ULONG *resumptions, ULONG *suspensions,
    ULONG *solicited_preemptions,
    ULONG *interrupt_preemptions,
    ULONG *priority_inversions, ULONG
    *time_slices, ULONG *relinquishes, ULONG
    *timeouts,
    ULONG *wait_aborts, TX_THREAD
    **last_preempted_by);

UINT tx_thread_performance_system_info_get(ULONG
    *resumptions,
    ULONG *suspensions,
    ULONG *solicited_preemptions,
    ULONG *interrupt_preemptions,
    ULONG *priority_inversions, ULONG
    *time_slices, ULONG *relinquishes, ULONG
    *timeouts,
    ULONG *wait_aborts, ULONG
    *non_idle_returns,
    ULONG *idle_returns);

UINT tx_thread_preemption_change(TX_THREAD
    *thread_ptr,
    UINT new_threshold, UINT *old_threshold);

UINT tx_thread_priority_change(TX_THREAD
    *thread_ptr,
    UINT new_priority, UINT *old_priority);

VOID tx_thread_relinquish(VOID);

UINT tx_thread_reset(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);

UINT tx_thread_resume(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);

UINT tx_thread_sleep(ULONG timer_ticks);

UINT tx_thread_smp_core_exclude(TX_THREAD
    *thread_ptr,
    ULONG exclusion_map);

UINT tx_thread_smp_core_exclude_get(TX_THREAD
    *thread_ptr,
    ULONG *exclusion_map_ptr);

UINT tx_thread_smp_core_get(void);

UINT tx_thread_stack_error_notify
    VOID(*stack_error_handler)(TX_THREAD *));

UINT tx_thread_suspend(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);

UINT tx_thread_terminate(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);

UINT tx_thread_time_slice_change(TX_THREAD
    *thread_ptr,
    ULONG new_time_slice, ULONG
    *old_time_slice);

UINT tx_thread_wait_abort(TX_THREAD *thread_ptr);

```

# Time Services

```
ULONG    tx_time_get(VOID);
VOID     tx_time_set(ULONG new_time);
```

## Timer Services

```
UINT     tx_timer_activate(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr);

UINT     tx_timer_change(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr,
    ULONG initial_ticks,
    ULONG reschedule_ticks);

UINT     tx_timer_create(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr,
    CHAR *name_ptr,
    VOID (*expiration_function)(ULONG),
    ULONG expiration_input, ULONG
    initial_ticks,
    ULONG reschedule_ticks, UINT
    auto_activate);

UINT     tx_timer_deactivate(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr);

UINT     tx_timer_delete(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr);

UINT     tx_timer_info_get(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr, CHAR
    **name,
    UINT *active, ULONG *remaining_ticks,
    ULONG *reschedule_ticks,
    TX_TIMER **next_timer);

UINT     tx_timer_performance_info_get(TX_TIMER
    *timer_ptr, ULONG *activates,
    ULONG *reactivates, ULONG *deactivates,
    ULONG *expirations,
    ULONG *expiration_adjusts);

UINT     tx_timer_performance_system_info_get
    ULONG *activates, ULONG *reactivates,
    ULONG *deactivates, ULONG *expirations,
    ULONG *expiration_adjusts);

UINT     tx_timer_smp_core_exclude(TX_TIMER *timer_ptr,
    ULONG exclusion_map);

UINT     tx_timer_smp_core_exclude_get(TX_TIMER
    *timer_ptr,
    ULONG *exclusion_map_ptr);
```

# Appendix B - Azure RTOS ThreadX SMP Constants

11/1/2022 • 2 minutes to read

## Alphabetic Listings

TX_1_ULONG	1
TX_2_ULONG	2
TX_4_ULONG	4
TX_8_ULONG	8
TX_16_ULONG	16
TX_ACTIVATE_ERROR	0x17
TX_AND	2
TX_AND_CLEAR	3
TX_AUTO_ACTIVATE	1
TX_AUTO_START	1
TX_BLOCK_MEMORY	8
TX_BYTE_MEMORY	9
TX_CALLER_ERROR	0x13
TX_CEILING_EXCEEDED	0x21
TX_COMPLETED	1
TX_DELETE_ERROR	0x11
TX_DELETED	0x01
TX_DONT_START	0
TX_EVENT_FLAG	7
TX_FALSE	0
TX_FEATURE_NOT_ENABLED	0xFF
TX_FILE	11
TX_GROUP_ERROR	0x06
TX_INHERIT	1
TX_INHERIT_ERROR	0x1F
TX_INVALID_CEILING	0x22
TX_IO_DRIVER	10
TX_LOOP_FOREVER	1
TX_MUTEX_ERROR	0x1C
TX_MUTEX_SUSP	13
TX_NO_ACTIVATE	0
TX_NO_EVENTS	0x07
TX_NO_INHERIT	0
TX_NO_INSTANCE	0x0D
TX_NO_MEMORY	0x10
TX_NO_TIME_SLICE	0
TX_NO_WAIT	0
TX_NOT_AVAILABLE	0x1D
TX_NOT_DONE	0x20
TX_NOT_OWNED	0x1E
TX_NULL	0
TX_OPTION_ERROR	0x08
TX_OR	0
TX_OR_CLEAR	1
TX_POOL_ERROR	0x02
TX_PRIORITY_ERROR	0x0F
TX_PTR_ERROR	0x03
TX_QUEUE_EMPTY	0x0A
TX_QUEUE_ERROR	0x09
TX_QUEUE_FULL	0x0B
TX_QUEUE_SUSP	5
TX_READY	0
TX_RESUME_ERROR	0x12
TX_SEMAPHORE_ERROR	0x0C
TX_SEMAPHORE_SUSP	6
TX_SIZE_ERROR	0x05
TX_SLEEP	4

TX_STACK_FILL	
0xEFEFEFEFUL	
TX_START_ERROR	0x10
TX_SUCCESS	0x00
TX_SUSPEND_ERROR	0x14
TX_SUSPEND_LIFTED	0x19
TX_SUSPENDED	3
TX_TCP_IP	12
TX_TERMINATED	2
TX_THREAD_ENTRY	0
TX_THREAD_ERROR	0x0E
TX_THREAD_EXIT	1
TX_THRESH_ERROR	0x18
TX_TICK_ERROR	0x16
TX_TIMER_ERROR	0x15
TX_TRUE	1
TX_WAIT_ABORT_ERROR	0x1B
TX_WAIT_ABORTED	0x1A
TX_WAIT_ERROR	0x04
TX_WAIT_FOREVER	
0xFFFFFFFFFUL	

## Listing by Value

TX_DONT_START	0
TX_FALSE	0
TX_NO_ACTIVATE	0
TX_NO_INHERIT	0
TX_NO_TIME_SLICE	0
TX_NO_WAIT	0
TX_NULL	0
TX_OR	0
TX_READY	0
TX_SUCCESS	0x00
TX_THREAD_ENTRY	0
TX_1_ULONG	1
TX_AUTO_ACTIVATE	1
TX_AUTO_START	1
TX_COMPLETED	1
TX_INHERIT	1
TX_LOOP_FOREVER	1
TX_DELETED	0x01
TX_OR_CLEAR	1
TX_THREAD_EXIT	1
TX_TRUE	1
TX_2_ULONG	2
TX_AND	2
TX_POOL_ERROR	0x02
TX_TERMINATED	2
TX_AND_CLEAR	3
TX_PTR_ERROR	0x03
TX_SUSPENDED	3
TX_4_ULONG	4
TX_SLEEP	4
TX_WAIT_ERROR	0x04
TX_QUEUE_SUSP	5
TX_SIZE_ERROR	0x05
TX_GROUP_ERROR	0x06
TX_SEMAPHORE_SUSP	6
TX_EVENT_FLAG	7
TX_NO_EVENTS	0x07
TX_8_ULONG	8
TX_BLOCK_MEMORY	8
TX_OPTION_ERROR	0x08
TX_BYTE_MEMORY	9
TX_QUEUE_ERROR	0x09

TX_IO_DRIVER	10
TX_QUEUE_EMPTY	0x0A
TX_FILE	11
TX_QUEUE_FULL	0x0B
TX_TCP_IP	12
TX_SEMAPHORE_ERROR	0x0C
TX_MUTEX_SUSP	13
TX_NO_INSTANCE	0x0D
TX_THREAD_ERROR	0x0E
TX_PRIORITY_ERROR	0x0F
TX_16_ULONG	16
TX_NO_MEMORY	0x10
TX_START_ERROR	0x10
TX_DELETE_ERROR	0x11
TX_RESUME_ERROR	0x12
TX_CALLER_ERROR	0x13
TX_SUSPEND_ERROR	0x14
TX_TIMER_ERROR	0x15
TX_TICK_ERROR	0x16
TX_ACTIVATE_ERROR	0x17
TX_THRESH_ERROR	0x18
TX_SUSPEND_LIFTED	0x19
TX_WAIT_ABORTED	0x1A
TX_WAIT_ABORT_ERROR	0x1B
TX_MUTEX_ERROR	0x1C
TX_NOT_AVAILABLE	0x1D
TX_NOT_OWNED	0x1E
TX_INHERIT_ERROR	0x1F
TX_NOT_DONE	0x20
TX_CEILING_EXCEEDED	0x21
TX_INVALID_CEILING	0x22
TX_FEATURE_NOT_ENABLED	0xFF
TX_STACK_FILL	
0xEFEFEFEFUL	
TX_WAIT_FOREVER	
0xFFFFFFFFFUL	

# Appendix C - Azure RTOS ThreadX SMP Data Types

11/1/2022 • 2 minutes to read

## TX\_BLOCK\_POOL

```
typedef struct TX_BLOCK_POOL_STRUCT
{
    ULONG tx_block_pool_id;
    CHAR *tx_block_pool_name;
    ULONG tx_block_pool_available;
    ULONG tx_block_pool_total;
    UCHAR *tx_block_pool_available_list;
    UCHAR *tx_block_pool_start;
    ULONG tx_block_pool_size;
    ULONG tx_block_pool_block_size;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT

    *tx_block_pool_suspension_list;
    ULONG tx_block_pool_suspended_count;
    struct TX_BLOCK_POOL_STRUCT

    *tx_block_pool_created_next,

    *tx_block_pool_created_previous;

#ifdef TX_BLOCK_POOL_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
    ULONG
    tx_block_pool_performance_allocate_count;
    ULONG
    tx_block_pool_performance_release_count;
    ULONG
    tx_block_pool_performance_suspension_count;
    ULONG
    tx_block_pool_performance_timeout_count;
#endif

    TX_BLOCK_POOL_EXTENSION /* Port defined */

} TX_BLOCK_POOL;
```

## TX\_BYTE\_POOL



```

typedef struct TX_BYTE_POOL_STRUCT
{
    ULONG tx_byte_pool_id;
    CHAR *tx_byte_pool_name;
    ULONG tx_byte_pool_available;
    ULONG tx_byte_pool_fragments;
    UCHAR *tx_byte_pool_list;
    UCHAR *tx_byte_pool_search;
    UCHAR *tx_byte_pool_start;
    ULONG tx_byte_pool_size;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT
        *tx_byte_pool_owner;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT

*tx_byte_pool_suspension_list;
    ULONG
tx_byte_pool_suspended_count;
    struct TX_BYTE_POOL_STRUCT

*tx_byte_pool_created_next,

*tx_byte_pool_created_previous;

#ifdef TX_BYTE_POOL_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
    ULONG
tx_byte_pool_performance_allocate_count;
    ULONG
tx_byte_pool_performance_release_count;
    ULONG tx_byte_pool_performance_merge_count;
    ULONG tx_byte_pool_performance_split_count;
    ULONG tx_byte_pool_performance_search_count;
    ULONG
tx_byte_pool_performance_suspension_count;
    ULONG
tx_byte_pool_performance_timeout_count;
#endif

    TX_BYTE_POOL_EXTENSION /* Port defined */
} TX_BYTE_POOL;

```

## TX\_EVENT\_FLAGS\_GROUP

```

typedef struct TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP_STRUCT
{
    ULONG tx_event_flags_group_id;
    CHAR *tx_event_flags_group_name;
    ULONG tx_event_flags_group_current;
    UINT tx_event_flags_group_reset_search;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT

*tx_event_flags_group_suspension_list;
    ULONG
tx_event_flags_group_suspended_count;
    struct TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP_STRUCT
*tx_event_flags_group_created_next,

*tx_event_flags_group_created_previous;
    ULONG
tx_event_flags_group_delayed_clear;

#ifdef TX_EVENT_FLAGS_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
    ULONG
tx_event_flags_group_performance_set_count;
    ULONG
tx_event_flags_group__performance_get_count;
    ULONG
tx_event_flags_group___performance_suspension_co
unt;
    ULONG
tx_event_flags_group____performance_timeout_coun
t;
#endif

#ifndef TX_DISABLE_NOTIFY_CALLBACKS

    VOID
(*tx_event_flags_group_set_notify)(struct
TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP_STRUCT *);
#endif

    TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP_EXTENSION /* Port
defined */
} TX_EVENT_FLAGS_GROUP;

```

## TX\_MUTEX

```

typedef struct TX_MUTEX_STRUCT
{
    ULONG tx_mutex_id;
    CHAR *tx_mutex_name;
    ULONG tx_mutex_ownership_count;
    TX_THREAD *tx_mutex_owner;
    UINT tx_mutex_inherit;
    UINT tx_mutex_original_priority;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT
        *tx_mutex_suspension_list;
    ULONG tx_mutex_suspended_count;
    struct TX_MUTEX_STRUCT
        *tx_mutex_created_next,

    *tx_mutex_created_previous;
    ULONG tx_mutex_highest_priority_waiting;
    struct TX_MUTEX_STRUCT
        *tx_mutex_owned_next,
        *tx_mutex_owned_previous;

#ifdef TX_MUTEX_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
    ULONG tx_mutex_performance_put_count;
    ULONG tx_mutex_performance_get_count;
    ULONG tx_mutex_performance_suspension_count;
    ULONG tx_mutex_performance_timeout_count;
    ULONG
tx_mutex_performance_priority_inversion_count;
    ULONG
tx_mutex_performance__priority_inheritance_count
;
#endif

    TX_MUTEX_EXTENSION /* Port defined */

} TX_MUTEX;

```

## TX\_QUEUE

```

typedef struct TX_QUEUE_STRUCT
{
    ULONG tx_queue_id;
    CHAR *tx_queue_name;
    UINT tx_queue_message_size;
    ULONG tx_queue_capacity;
    ULONG tx_queue_enqueued;
    ULONG tx_queue_available_storage;
    ULONG *tx_queue_start;
    ULONG *tx_queue_end;
    ULONG *tx_queue_read;
    ULONG *tx_queue_write;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT
        *tx_queue_suspension_list;
    ULONG tx_queue_suspended_count;
    struct TX_QUEUE_STRUCT
        *tx_queue_created_next,

    *tx_queue_created_previous;

#ifdef TX_QUEUE_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
    ULONG
tx_queue_performance_messages_sent_count;
    ULONG
tx_queue_performance_messages_received_count;
    ULONG
tx_queue_performance_empty_suspension_count;
    ULONG
tx_queue_performance_full_suspension_count;
    ULONG tx_queue_performance_full_error_count;
    ULONG tx_queue_performance_timeout_count;
#endif

#ifdef TX_DISABLE_NOTIFY_CALLBACKS
    VOID *tx_queue_send_notify)(struct
TX_QUEUE_STRUCT *);
#endif

    TX_QUEUE_EXTENSION /* Port defined */

} TX_QUEUE;

```

## TX\_SEMAPHORE

```

typedef struct TX_SEMAPHORE_STRUCT
{
    ULONG tx_semaphore_id;
    CHAR *tx_semaphore_name;
    ULONG tx_semaphore_count;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT

    *tx_semaphore_suspension_list;
    ULONG tx_semaphore_suspended_count;
    struct TX_SEMAPHORE_STRUCT

    *tx_semaphore_created_next,

    *tx_semaphore_created_previous;

#ifdef TX_SEMAPHORE_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
    ULONG tx_semaphore_performance_put_count;
    ULONG tx_semaphore_performance_get_count;
    ULONG
    tx_semaphore_performance_suspension_count;
    ULONG
    tx_semaphore_performance_timeout_count;
#endif

#ifdef TX_DISABLE_NOTIFY_CALLBACKS
    VOID (*tx_semaphore_put_notify)(struct
    TX_SEMAPHORE_STRUCT *);
#endif

    TX_SEMAPHORE_EXTENSION /* Port defined */

} TX_SEMAPHORE;

```

## TX\_THREAD

```

typedef struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT
{
    ULONG tx_thread_id;
    ULONG tx_thread_run_count;
    VOID *tx_thread_stack_ptr;
    VOID *tx_thread_stack_start;
    VOID *tx_thread_stack_end;
    ULONG tx_thread_stack_size;
    ULONG tx_thread_time_slice;
    ULONG tx_thread_new_time_slice;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT

        *tx_thread_ready_next,
        *tx_thread_ready_previous;

    TX_THREAD_EXTENSION_0 /* Port defined */

    CHAR *tx_thread_name;
    UINT tx_thread_priority;
    UINT tx_thread_state;
    UINT tx_thread_delayed_suspend;
    UINT tx_thread_suspending;
    UINT tx_thread_preempt_threshold;
    VOID (*tx_thread_schedule_hook)(struct
    TX_THREAD_STRUCT *, ULONG);
    VOID (*tx_thread_entry)(ULONG);
    ULONG tx_thread_entry_parameter;
    TX_TIMER_INTERNAL tx_thread_timer;
    VOID (*tx_thread_suspend_cleanup)(struct
    TX_THREAD_STRUCT *);
    VOID *tx_thread_suspend_control_block;

```

```

        struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT
            *tx_thread_suspended_next,

*tx_thread_suspended_previous;
    ULONG tx_thread_suspend_info;
    VOID *tx_thread_additional_suspend_info;
    UINT tx_thread_suspend_option;
    UINT tx_thread_suspend_status;

    TX_THREAD_EXTENSION_1 /* Port defined */

    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT
        *tx_thread_created_next,

*tx_thread_created_previous;
    UINT tx_thread_smp_core_mapped;
    ULONG tx_thread_smp_core_control;
    UINT tx_thread_smp_core_executing;

    TX_THREAD_EXTENSION_2 /* Port defined */

    ULONG tx_thread_smp_cores_excluded;
    ULONG tx_thread_smp_cores_allowed;

    VOID *tx_thread_filex_ptr;

    UINT tx_thread_user_priority;
    UINT tx_thread_user_preempt_threshold;
    UINT tx_thread_inherit_priority;
    ULONG tx_thread_owned_mutex_count;
    struct TX_MUTEX_STRUCT
*tx_thread_owned_mutex_list;

#ifdef TX_THREAD_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
    ULONG tx_thread_performance_resume_count;
    ULONG tx_thread_performance_suspend_count;
    ULONG
tx_thread_performance_solicited_preemption_count
;
    ULONG
tx_thread_performance_interrupt_preemption_count
;
    ULONG
tx_thread_performance_priority_inversion_count;
    struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT

*tx_thread_performance_last_preempting_thread;
    ULONG
tx_thread_performance_time_slice_count;
    ULONG
tx_thread_performance_relinquish_count;
    ULONG tx_thread_performance_timeout_count;
    ULONG
tx_thread_performance_wait_abort_count;
#endif
    VOID *tx_thread_stack_highest_ptr;
#ifdef TX_DISABLE_NOTIFY_CALLBACKS
    VOID (*tx_thread_entry_exit_notify)
        (struct TX_THREAD_STRUCT
*, UINT);
#endif

    TX_THREAD_EXTENSION_3 /* Port defined */
    ULONG tx_thread_suspension_sequence;

    TX_THREAD_USER_EXTENSION

} TX_THREAD;

```

# TX\_TIMER

```
typedef struct TX_TIMER_STRUCT
{
    ULONG tx_timer_id;
    CHAR *tx_timer_name;
    TX_TIMER_INTERNAL tx_timer_internal;
    struct TX_TIMER_STRUCT
        *tx_timer_created_next,

    *tx_timer_created_previous;

    TX_TIMER_EXTENSION /* Port defined */

#ifdef TX_TIMER_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
    ULONG tx_timer_performance_activate_count;
    ULONG tx_timer_performance_reactivate_count;
    ULONG tx_timer_performance_deactivate_count;
    ULONG tx_timer_performance_expiration_count;
    ULONG
tx_timer_performance__expiration_adjust_count;
#endif

} TX_TIMER;
```

# TX\_TIMER\_INTERNAL

```
typedef struct TX_TIMER_INTERNAL_STRUCT
{
    ULONG tx_timer_internal_remaining_ticks;
    ULONG tx_timer_internal_re_initialize_ticks;
    VOID
(*tx_timer_internal_timeout_function)(ULONG);
    ULONG tx_timer_internal_timeout_param;
    struct TX_TIMER_INTERNAL_STRUCT
        *tx_timer_internal_active_next,

    *tx_timer_internal_active_previous;
    struct TX_TIMER_INTERNAL_STRUCT

    *tx_timer_internal_list_head;
    ULONG tx_timer_internal_smp_cores_excluded
    TX_TIMER_INTERNAL_EXTENSION /* Port defined
    */

} TX_TIMER_INTERNAL;
```

# Appendix D - Azure RTOS ASCII Character Codes

11/1/2022 • 2 minutes to read

## ASCII Character Codes in HEX

	<i>most significant nibble</i>							
	0_	1_	2_	3_	4_	5_	6_	7_
<i>least significant nibble</i> _0	NUL	DLE	SP	0	@	P	'	p
_1	SOH	DC1	!	1	A	Q	a	q
_2	STX	DC2	"	2	B	R	b	r
_3	ETX	DC3	#	3	C	S	c	s
_4	EOT	DC4	\$	4	D	T	d	t
_5	ENQ	NAK	%	5	E	U	e	u
_6	ACK	SYN	&	6	F	V	f	v
_7	BEL	ETB	'	7	G	W	g	w
_8	BS	CAN	(	8	H	X	h	x
_9	HT	EM	)	9	I	Y	i	y
_A	LF	SUB	*	:	J	Z	j	z
_B	VT	ESC	+	;	K	[	^	}
_C	FF	FS	,	<	L	\		
_D	CR	GS	-	=	M	]	_	}
_E	SO	RS	.	>	N	^	n	~
_F	SI	US	/	?	O	_	o	DEL



# Appendix E - ThreadX SMP MISRA C compliance

11/1/2022 • 7 minutes to read

## MISRA C Overview

MISRA C is a set of programming guidelines for critical systems using the C programming language. The original MISRA C guidelines were primarily targeted toward automotive applications, however, MISRA C is now widely recognized as being applicable to any safety critical application. MISRA-C:2004 consists of 142 rules (122 are "required" while 20 are "advisory"). MISRA C:2012 consists of 143 rules of varying importance and 16 directives. ThreadX is compliant with all "required" and "mandatory" rules of MISRA-C:2004 and MISRA C:2012. ThreadX is also compliant with all but two "advisory" rules.

ThreadX SMP has nearly the same compliance, however, there are two "required" rule exceptions specific to ThreadX SMP implementation. These are of low priority and are necessary for the reuse of the standard ThreadX code base.

### Enabling ThreadX SMP MISRA Compliance

Full MISRA compliance is achieved by building the ThreadX SMP library with *TX\_MISRA\_ENABLE* defined.

It is important to note that *TX\_MISRA\_ENABLE* must be defined on the command line or within project settings of the IDE, i.e., it isn't sufficient for this to be defined in *tx\_port.h* or *tx\_user.h*. All other defines can be added to the header files. It's also important that *TX\_INLINE\_INITIALIZATION* must not be defined. By default, this is defined in most distribution's *tx\_port.h* file.

#### NOTE

Some versions of ThreadX SMP might require changes to project and/or *tx\_port.h*. Please see the end of this document for additional information.

### MISRA High-Level Compliance

There are several areas in MISRA C:2012 that are not easily determined by static analysis tools such as IAR's C-STAT. These areas are addressed in this section, as follows:

#### Directive

##### ThreadX SMP Compliance Support

Dir 1.1

IEC 61508 certification indicates this directive is met.

Dir 3.1

IEC 61508 certification indicates this directive is met.

Dir 4.1

IEC 61508 certification indicates this directive is met.

Dir 4.2

There are eight assembly language files – each effectively a function in size – comprises a typical ThreadX SMP port. The assembly files are:

*txinitialize\_low\_level.s*

*txthread\_context\_save.s*  
*txthread\_context\_restore.s*  
*txthread\_interrupt\_control.s*  
*txthread\_schedule.s*  
*txthread\_smp\_core\_get.s*  
*txthread\_smp\_core\_preempt.s*  
*txthread\_smp\_current\_state\_get.s*  
*txthread\_smp\_current\_thread\_get.s*  
*txthread\_smp\_initialize\_wait.s*  
*txthread\_smp\_low\_level\_initialize.s*  
*txthread\_smp\_protect.s*  
*txthread\_smp\_time\_get.s*  
*txthread\_smp\_unprotect.s*  
*txthread\_stack\_build.s*  
*txthread\_system\_return.s*  
*txtimer\_interrupt.s*

When *TX\_MISRA\_ENABLE* is used to build the ThreadX SMP library, another assembly file *tx\_misra.s* is present that encapsulates all pointer arithmetic/manipulation.

### **ThreadX SMP MISRA Exceptions**

ThreadX SMP conforms with almost all “required” and “mandatory” MISRA-C:2004 and MISRA C:2012 rules/directives. The only exceptions to this are several “advisory” and “lower priority” required rules/directives, as follows:

#### **MISRA Exception(s):**

MISRA-C:2004 5.6 (advisory)  
MISRA C:2012 Dir 4.5 (advisory)

*“No identifier in one name space should have the same spelling as an identifier in another name space, with the exception of structure member and union member names.”*

There are handful structure member names associated with the notify callbacks that are the same in their first 31 characters. In addition, there are macro parameters that are problematic with regard to this directive.

MISRA-C:2004 16.7 (advisory)

*“A pointer parameter in a function prototype should be declared as pointer to const if the pointer is not used to modify the addressed object.”*

ThreadX SMP has an established API from before this MISRA rule so changing this in the ThreadX SMP API is not practical. In addition, some services in ThreadX SMP are conditionally enabled or disabled and therefore some cases supplied pointers to the API are not used to modify the addressed object.

MISRA-C:2004 19.7 (advisory)  
MISRA C:2012 4.9 (advisory)

*“A function should be used in preference to a function-like macro.”*

ThreadX SMP uses function-like macros to make the ThreadX SMP code base more portable across the many different processors that are supported by ThreadX SMP.

MISRA C:2012 Dir-4.6\_b (advisory)

*“typedefs that indicate size and signedness should be used in place of the basic numerical types.”*

ThreadX SMP uses basic typedefs without sign or size information, such as UINT and ULONG.

MISRA C:2012 Dir-4.8 (advisory)

***"If a pointer to a structure or union is never dereference within a translation unit, then the implementation of the object should be hidden."***

ThreadX SMP objects have a structure name and a typedef name. Since the structure name is not used directly by the ThreadX SMP code, this advisory directive is not met.

MISRA C:2012 2.3 (advisory)

***"A project should not contain unused type declarations."***

ThreadX SMP defines a few typedefs that are not used in the standard ThreadX SMP configuration, but are used in some configurations and in the middleware supported by ThreadX SMP.

MISRA C:2012 2.4 (advisory)

***"A project should not contain unused tag declarations."***

ThreadX SMP uses some structures only once while defining a typedef.

MISRA C:2012 2.5 (advisory)

***"A project should not contain unused macro declarations."***

ThreadX SMP defines a few typedefs that are not used in the standard ThreadX SMP configuration, but are used in some configurations and in the middleware supported by ThreadX SMP.

MISRA C:2012 2.7 (advisory)

***"There should be no unused parameters in functions."***

By default, ThreadX SMP conforms to this advisory rule. However, when ThreadX is built with ***TX\_DISABLE\_NOTIFY\_CALLBACKS***, Four functions in the ThreadX SMP library are flagged as not meeting this advisory rule, as follows:

***tx\_event\_flags\_set\_notify.c***

***tx\_queue\_send\_notify.c***

***tx\_semaphore\_put\_notify.c***

***tx\_thread\_entry\_exit\_notify.c***

In addition, when ***TX\_TIMER\_PROCESS\_IN\_ISR*** is defined, the file ***tx\_timer\_thread\_entry.c*** is flagged as not meeting this advisory rule.

MISRA C:2012 8.7 (advisory)

***"Functions and objects should not be defined with external linkage if they are referenced in only one translation unit."***

Internal functions and variables in ThreadX SMP are not always referenced from more than one external translation unit.

MISRA C:2012 8.9\_b (advisory)

***"An object should be defined at block scope if its identifier only appears in a single function."***

Some global data elements of ThreadX SMP are only referenced in one function, necessitating an exception to this rule.

MISRA C:2012 8.13 (advisory)

***"A pointer should point to a const-qualified type whenever possible."***

The ThreadX SMP API has input parameters that are not modified but the pointer does not have the const qualifier.

MISRA C:2012 17.8 (advisory)

***"A function parameter should not be modified."***

In several files the input parameter to a ThreadX SMP API is used as a local variable within the API itself. There are no side effects since in C the parameters are passed as value.

MISRA-C:2004 20.1 (required, low priority)

MISRA C:2012 21.1

**"Reserved identifiers, macros and functions in the standard library, shall not be defined, redefined or undefined"**

ThreadX SMP utilizes much of the field proven ThreadX single core source code. However, to enable the reuse, macros are used to replace data structures specific to each core with function calls or an array indexed by core, like the following:

```
#define _tx_thread_system_state _tx_thread_smp_current_state_get()
```

Technically, this isn't replacing a reserved identifier, but the MISRA-C:2004 specification indicates that anything with an underscore cannot be redefined.

MISRA C:2012 5.2 (required, low priority)

**"Identifiers declared in the same scope and name space shall be distinct"**

This is the same situation as the previous issue, the macro re-definition of `"_tx_thread_system_state"` matches the default definition of the actual data structure, which is expected since ThreadX SMP needs to override the standard, single core data structure usage.

MISRA C:2012 18.1 (required)

***"A pointer resulting from arithmetic on a pointer operand shall address an element of the same array as that pointer operand."***

C-STAT generates six messages when building the Thread SMP library, however, these are all false positives, i.e., this version of C-STAT is erroneously reporting this error.

## MISRA C Verification Tools

ThreadX SMP MISRA compliance is verified using the IAR EWARM 8.11.1 C-STAT 1.4.4 MISRA-C:2004 and MISRA C:2012. The following figures show the MISRA C rules checked by C-STAT (and should also serve as a compliance matrix):

General information	
Project name	threadx_smp_5.8_misra
C-STAT version	1.4.4
Timestamp of analysis	Mon Jul 17 19:46:09 2017
Source files analyzed	194
Header files analyzed	12
Functions analyzed	208
Total messages	0

Project-wide enabled checks (340)					
MISRA-C:2004-1.2_a	MISRA-C:2004-1.2_b	MISRA-C:2004-1.2_c	MISRA-C:2004-1.2_d	MISRA-C:2004-1.2_e	MISRA-C:2004-1.2_f
MISRA-C:2004-1.2_g	MISRA-C:2004-1.2_h	MISRA-C:2004-1.2_i	MISRA-C:2004-1.2_j	MISRA-C:2004-10.1_a	MISRA-C:2004-10.1_b
MISRA-C:2004-10.1_c	MISRA-C:2004-10.1_d	MISRA-C:2004-10.2_a	MISRA-C:2004-10.2_b	MISRA-C:2004-10.2_c	MISRA-C:2004-10.2_d
MISRA-C:2004-10.3	MISRA-C:2004-10.4	MISRA-C:2004-10.5	MISRA-C:2004-10.6	MISRA-C:2004-11.1	MISRA-C:2004-11.3
MISRA-C:2004-11.4	MISRA-C:2004-11.5	MISRA-C:2004-12.1	MISRA-C:2004-12.10	MISRA-C:2004-12.11	MISRA-C:2004-12.12_a
MISRA-C:2004-12.12_b	MISRA-C:2004-12.13	MISRA-C:2004-12.2_a	MISRA-C:2004-12.2_b	MISRA-C:2004-12.2_c	MISRA-C:2004-12.3
MISRA-C:2004-12.4	MISRA-C:2004-12.6_a	MISRA-C:2004-12.6_b	MISRA-C:2004-12.7	MISRA-C:2004-12.8	MISRA-C:2004-12.9
MISRA-C:2004-13.1	MISRA-C:2004-13.2_a	MISRA-C:2004-13.2_b	MISRA-C:2004-13.2_c	MISRA-C:2004-13.2_d	MISRA-C:2004-13.2_e
MISRA-C:2004-13.3	MISRA-C:2004-13.4	MISRA-C:2004-13.5	MISRA-C:2004-13.6	MISRA-C:2004-13.7_a	MISRA-C:2004-13.7_b
MISRA-C:2004-14.1	MISRA-C:2004-14.10	MISRA-C:2004-14.2	MISRA-C:2004-14.3	MISRA-C:2004-14.4	MISRA-C:2004-14.5
MISRA-C:2004-14.6	MISRA-C:2004-14.7	MISRA-C:2004-14.8_a	MISRA-C:2004-14.8_b	MISRA-C:2004-14.8_c	MISRA-C:2004-14.8_d
MISRA-C:2004-14.9	MISRA-C:2004-15.0	MISRA-C:2004-15.1	MISRA-C:2004-15.2	MISRA-C:2004-15.3	MISRA-C:2004-15.4
MISRA-C:2004-15.5	MISRA-C:2004-16.1	MISRA-C:2004-16.10	MISRA-C:2004-16.2_a	MISRA-C:2004-16.2_b	MISRA-C:2004-16.3
MISRA-C:2004-16.5	MISRA-C:2004-16.8	MISRA-C:2004-16.9	MISRA-C:2004-17.1_a	MISRA-C:2004-17.1_b	MISRA-C:2004-17.1_c
MISRA-C:2004-17.4_a	MISRA-C:2004-17.4_b	MISRA-C:2004-17.5	MISRA-C:2004-17.6_a	MISRA-C:2004-17.6_b	MISRA-C:2004-17.6_c
MISRA-C:2004-17.6_d	MISRA-C:2004-18.1	MISRA-C:2004-18.2	MISRA-C:2004-18.4	MISRA-C:2004-19.12	MISRA-C:2004-19.13
MISRA-C:2004-19.15	MISRA-C:2004-19.2	MISRA-C:2004-19.6	MISRA-C:2004-2.1	MISRA-C:2004-2.2	MISRA-C:2004-2.3
MISRA-C:2004-2.4	MISRA-C:2004-20.10	MISRA-C:2004-20.11	MISRA-C:2004-20.12	MISRA-C:2004-20.4	MISRA-C:2004-20.5
MISRA-C:2004-20.6	MISRA-C:2004-20.7	MISRA-C:2004-20.8	MISRA-C:2004-20.9	MISRA-C:2004-5.2	MISRA-C:2004-5.3
MISRA-C:2004-5.4	MISRA-C:2004-5.5	MISRA-C:2004-6.1	MISRA-C:2004-6.3	MISRA-C:2004-6.4	MISRA-C:2004-6.5
MISRA-C:2004-7.1	MISRA-C:2004-8.1	MISRA-C:2004-8.12	MISRA-C:2004-8.2	MISRA-C:2004-8.5_a	MISRA-C:2004-8.5_b
MISRA-C:2004-9.1_a	MISRA-C:2004-9.1_b	MISRA-C:2004-9.1_c	MISRA-C:2004-9.2	MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.10	MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.11_a
MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.11_b	MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.11_c	MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.11_d	MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.11_e	MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.11_f	MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.11_g
MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.11_h	MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.11_i	MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.12	MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.13_b	MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.13_c	MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.13_d
MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.13_e	MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.13_f	MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.13_g	MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.13_h	MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.3	MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.4
MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.6_a	MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.7_a	MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.7_b	MISRA-C:2012-Dir-4.7_c	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-1.3_a	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-1.3_b
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-1.3_c	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-1.3_d	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-1.3_e	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-1.3_f	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-1.3_g	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-1.3_h
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-1.3_i	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-1.3_j	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-1.3_k	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-1.3_m	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-1.3_n	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-1.3_o
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-1.3_p	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-1.3_q	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-1.3_r	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-1.3_s	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-1.3_t	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-1.3_u
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-1.3_v	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-1.3_w	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-10.1_R2	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-10.1_R3	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-10.1_R4	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-10.1_R5
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-10.1_R6	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-10.1_R7	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-10.1_R8	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-10.2	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-10.3	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-10.4_a
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-10.4_b	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-10.5	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-10.6	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-10.7	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-10.8	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-11.1
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-11.2	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-11.3	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-11.4	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-11.5	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-11.6	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-11.7
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-11.8	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-11.9	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-12.1	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-12.2	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-12.3	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-13.1
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-13.2_a	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-13.2_b	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-13.2_c	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-13.3	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-13.4_a	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-13.4_b
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-13.5	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-13.6	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-14.1_a	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-14.1_b	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-14.2	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-14.3_a
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-14.3_b	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-14.4_a	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-14.4_b	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-14.4_c	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-14.4_d	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-15.1
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-15.2	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-15.3	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-15.4	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-15.5	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-15.6_a	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-15.6_b
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-15.6_c	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-15.6_d	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-15.6_e	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-15.7	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-16.1	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-16.2
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-16.3	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-16.4	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-16.5	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-16.6	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-16.7	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-17.1
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-17.2_a	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-17.2_b	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-17.3	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-17.4	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-17.5	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-17.6
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-17.7	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-18.1_a	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-18.1_c	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-18.2	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-18.3	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-18.4
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-18.5	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-18.6_a	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-18.6_b	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-18.6_c	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-18.6_d	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-18.7
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-18.8	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-19.1	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-19.2	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-2.1_a	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-2.1_b	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-2.2_a
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-2.2_b	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-2.2_c	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-2.6	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-2.7	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-20.1	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-20.10
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-20.2	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-20.4_c89	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-20.4_c99	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-20.5	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-20.7	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-21.10
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-21.11	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-21.12_a	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-21.12_b	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-21.2	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-21.3	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-21.4
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-21.5	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-21.6	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-21.7	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-21.8	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-21.9	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-22.1_a
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-22.1_b	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-22.2_a	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-22.2_b	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-22.2_c	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-22.3	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-22.4
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-22.5_a	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-22.5_b	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-22.6	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-3.1	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-3.2	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-5.1
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-5.3_c89	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-5.3_c99	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-5.4_c89	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-5.4_c99	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-5.5_c89	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-5.5_c99
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-5.6	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-5.7	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-5.8	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-5.9	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-6.1	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-6.2
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-7.1	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-7.2	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-7.3	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-7.4_a	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-7.4_b	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-8.1
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-8.10	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-8.11	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-8.12	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-8.14	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-8.2_a	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-8.2_b
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-8.3_b	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-8.4	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-8.5_a	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-8.5_b	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-8.9_a	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-9.1_a
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-9.1_b	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-9.1_c	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-9.1_d	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-9.1_e	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-9.1_f	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-9.2
MISRA-C:2012-Rule-9.3	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-9.4	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-9.5_a	MISRA-C:2012-Rule-9.5_b		

Figure 1: MISRA-C:2004/MISRA C:2012 Compliance Matrix

### Building ThreadX SMP Without TX\_MISRA\_ENABLE

Building ThreadX SMP without *TX\_MISRA\_ENABLE* has significant run-time performance advantages and is the default (and recommended) configuration for ThreadX SMP. When building in this manner, there are several mandatory MISRA C rules that are not met, including the following:

MISRA-C:2004

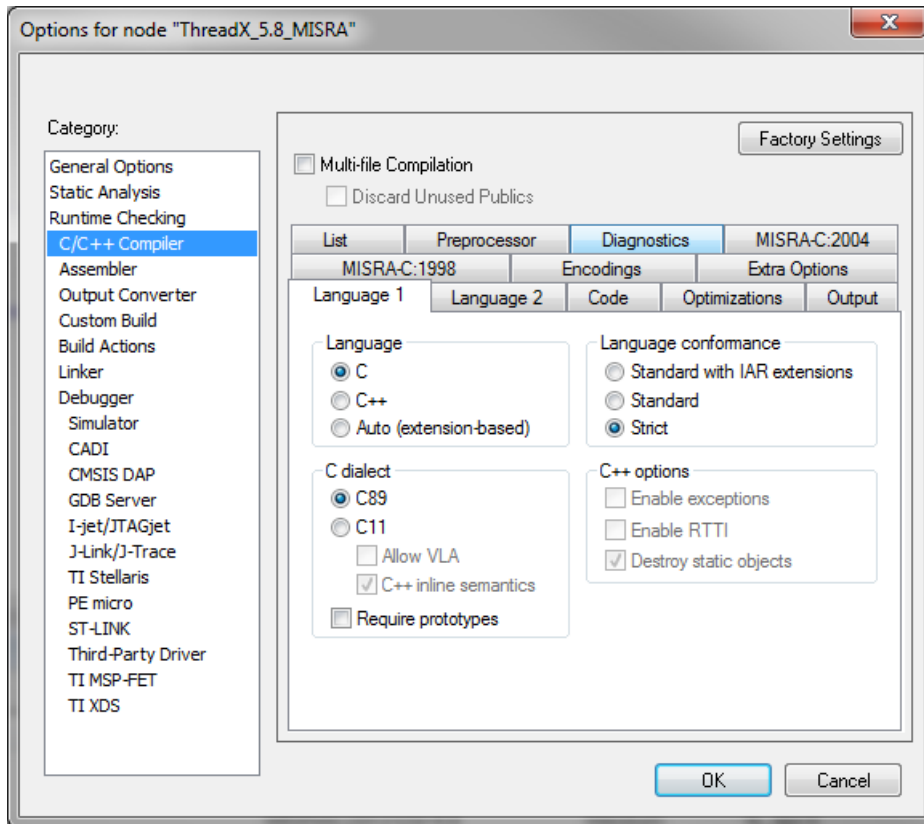
MISRA C:2012

8.5a, 10.1a, 11.3, 12.13, 13.2d, 14.7, 17.4a

10.3, 11.4, 13.3, 14.4d, 15.5, 17.7

### Additional Project and/or tx\_port.h Requirements

Some versions of ThreadX SMP may need additional configuration to achieve full MISRA compliance. In addition to building ThreadX SMP with *TX\_MISRA\_ENABLE*, the ThreadX project should have the C dialect C89 specified and strict language conformance selected, as follows:



Next, if the version of ThreadX does not have a pre-built *tx\_misra.s* assembly file, the *tx\_misra.c* file should be compiled to assembly and the assembly file should be included in the project.

Finally, *tx\_port.h* should have the following changes for full MISRA compliance:

1. The following defines should be present in *tx\_port.h* or in the project settings:

```
#define TX_BLOCK_POOL_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
#define TX_BYTE_POOL_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
#define TX_EVENT_FLAGS_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
#define TX_MUTEX_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
#define TX_QUEUE_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
#define TX_SEMAPHORE_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
#define TX_THREAD_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
#define TX_TIMER_ENABLE_PERFORMANCE_INFO
```

2. The *TX\_DISABLE\_NOTIFY\_CALLBACKS* should NOT be defined in *tx\_port.h* or in the project settings.
3. *TX\_DISABLE\_INLINE* should be defined to disable the in-line helper functions in ThreadX SMP.
4. The trace timer source should be redefined as follows:

```
#ifndef TX_MISRA_ENABLE
#ifndef TX_TRACE_TIME_SOURCE
#define TX_TRACE_TIME_SOURCE /* ORIGINAL SOURCE */
#endif
#else
ULONG _tx_misra_time_stamp_get(VOID);
```

```
#define TX_TRACE_TIME_SOURCE _tx_misra_time_stamp_get()
#endif
```

5. Change the in-line initialization option to (this also disables in-line assembly macros):

```
#ifndef TX_MISRA_ENABLE
#define TX_DISABLE_INLINE
#else
#define TX_INLINE_INITIALIZATION
#endif
```

6. Ensure that the disable stack checking option is disabled: #ifndef TX\_MISRA\_ENABLE

```
#ifndef TX_ENABLE_STACK_CHECKING
#undef TX_DISABLE_STACK_FILLING
#endif
#endif
```























